CLINICAL and MOLECULAR
HEPATOLOGY

Volume 29 • Number 1 • January 2023

Aims and Scope

The Clinical and Molecular Hepatology, is an international, peer-reviewed, open- access journal published quarterly in English. ***The Clinical and Molecular Hepatology*** aims to share advanced and latest knowledge, trend, and understanding of hepatobiliary diseases, to provide a wide open academic forum for active debate and discussion among clinical doctors, translational researchers, and basic scientists, and to improve public health through a multidisciplinary approach, especially in resource-limited Asia-Pacific area with high prevalence of B viral infection and hepatocellular carcinoma. In addition, ***the Clinical and Molecular Hepatology*** gives priority to epidemiological studies of hepatobiliary diseases in East Asia, North Asia, Southeast Asia, Central Asia, South Asia, Southwest Asia, Pacific, Africa, Central Europe, Eastern Europe, Central America, and South America.

The Clinical and Molecular Hepatology publishes original papers, meta-analysis, letter to editor, case reports, reviews, guidelines, editorials, and liver image and pathology on all aspects of the field of hepatology.

Open Access

The Clinical and Molecular Hepatology is available free in electronic form at www.e-cmh.org. All articles are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-Commercial License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/3.0/), which permits unrestricted non-commercial use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

Subscription information

The Clinical and Molecular Hepatology currently offers free online access to all published and ahead-of-print articles. Subscription of the print version is free for the official members of the Korean Association for the Study of the Liver (KASL). If you are a non-KASL member and wish to subscribe the print version of ***the Clinical and Molecular Hepatology***, a subscription fee will be charged annually. To subscribe print version of ***the Clinical and Molecular Hepatology***, please contact the editorial office by e-mail (kasl@kams.or.kr) or by telephone (+82-2-703-0051).

This journal was supported by the Korea Research Foundation of Internal Medicine.

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR
HEPATOLOGY

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

Volume 29 • Number 1 • January 2023

KASL
http://www.e-cmh.org

Publisher: Si Hyun Bae

Editor-in-Chief: Seung Up Kim

Publishing Office

Korean Association
for the Study of the Liver (KASL)
Room A1210, MapoTrapalace,
53 Mapo-daero, Mapo-gu,
Seoul 04158, Korea
Tel: +82-2-703-0051
Fax: +82-2-703-0071
E-mail: kasl@kams.or.kr
Website: http://www.kasl.org

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

Volume 29 • Number 1 • January 2023

KASL

http://www.e-cmh.org

Printed by Jin Publishing Co.
49-2 Chungmu-ro, Jung-gu, Seoul
04550, Korea
Tel: 82-2-2271-6789
Fax: 82-2-2277-5194
E-mail: jin@ijpnc.com
Website: http://www.ijpnc.co.kr
Printed on December 25, 2022
Published on January 1, 2023

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR
HEPATOLOGY

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

Volume 29 • Number 1 • January 2023

KASL
http://www.e-cmh.org

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR
HEPATOLOGY

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

Volume 29 • Number 1 • January 2023

Reviews

Editorials

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

Volume 29 • Number 1 • January 2023

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR
HEPATOLOGY

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

Volume 29 • Number 1 • January 2023

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0017
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:1-15

Review

Subclinical versus advanced forms of alcohol-related liver disease: Need for early detection

Concepción Gómez-Medina[1], Luma Melo[2], David Martí-Aguado[1], and Ramón Bataller[2]

[1]Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Medical Department, Clinic University Hospital of Valencia, Valencia, Spain; [2]Center for Liver Diseases, Division of Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, University of Pittsburgh Medical Center, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Alcohol-related liver disease (ALD) consists of a wide spectrum of clinical manifestations and pathological features, ranging from asymptomatic patients to decompensated cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. Patients with heavy alcohol intake and advanced fibrosis often develop a subacute form of liver failure called alcohol-induced hepatitis (AH). Globally, most patients with ALD are identified at late stages of the disease, limiting therapeutic interventions. Thus, there is a need for early detection of ALD patients, which is lacking in most countries. The identification of alcohol misuse is hampered by the existence of alcohol underreporting by many patients. There are useful biomarkers that can detect recent alcohol use. Moreover, there are several non-invasive techniques to assess the presence of advanced fibrosis among patients with alcohol misuse, which could identify patients at high risk of liver related events or early death. In this review, we discuss differences between early stages of ALD and AH as the cornerstone of advanced forms. A global overview of epidemiological, anthropometric, clinical, analytical, histological, and molecular differences is summarized in this article. We propose that campaigns aimed at identifying patients with subclinical forms can prevent the development of life-threatening forms. **(Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:1-15)**

Keywords: Liver diseases, Alcoholic; Hepatitis, Alcoholic

INTRODUCTION: PREVALENCE OF ALCOHOL-RELATED LIVER DISEASE

Alcohol consumption is one of the most frequent causes of liver disease worldwide. In 2016, according to the World Health Organization, the harmful consumption of alcohol resulted in 3 million deaths (5.3% of all deaths) worldwide and 132.6 million disability-adjusted life years (DALYs) – i.e., 5.1% of all DALYs in that year. Alcohol-related mortality is more prevalent in men and higher than other important diseases such as tuberculosis, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and diabetes.[1]

Diagnosis of alcohol-related liver disease (ALD) requires documentation of an alcoholic use disorder (AUD) and exclusion of other causes of liver disease. ALD consists of a wide spectrum of clinical manifestations and pathological features, from asymptomatic patients to decompensated cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (Fig. 1).[2-5] The early stage of the disease is not well understood, and there is a need to better understand its natural history, risk factors of progres-

Corresponding author : Ramón Bataller
Division of Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, University of Pittsburgh Medical Center, 200 Lothrop Street, BSTW Suite 1116, Pittsburgh, PA 15213, USA
Tel: +1-412-383-4241, Fax: +1-412-648-4055, E-mail: BATALLER@pitt.edu
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-1119-7799

Editor: Moon Young Kim, Yonsei University Wonju College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Jan. 18, 2022 / **Revised :** Mar. 6, 2022 / **Accepted :** Apr. 11, 2022

sion, and noninvasive diagnosis biomarkers.[3,5-7] Therefore, underdiagnosis is the rule until severe forms like alcohol-induced hepatitis (AH) develop and mortality is high despite abstinence. In this stage, patients have a terrible prognosis, with short-term mortality rates as high as 50% at three months due to subsequent organ failure and acute-on-chronic liver failure (ACLF).[7,8]

The histological and clinical features observed in patients with severe ALD are difficult to replicate in animal models. Additionally, the difficulty in conducting clinical trials in patients with active AUD, the social stigmatization and marginalization of this population, the lack of interest from drug companies and the limitations of current experimental models contribute to a slow progress in ALD management. Thus, the treatment of patients with ALD hasn't changed much in recent decades, and there aren't any targeted and personalized medicines available.[2] To date, the most effective therapy to attenuate the clinical course of ALD and even reverse histological injuries is prolonged alcohol abstinence.[4]

Identifying risk factors in individuals with AUD that predispose to ALD development is crucial for implementation of public health policies and reduce morbimortality associated to ALD. Several significant biological factors and possible therapeutic targets have been explored in recent translational research. The early recognition of early stages of ALD with subsequent behavioral therapies ought to be encouraged in primary care settings.[2,6,8-10] For example, alcohol screening questionnaires and basic laboratory test including hepatic profile in high-risk patients.

In this review, we will differentiate between early forms of ALD and AH, the most severe form of ALD, from the epidemiological, anthropometric, clinical, analytical, histological, and molecular stand of points.

DISEASE STAGES AND NATURAL HISTORY

ALD includes a wide range spectrum of early and advanced phenotypes. Early phenotypes do not usually have symptoms and can be categorized as subclinical forms. Subclinical stages include fatty liver disease or steatosis, steatohepatitis (ASH) with or without fibrosis and compensated cirrhosis. Although non-invasive biomarkers can have a role in steatosis and fibrosis diagnosis, histological evaluation is needed to define these subclinical stages. Patients with subclinical liver disease and persistent active drinking can end up developing

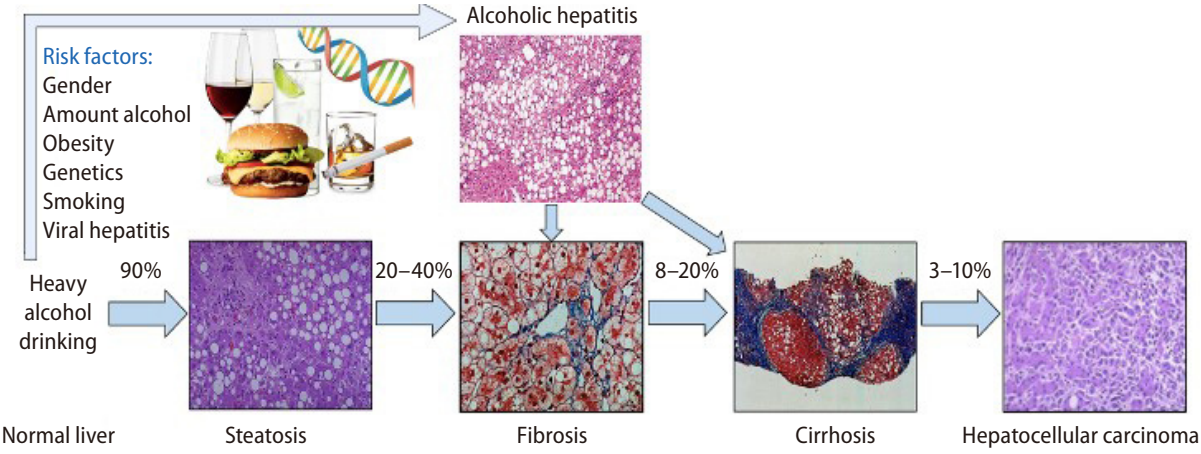


Figure 1. Spectrum of alcohol-related liver disease. The numbers represent the percentage of patients with progression. From Yamada's Textbook of Gastroenterology. Permission for their use from the publisher.

Abbreviations:

ACLF, acute-on-chronic liver failure; AH, alcohol-induced hepatitis; AKI, acute kidney injury; ALD, alcohol-related liver disease; ALT, alanine transaminase; ASH, steatohepatitis; AST, aspartate transaminase; AUD, alcoholic use disorder; AUDIT, Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test; AUROC, area under the receiver operating characteristic; CDT, carbohydrate-deficient transferrin; CIWA, Clinical Institute Withdrawal Assessment for Alcohol; DALYs, disability-adjusted life years; ELF, Enhanced Liver Fibrosis; G-CSF, granulocyte-colony stimulating factor; GGT, gamma-glutamyl transferase; HNF4A, hepatocyte nuclear factor 4 alpha; HSCs, hepatic stellate cells; IL, interleukin; MDB, Mallory-Denk bodies; MDF, Maddrey Discriminant Function; MELD, Model for End-Stage Liver Disease; NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; SALVE, Study of Alcohol-related LiVer disease in Europe; SWE, shear wave elastography

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0017

advanced forms of ALD. Advanced stages are symptomatic and entail a poor prognosis due to liver-related complications. This phenotype includes AH, ACLF and decompensated cirrhosis (Fig. 2).

Steatosis can develop as soon as 3 to 7 days after heavy alcohol consumption. Steatosis is mostly asymptomatic and may be associated with mild elevation of gamma-glutamyltransferase (GGT). It is histologically characterized by macrovesicular fat accumulation, typically located in centrilobular areas. Simple steatosis should not be considered a benign condition since it increases ALD annual mortality up to 6%.[11] In the same line, mortality in biopsy confirmed non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is also increased among simple steatosis stages.[12] Although different medical conditions, both ALD and NAFLD show that steatosis carries prognostic implications by itself. Continuous and excessive alcohol drinking may lead, in 10–35%, to the development of ASH, which is characterized by steatosis, hepatocellular damage (i.e., ballooning, Mallory-Denk bodies [MDB]), inflammatory infiltrates–mainly neutrophils–, and different degrees of fibrosis with a pericellular pattern distribution.[6] Approximately 20–40% of patients with ASH will develop progressive fibrosis, of which 8–20% will develop cirrhosis. The risk of cirrhosis is increased in patients with ASH on biopsy as compared with patients with simple steatosis.[13] Once cirrhosis is established, its natural history is characterized by an asymptomatic compensated phase followed by a decompensated phase, marked by the development of overt clinical signs, the most frequent of which are ascites, bleeding, encephalopathy, and jaundice (Fig. 2).[14]

When persistent alcohol intake is maintained, an episode of AH can be developed. Till date, there is no clear explanation why some patients develop this phenotype, nor what are the triggers. It has been speculated that this is due to an increased alcohol consumption, but this has not been firmly demonstrated. AH is associated with high mortality, which can reach 50% in three months, and the median survival time of patients with advanced liver cirrhosis can be as low as 1–2 years.[15]

In a recent study, it was demonstrated that the presence of advanced fibrosis and continued alcohol consumption were the main parameters associated with early mortality in patients with compensated forms of ALD.[4] Moreover, a new parameter has been introduced recently to quantify fibrosis in liver biopsies using digital image analysis, the collagen proportionate area.[16] This parameter predicts liver-related mortality in ALD and hepatic decompensation and/or liver-related death in early/compensated ALD.[17]

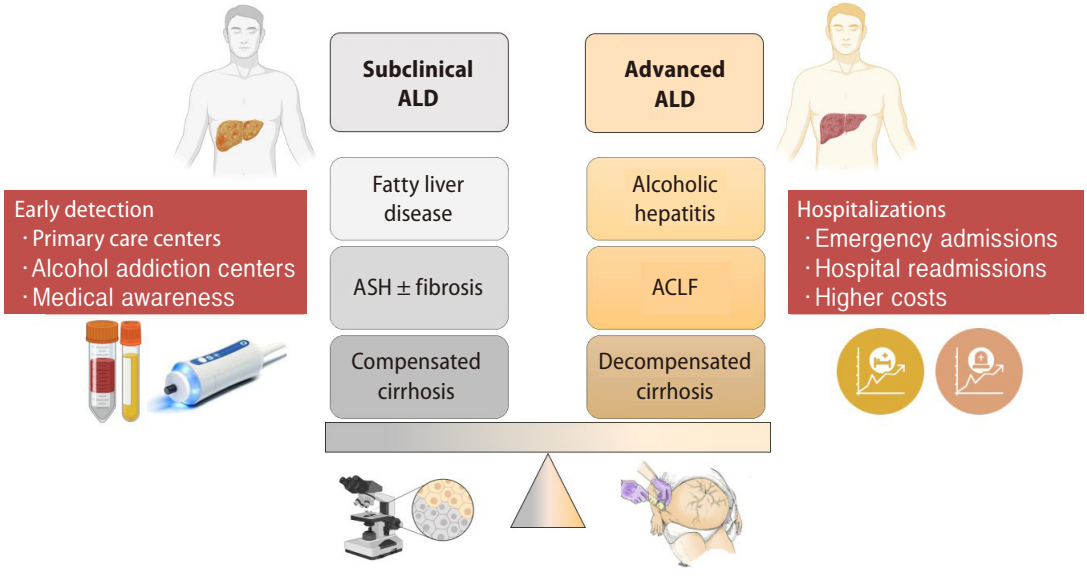


Figure 2. Subclinical versus advanced forms of ALD. ALD, alcohol-related liver disease; ASH, steatohepatitis; ACLF, acute-on-chronic liver failure.

SUBCLINICAL ASH VS. AH: CLINICAL, ANALYTICAL AND HISTOLOGICAL FEATURES

Most patients with ALD are identified during late stages of the disease when liver decompensation occurs and when mortality is high despite ethanol cessation. In fact, a global epidemiologic study in 2017[18] showed that ALD is by far the liver disease etiology that is detected at the latest stages. These results strongly suggest that there is a dire need for the early detection of ALD patients, which currently is almost nonexistent. Recently, a study comparing ASH and AH disease stages has been conducted. This study concluded that patients with AH had higher liver failure and mortality compared to ASH patients (50% vs. 10% 1-year mortality, respectively) with significant different clinical, histological and molecular features.[19]

Although it is assumed that ASH is the harbinger of transition to severe forms of ALD, there are few studies that have assessed clinical and histological features that predict liver disease progression in these patients.[3,4,20-22] Much more research attention has been paid to the severe form of AH.[23-26] Currently ASH can only be diagnosed with liver biopsy. Similar to NAFLD, there are no signs, symptoms, or biochemical tests that allow the confident diagnosis of ASH.[14] Although asymptomatic, identification of subclinical, molecular and histologic features of ASH would favor its detection worldwide.

The diagnosis of ALD is based on history of heavy alcohol use, typical laboratory markers and clinical features.[5] Compared to similar diseases such as NASH, few patients with ALD undergo a liver biopsy. Most patients with both early and advanced forms are diagnosis without histological assessment. The recent development of a specific fibrosis grading system for patients with ALD could stimulate this field.[27] In patients with AH, a transjugular liver biopsy is justified when there are confounding factors,[28] and the histological changes (i.e., presence advanced fibrosis, polymorphonuclear infiltration, etc.) predict short-term survival.[23]

Some methods to determine alcohol as the major etiology of liver disease include the medical history, surveys, physical examination and laboratory test. It is also important to consider second liver hits that can influence ALD prognosis.

History of alcohol misuse

Criteria from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition,[29] are used to define AUD and to determine its severity. Severity is based on the number of criteria a person meets based on their symptoms in the past year. Some surveys can help us to distinguish patients with alcohol abuse. The Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test (AUDIT) comprises ten questions with a specific scoring system to diagnosis alcohol abuse (AUDIT score >8) and alcohol dependence (AUDIT score >20)[30] with 73% sensitivity and 91% specificity vs. 85% sensitivity and 89% specificity respectively.[31] The CAGE questionnaire is also a useful and an easily applied tool. It is more sensitive than the AUDIT to detect alcohol abuse and dependence, but is less effective in recognizing non-severe drinking disorders.[32] However, many patients tend to underreport, particularly in the pre- or post-liver transplant interval, for fear of reprisal by the transplant program. The Clinical Institute Withdrawal Assessment for Alcohol (CIWA) scale assesses the severity of alcohol withdrawal. A randomized, double blind trial published in JAMA in 1994 showed that management for alcohol withdrawal that was guided by the CIWA scale resulted in decreased treatment duration and total use of benzodiazepines.[33]

Physical examination

On physical examination, patients typically have hepatomegaly, which often reflects the combined effects of fatty liver and swelling of hepatocytes due to cell injury-associated protein retention.[34] Signs of chronic alcohol intake (Dupuytren contracture, rhinophyma, etc.) and signs of alcohol withdrawal (tremors, tachycardia, agitation, seizures in severe alcoholic withdrawal syndrome, or delirium tremens) should be screened in primary care for early detection of ALD. Signs of chronic liver disease (spider angioma, palmar erythema and jaundice) and signs of portal hypertension (splenomegaly, ascites, and hepatic encephalopathy) suggest advanced liver disease with underlying cirrhosis. Frequently ALD patients suffer from malnutrition, physical examination may reveal sarcopenia with proximal muscle wasting and decreased grip strength protein.[35]

Laboratory tests

Direct alcohol biomarkers, the most used of which is ethanol detection in urine and/or blood, but they capture only very recent consumption. Alcohol metabolites are clinically

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0017

used as indirect biomarkers of alcohol consumption. Metabolites of alcohol such as urine ethyl glucuronide can reveal alcohol use up to 3–4 days after the last alcohol drink. Sensitivity and specificity of urinary ethyl glucuronide for detection of alcohol use were 89% and 99%, respectively, among patients with ALD before and after liver transplant.[36,37] Measurement of ethyl glucuronide in hair samples can detect alcohol use for a longer period of up to 1 month.[38] Other metabolite of alcohol, blood phosphatidylethanol has a half-life of approximately 10–14 days, with sensitivity of 91% and specificity of 77%.[39] Carbohydrate-deficient transferrin (CDT) has a half-life of 2–3 weeks but its utility is limited by its low sensitivity of 25–50% in several studies and by false-positive results. The levels of CDT may be confounded with increasing disease severity and active smoking. Posttransplant use of %CDT appears to be more accurate, likely due to improved liver function. The CDT combined with GGT has higher sensitivity (75–90%).[40]

In laboratory test, ALD-induced liver injury indicators are also observed. Increased GGT and aspartate transaminase (AST) levels with typically AST two times greater than alanine transaminase (ALT), macrocytic anemia and thrombocytosis. According to the CLASH study, AH patients presented greater AST/ALT ratio and lower GGT compared to ASH population. In ASH patients, GGT levels were higher, probably reflecting improved preservation of hepatocyte mass (Table 1).

Genetic factors are also involved in the onset, progression, and clinical outcome of ALD. Epidemiological studies conducted among family members and between twins strongly support a genetic component.[41-43] According to the CLASH study, AH patients showed marked deregulation of genes involved in hepatocyte reprogramming and bile acid metabolism. ASH patients showed a deregulated expression of genes involved in matrisome and immune response.

It is important to consider that in the pathogenesis of liver diseases frequently coexist two different risk factors for liver injury in the same subject, potentially increasing the risk and severity of liver damage. Alcohol is a frequent co-factor in patients with hepatitis C virus infection where it accelerates hepatic fibrosis.[44,45] Additionally, alcohol has a synergistic hepatotoxic effect with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, iron overload and other metabolic disorders.[6,46-49]

Table 1. Biomarkers in diagnosis and prognosis of patients with of AUD[14,37]

Biomarker	Biology	Significance	Cut-off value
GGT	Marker of alcohol liver injury	Unspecific. Liver dysfunction and oxidative stress.	
Transaminase enzymes (ALT, AST)	Marker of alcohol liver injury	Screening for liver dysfunction in alcohol users.	High specificity if AST/ALT ratio >2
Blood cell counts (macrocytic anemia, thrombocytosis)	Marker of alcohol liver injury	Unspecific. Normalization in 2–4 months.	
Urine/blood ethanol (EtOH)	Direct alcohol metabolite	Specific. Recent alcohol intake or alcohol intoxication. Short half-life.	Positive urine EtOH ≥20 mg/dL Positive blood EtOH >30 mg/dL
Carbohydrate-deficient transferrin (CDT)	Alcohol-derive metabolites	High specificity, low sensitivity for alcohol recent use (2–3 weeks)	CDT <60 mg/L (normal value); 60–100 mg/L (probable alcoholism) and >100 mg/L (very high probability of alcoholism)
Ethyl-glucuronide (EtG), ethyl sulfate (EtS)	Alcohol-derive metabolites	Recent alcohol intake (3–4 days)High inter-individual variations	Positive EtG >100 ng/mL Positive EtS >25 ng/mL
Phosphatidylethanol (PEth)	Alcohol-derive metabolites	Recent alcohol intake (2–4 weeks). Differentiates alcohol- from non-alcohol induced liver disease.	PEth <20 ng/mL (light or no), 20–199 ng/mL (significant) and >200 ng/mL (heavy)
GGT-CDT combination	Marker of alcohol liver injury + alcohol-derive metabolite	Improves sensitivity and specificity of detecting AUD	

AUD, alcoholic use disorder; GGT, gamma-glutamyl transferase; ALT, alanine transaminase; AST, aspartate transaminase.

Non-invasive diagnosis

As mentioned previously, fibrosis is one of the main prognostic factors in ALD. As liver biopsy is not always available, non-invasive methods to assess fibrosis have been developed (Tables 2, 3).[3] Some alternatives are serum biomarkers, such as Fibrotest®, Fibrometer®, Hepascore® and Enhanced Liver Fibrosis (ELF) test.[50] The diagnostic accuracy of these tests is greater than other biomarkers developed for viral hepatitis (i.e., AST to Platelet Ratio Index, Forns index, Fibrosis-4 Index). These simple serum-based parameters obtained from routine liver function tests can distinguish between patients with no fibrosis or advanced fibrosis, but they have limited value to assessed intermediate stages of fibrosis. A combination of any of these tests has not been useful in improving diagnostic performance.[51]

Imaging biomarkers are based on the evaluation of the liver parenchyma stiffness. Elastography measures are based on the speed and elastic wavelength that propagates through the liver tissue. As the stiffness of the liver parenchyma increases related to fibrosis, the elastography value also increase. There are different methods of generating ultra-

Table 2. Biomarkers in diagnosis and prognosis of alcohol-related liver disease[14,105]

Biomarker	Biology	Significance	Cut-off value
Microfibrillar-associated protein 4[106]	Marker of fibrogenesis	Early ALD: fibrosis assessment	
Angiopoietin-like 4[107]	Marker angiogenesis	Early ALD: fibrosis assessment	
Collagen IV, hyaluronic acid[107]	Extracellular matrix turnover	Early-ALD: fibrosis assessment	
PNPLA3[108]	Genetic polymorphism	ALD and AH: disease progression and prognostic Hepatoma development	
HSD17B13, TM6F2[109]	Genetic polymorphisms	ALD: disease progression Prognostic	
Fibrotest[55]	Fibrosis score including alpha-2-macroglobulin, apolipoprotein A1, haptoglobin, Brb, GGT	Fibrosis assessment	Cut-offs for 3 risk groups: <0.31, 0.31–0.58, and >0.58
Fibrometer	Fibrosis score including platelets, prothrombin time, macroglobulin, AST, hyaluronate, age, urea	Fibrosis assessment	Cut-offs for 2 risk groups: ≤0.61 (significant fibrosis) and >0.61
Hepascore	Fibrosis score including age, sex, alpha-2-macroglobulin, hyaluronate, Brb, GGT	Fibrosis assessment	Cut-offs for 2 risk groups: ≥0.5 (significant fibrosis) and <0.5 (exclude advanced fibrosis)
Enhanced liver fibrosis (ELF) test[55]	Fibrosis score including procollagen type III N-terminal peptide, tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinase-1 and hyaluronic acid	Fibrosis assessment	Cut-offs for 3 risk groups: <9.8, 9.8–10.5, and >10.5
FIB4[55]	Fibrosis score including age, ALT, AST, platelets	Fibrosis assessment	Cut-offs between low and intermediate group: 1.3 (for age ≤65 years) and 2.0 (for age >65 years); >2.67 for high-risk group
APRI	Fibrosis score including ALT, platelets	Fibrosis assessment	Cut-offs for 2 risk groups: <0.75 and ≥0.75
Forn's index[55]	Fibrosis score including age, GGT, cholesterol, platelets	Fibrosis assessment	Cut-offs for 3 risk groups: <4.2, 4.2–6.9, and >6.9

ALD, alcohol-related liver disease; PNPLA3, patatin-like phospholipase domain-containing protein 3; AH, alcohol-induced hepatitis; HSD17B13, hydroxysteroid 17-beta dehidrogenase 13; TM6F2, transmembrane 6 superfamily 2; Brb, bilirubin; GGT, gamma-glutamyl transferase; AST, aspartate transaminase; FIB4, fibrosis-4; APRI, AST to Platelet Ratio Index.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0017

sound/elastography waves such as transient elastography and magnetic resonance elastography. Transient elastography could potentially diagnose subclinical liver disease among heavy drinkers, allowing for earlier referral to a specialty liver clinic. Liver stiffness measurement by transient elastography (FibroScan®) closely correlates with the degree of fibrosis, but in studies that did not consider the presence of AH as a possible confounder. Patients with alcohol-related cirrhosis had significantly higher values of liver stiffness than those with viral cirrhosis. Moreover, the cut-off values should be modified in patients with elevated transaminases (AST >200 UI/L).[52] Other confounding factors that can interfere include recent alcohol intake, no compliance with fasting recommendation before the assessment and the presence of cholestasis.[53] Also, a new measurement, the controlled attenuation parameter incorporated into the FibroScan®-device showed a good correlation with steatosis on liver histology.[54] In a prospective, single-etiology cohort study of 462 patients with biopsy-proven ALD and up to 7 years of follow-up, it was found that transient elastography and the ELF test predict liver-related events with excellent prognostic accuracy. They were considered as accurate prognostic markers in patients with early stages of alcohol-related liver fibrosis or compensated cirrhosis. This study also found that cut-offs for transient elastography can be used to separate patients into three groups of distinctly different risks profiles: compared to patients with a liver stiffness below 10 kPa, patients with liver stiffness between 10 and 15 kPa had an 8-fold higher hazard for liver-related events, and those with liver stiffness >15 kPa had a 28-fold higher hazard.[55] In the near future, our group will start an observational study to identify the prevalence of advanced liver fibrosis among patients with excessive alcohol intake using a non-invasive method (transient elastography FibroScan®) and to characterize the main environmental, genetic and epigenetic factors that could influence the development of advanced fibrosis. A new tool has been implemented in conventional ultrasound systems, the shear wave elastography (SWE). It allows to choose the best acoustic window for liver stiffness measurement.[56] In a study carried out in Korea, the area under the receiver operating characteristic (AUROC) of SWE for discriminating ASH from simple steatosis was 0.93 and the AUROC for diagnosing cirrhosis with ASH vs. cirrhosis without ASH was 0.92.[57] Additionally, a cut-off higher than 20 KPa carries prognostic information.[58] Although magnetic resonance elastography has the best diagnostic accuracy for liver fibrosis detection, its' use is not widely available in clinical settings because it requires specific software and an external device.[59,60]

A recent study carried out by Chen et al.[61] has also identified some prognostic factors based on computed tomography radiomics (texture, liver surface nodularity and steatosis measurements) which were associated with reduced 90-day

Table 3. Biomarkers in diagnosis and prognosis of patients with AH

Biomarker	Biology	Significance
Keratin-18, 30/M65[110]	Marker of necro-apoptosis hepatocytes	Diagnostic and prognostic
Lipoprotein Z[111]	Abnormal free cholesterol-enriched LDL-like particle. Hepatotoxic.	Prognostic
Cytolysin[112]	Product *Enterococcus faecalis*	Prognostic
Bacterial DNA[112]	Product gut bacteria	Prognostic and infection development
Transferrin[113]	Marker of HNf4A function	Prognostic
Lipopolysaccharide[114]	Product gram-negative bacteria	Prognostic and therapeutic response
IL-6, IL-8, IL-20[114]	Inflammatory cytokines	Prognostic
Osteopontin[114]	Extracellular protein marker	Prognostic
miR122, miRNA155, miRNA192[115]	Epigenetic regulators	Prognostic
PNPLA3[108]	Genetic polymorphism	ALD and AH: disease progression and prognostic Hepatoma development

AH, alcohol-induced hepatitis; LDL, low-density lipoprotein; HNF4A, hepatocyte nuclear factor 4 alpha; IL, interleukin; ALD, alcohol-related liver disease; PNPLA3, patatin-like phospholipase domain-containing protein 3.

and overall transplant-free survival in AH.

Histology assessment

Histologically, AH is associated with ballooned hepatocytes, MDB, lobular polymorphonuclear neutrophils and pericellular and sinusoidal fibrosis (in "chicken wire" appearance). The histological features of ASH are similar from those described in NASH.[62]

According to the CLASH study, AH presented histologically more advanced fibrosis, MDB, bilirubinostasis, severe neutrophil infiltration and progenitor cell expansion than ASH. AH was characterized by profound ductular reaction, which is not seen in early asymptomatic phases and is associated with poor prognosis. Another study carried out by Ventura-Cots et al.[63] revealed through histological and molecular profiling that ductular reaction is a driver of portal hypertension in patients with AH.

The SALVE (Study of Alcohol-related LiVer disease in Europe) Histopathology Group developed and validated a grading and staging system for the clinical and full histological spectrum of ALD and evaluated its prognostic utility in a multinational cohort of 445 patients.[27] SALVE grade was described by semiquantitative scores for steatosis, activity (hepatocellular injury and lobular neutrophils) and cholestasis. The histological diagnosis of ASH due to ALD (histological ASH) was based on the presence of hepatocellular ballooning and lobular neutrophils. Severe cirrhosis and histological ASH were identified as independent predictors of short-term survival in decompensated ALD, and decompensation- free survival in compensated ALD.

Altamirano et al also presented a histologic scoring system that relates to the prognosis in patients with AH.[23] The authors identified histologic features associated with AH disease severity and proposed a semiquantitative scoring system, the "Alcoholic Hepatitis Histologic score". Four histologic features were combined to create the final score: fibrosis stage, bilirubinostasis, polymorphonuclear infiltration, and megamitochondria. The degree of fibrosis and the presence of bilirubinostasis were positively associated with higher short-term mortality. On the other hand, mild polymorphonuclear infiltration and absence of megamitochondria were associated with poorer outcome in these patients. Low, moderate, and high score was associated with a short-term mortality of 3%, 19%, and 51%, respectively. The prognostic assessment of this score to predict short-term mortality compared favorably with well-validated, non-invasive scoring systems for AH such as the Model for End-Stage Liver Disease (MELD). Further, the histologic score was able to provide additional prognostic information in AH patients with low MELD scores. In patients with a MELD score of <21, a cutoff value of 5 points in the histologic score differentiated two subgroups with different 90-day survival (94% vs. 72%). However, a recent study showed that this score is not predictive of short-term survival in patients with severe AH. Further studies should evaluate whether the prognostic value of histologic parameters differs according to the severity of liver disease.[64]

AH

AH is clinically defined as abrupt onset of progressive jaundice and liver-related complications with hyperbilirubinemia (>3 mg/dL), AST/ALT ratio >1.5 with levels of AST >1.5 times the upper limit of normal but <400 IU/L; and heavy alcohol drinking until 4 weeks before onset of symptoms and absence of other causes of liver disease (10–20%).[65]

To date, multiple scoring systems have been developed to predict short-term prognosis in patients with AH. One of the most validated is the Maddrey Discriminant Function (MDF), which includes prothrombin time and total bilirubin, and where severe AH is defined by a score ≥32.[66] Other scoring systems include the MELD score,[67] the Glasgow Alcoholic Hepatitis score[68] and the age, serum bilirubin, INR and serum creatinine.[69,70] MELD score incorporates renal function, as a major determinant of outcomes in AH patients. A MELD score >20 has been proposed as definition of severe AH.[71] A recent large worldwide study showed that MELD is the best scoring system to predict mortality in alcohol-associated hepatitis.[72] Another relevant prognostic tool is the Lille score, assessed after 4–7 days of corticosteroid therapy. A Lille score <0.45 predicts a good response to corticosteroids and continuing prednisolone for 4 weeks is recommended.[73]

Acute kidney injury (AKI) is a common complication in patients with AH and negatively impacts short-term survival.[74,75] Therefore, serum creatinine should be screened in all patients with AH. A recent study carried out by Fernandez-Carrillo et al.[76] found out that AKI in the setting of AH is characterized by a higher urine potassium concentration. Among the biomarkers considered in the study, urine NGAL, IGFBP-7, KIM-1, LFABP, as well as TIMP-1 and TIMP-2 discriminated AKI

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0017

vs. non-AKI (P<0.01 for all). Interestingly, the performance of TIMP-1 and 2 in patients with AH was significantly better than in patients with decompensated cirrhosis with and without AKI. Interestingly, urine interleukin (IL)-18 was exclusively increased in patients with AH and identified those with AKI (P<0.001). Serum levels of IL-18 were slightly higher in patients with AH vs. decompensated cirrhosis (P<0.05). There was no correlation between serum and urine IL-18 levels among patients with AH. Among all studied biomarkers, NGAL predicted 3-months survival (AUROC 0.72).[76] Hepatic encephalopathy and lack of alcohol abstinence are also key factors that impair long-term prognosis.[77]

Patients with non-severe AH, defined as a MELD score ≤20 or MDF <32, have a low risk of short-term mortality. The 5-year mortality of decompensated patients with ASH and an MDF <32 is about 50%.

Regarding the AH treatment, the only therapy with proven benefit is alcohol abstinence. There are multiple scores to predict alcohol relapse after an AH episode. A recent study carried out by Clemente et al.,[78] discriminate different risk groups for early alcohol relapse after an episode of AH. The higher group risk were patients under 44 years of age, MELD >21, no cirrhosis or psychiatric disease diagnosis, no relationships and unemployed.[78] A therapy that has shown likely benefit is corticosteroids. Prednisolone (40 mg/day) given orally should be considered to improve 28-day mortality in patients with severe AH (MDF ≥32) without contraindications to the use of corticosteroids. However, survival benefit was not sustained at 90 or 180 days.[79] The Lille score should be used to reassess prognosis, identify non-responders, and guide treatment course after 7 days of corticosteroids.[80] Other therapies with potential benefit are N-acetylcysteine and Granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (G-CSF).[81] In patients with steroid non-responsive severe AH (day 7 Lille score >0.45), the administration of G-CSF reduces the disease severity and 90-day mortality.[82] According to a recent presentation at the International Liver Congress 2021 carried out by Louvet et al.,[83] amoxicillin/clavulanate plus prednisolone in severe AH do not improve survival at 2 months. Future treatment to consider are IL-1R antagonist anakinra, fecal transplantation,[84] DUR-928,[85] and IL-22 agonist F-652.[86] It should also be considered the early liver transplant for severe AH not responding to medical therapy,[14] it has been demonstrated that improves survival compared to patients without transplant.[87-90]

SUBCLINICAL ASH VS. AH: MOLECULAR PROFILING

The cellular and molecular mechanisms of ALD are multifaceted, complex, and poorly understood in part due to the lack of clinical and histological replication in animal models. The majority of mechanistic investigations uses animal models to identify several molecular drivers of intermediate ALD (steatosis and mild inflammation), but not the severe fibrosis and cholestasis that are seen in advanced ALD.[6]

Alcohol is processed into acetaldehyde in the liver forming proteins and DNA adducts, promoting lipid peroxidation, glutathione depletion, and mitochondrial damage.[91] These adducts also act as antigens, causing lymphocyte migration to the liver and activating the adaptive immune response. Kupffer cells release anti-inflammatory cytokines (IL-10) and hepato-protective factors (IL-6) that help to prevent hepatocellular damage caused by alcohol.[92,93]

On top of that, acute alcohol intake or binge drinking also increase serum levels of bacterial products. Alcohol increases gut permeability and bacterial product translocation into the portal circulation, leading to the generation of proinflammatory cytokines such tumor necrosis factor, which contribute to hepatocellular damage.[94] A variety of proinflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1, IL-8, osteopontin, CXCL1, CXCL4, CXCL5, and CXCL6, are up-regulated during alcoholic liver injury and also contribute to neutrophil recruitment.[24,95] Recently, there is an increasing amount of evidence suggesting the gut-liver axis and bacterial dysbiosis as a major factor in ALD, potentially becoming a target for therapy. There are major imbalances in the gut barrier that facilitates pathogen-associated molecular patterns, gut-derived bacterial products that trigger mostly hepatic stellate cells (HSCs) and Kupffer cells, to translocate into the portal circulation.[96] The more severe the AH onset gets, the more gut dysbiosis and bile-acid disbalance is seen.[94]

The major pathogenic and prognostic event in the development of ALD is the progression of fibrosis.[97-99] Alcohol abuse can cause liver fibrosis by extracellular buildup of collagen and other matrix proteins. It promotes collagen expression in HSCs and, when coupled with other biological components, forms a variety of adducts that keep HSCs active.[99] Neutrophils, injured hepatocytes, and activated Kupffer cells can also stimulate HSCs by releasing profibrogenic mediators such as transforming growth factor, platelet-derived growth

factor, IL-8, angiotensin II, and leptin.[97] HSC profibrogenic signaling pathways are also stimulated by reactive oxygen species, resulting in fibrogenesis enhancement through modulation of angiogenesis. The endoplasmic reticulum and mitochondrial-derived glutathione continuously neutralize the reactive oxygen species produced by the metabolism of alcohol. However, whenever the body is exposed chronically to alcohol, mitochondrial-derived glutathione becomes depleted, and the reactive oxygen species interact with iron and ethanol forming reactive metabolites responsible for lipid peroxidation of cell membranes.[100,101]

Activated HSCs are destroyed by natural killer cells, which release interferon, cause HSC cell cycle arrest and apoptosis.[102,103] Thus, alcohol reduces the ability of natural killer cells to fight fibrosis and liver regeneration becomes inefficient. In advanced cirrhotic ALD, chronic alcohol exposure impairs liver regeneration by inhibiting DNA synthesis in mature hepatocytes. Thus, along with hepatocyte dedifferentiation, the liver regeneration impairment is a key event leading to liver failure in ALD.[6]

The proliferation mechanisms of adult hepatocyte are entirely substituted by massive ductular cell proliferation and an intensification in the number of hepatocytes expressing markers from progenitor cell.[2] Our group has shown recently that patients with AH have a hepatocyte nuclear factor 4 alpha (HNF4A) transcriptomic footprint. Liver-enriched transcription factors, such as HNF1A, RXRA, and FOXA1, were shown to be downregulated, while HNF4A P2 variants, characteristically expressed throughout fetal liver development, are expressed in AH patients.[104] Thus, the restoration of HNF4A function can potentially be a therapeutic target for severe ALD (Fig. 3).

CONCLUSIONS

The prevalence of AUD and ALD is increasing in a global manner. ALD includes a wide range spectrum of early and advanced phenotypes. Most patients are seen at advanced stages of the disease when an episode of AH and/or clinical

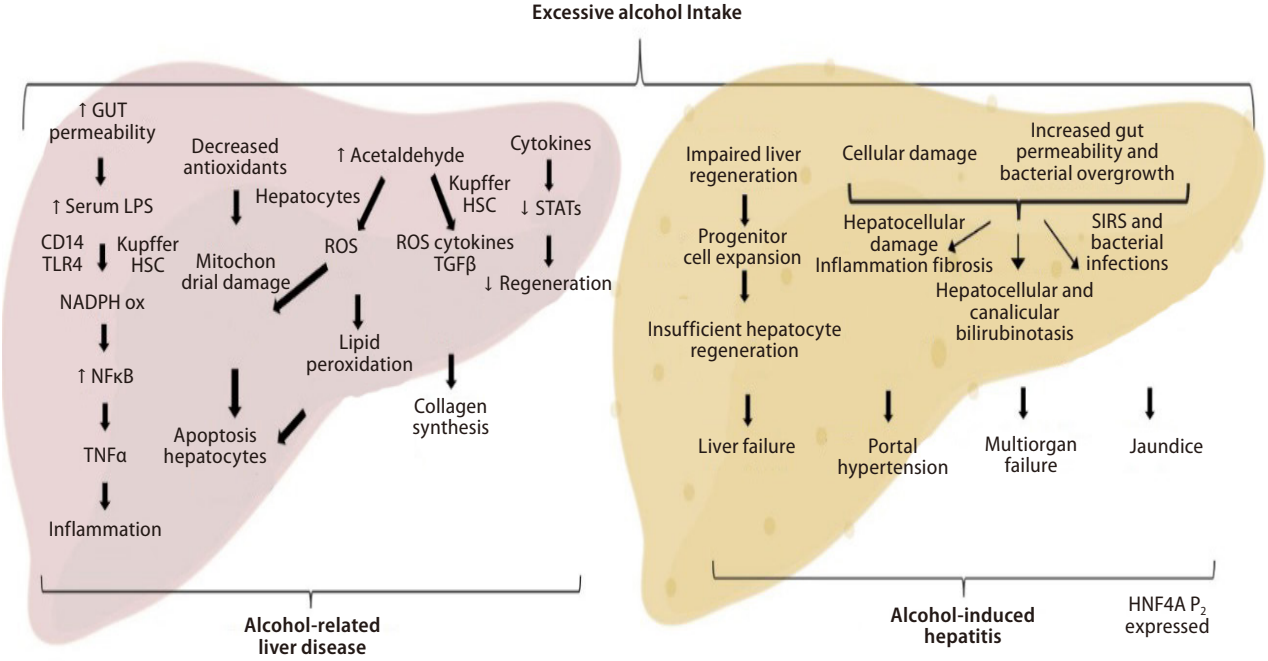


Figure 3. Pathogenesis of alcohol-related liver disease and alcohol-induced hepatitis. Excessive alcohol intake cause Kupffer cells and Stellate cells activation along with changes in the microbiome and increased gut permeability. The resulting liver damage, hepatic and systemic inflammation and liver fibrosis are responsible for the dominant clinical consequences seen in AH patients. In addition, expansion of immature progenitor cells leads to impaired regeneration and HNF4a P2 variants are seen expressed in AH. LPS, lipopolysaccharide; NADPH, nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate; NFκB, nuclear factor kappa B; TNF, tumoral necrosis factor; ROS, reactive oxygen species; HSC, hepatic stellate cell; TGF-β, transforming growth factor-β; STAT, signal transducers and activators of transcription; SIRS, systemic inflammatory response syndrome; HNF4A, hepatocyte nuclear factor 4 alpha; AH, alcohol-induced hepatitis.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0017

decompensations are developed. Campaigns for early detection of asymptomatic or subclinical forms are urgently needed. ALD is characterized by profound fibrogenesis even in subclinical forms. Compared to compensated ALD, AH is characterized by profound reprogramming of hepatocytes with features of de-differentiated and cholangiocytes. Translational studies have identified novel targets for the design of therapeutic clinical trials.

Unmet needs for future research

Scientific consensus conference to better define subclinical stages of ALD. Cost-effective measures and public health policies to reduce alcohol consumption. Early detection of AUD and concomitant ALD is urgently needed. As the underlying mechanisms of subclinical ASH remain elusive, further research is needed to clarify druggable molecular drivers as well as prognostic biomarkers. Effective and safer therapies for patients with ALD are still needed.

Authors' contribution

CGM and LM wrote the manuscript and prepared the figures and tables. DMA and RB revised the manuscript. All the authors read and approved the final version.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. World Health Organization. Global status report on alcohol and health 2018. Genava: World Health Organization, 2019.
2. Argemi J, Ventura-Cots M, Rachakonda V, Bataller R. Alcoholic-related liver disease: pathogenesis, management and future therapeutic developments. Rev Esp Enferm Dig 2020;112:869-878.
3. Bataller R, Gao B. Liver fibrosis in alcoholic liver disease. Semin Liver Dis 2015;35:146-156.
4. Lackner C, Spindelboeck W, Haybaeck J, Douschan P, Rainer F, Terracciano L, et al. Histological parameters and alcohol abstinence determine long-term prognosis in patients with alcoholic liver disease. J Hepatol 2017;66:610-618.
5. Seitz HK, Bataller R, Cortez-Pinto H, Gao B, Gual A, Lackner C, et al. Alcoholic liver disease. Nat Rev Dis Primers 2018;4:16.
6. Gao B, Bataller R. Alcoholic liver disease: pathogenesis and new therapeutic targets. Gastroenterology 2011;141:1572-1585.
7. Mathurin P, Bataller R. Trends in the management and burden of alcoholic liver disease. J Hepatol 2015;62(1 Suppl):S38-S46.
8. Stickel F, Datz C, Hampe J, Bataller R. Pathophysiology and management of alcoholic liver disease: update 2016. Gut Liver 2017;11:173-188.
9. Seitz HK, Neuman MG. The history of alcoholic liver disease: from an unrecognized disease to one of the most frequent diseases in hepatology. J Clin Med 2021;10:858.
10. Shah ND, Ventura-Cots M, Abraldes JG, Alboraie M, Alfadhli A, Argemi J, et al. Alcohol-related liver disease is rarely detected at early stages compared with liver diseases of other etiologies worldwide. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2019;17:2320-2329.e12.
11. Parker R, Aithal GP, Becker U, Gleeson D, Masson S, Wyatt JI, et al. Natural history of histologically proven alcohol-related liver disease: a systematic review. J Hepatol 2019;71:586-593.
12. Simon TG, Roelstraete B, Khalili H, Hagström H, Ludvigsson JF. Mortality in biopsy-confirmed nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: results from a nationwide cohort. Gut 2021;70:1375-1382.
13. Singal AK, Bataller R, Ahn J, Kamath PS, Shah VH. ACG clinical guideline: alcoholic liver disease. Am J Gastroenterol 2018;113:175-194.
14. Crabb DW, Im GY, Szabo G, Mellinger JL, Lucey MR. Diagnosis and treatment of alcohol-associated liver diseases: 2019 practice guidance from the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Hepatology 2020;71:306-333.
15. Bruha R, Dvorak K, Petrtyl J. Alcoholic liver disease. World J Hepatol 2012;4:81-90.
16. Marti-Aguado D, Rodríguez-Ortega A, Mestre-Alagarda C, Bauza M, Valero-Pérez E, Alfaro-Cervello C, et al. Digital pathology: accurate technique for quantitative assessment of histological features in metabolic-associated fatty liver disease. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2021;53:160-171.
17. Israelsen M, Guerrero Misas M, Koutsoumourakis A, Huang Y, Thiele M, Hall A, et al. Collagen proportionate area predicts clinical outcomes in patients with alcohol-related liver disease. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2020;52:1728-1739.
18. Shah ND, Cots MV, Zhang C, Zahiragic N, Yu Y, Yacoub M, et al. Worldwide lack of early referral of patients with alcoholic liver disease: results of the global alcoholic liver disease survey (GLADIS). J Hepatol 2017;66(Supplement 1):S107-S108.
19. Ventura-Cots M, Argemi J, Jones PD, Lackner C, El Hag M, Abraldes JG, et al. Clinical, histological and molecular profiling of different stages of alcohol-related liver disease. Gut

2022;71:1856-1866 .
20. Cortez-Pinto H, Baptista A, Camilo ME, De Moura MC. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis--a long-term follow-up study: comparison with alcoholic hepatitis in ambulatory and hospitalized patients. Dig Dis Sci 2003;48:1909-1913.
21. Bouchier IA, Hislop WS, Prescott RJ. A prospective study of alcoholic liver disease and mortality. J Hepatol 1992;16:290-297.
22. Chedid A, Mendenhall CL, Gartside P, French SW, Chen T, Rabin L. Prognostic factors in alcoholic liver disease. VA Cooperative Study Group. Am J Gastroenterol 1991;86:210-216.
23. Altamirano J, Miquel R, Katoonizadeh A, Abraldes JG, Duarte-Rojo A, Louvet A, et al. A histologic scoring system for prognosis of patients with alcoholic hepatitis. Gastroenterology 2014;146:1231-1239.e1-e6.
24. Dominguez M, Miquel R, Colmenero J, Moreno M, García-Pagán JC, Bosch J, et al. Hepatic expression of CXC chemokines predicts portal hypertension and survival in patients with alcoholic hepatitis. Gastroenterology 2009;136:1639-1650.
25. Affò S, Dominguez M, Lozano JJ, Sancho-Bru P, Rodrigo-Torres D, Morales-Ibanez O, et al. Transcriptome analysis identifies TNF superfamily receptors as potential therapeutic targets in alcoholic hepatitis. Gut 2013;62:452-460.
26. Lanthier N, Rubbia-Brandt L, Lin-Marq N, Clément S, Frossard JL, Goossens N, et al. Hepatic cell proliferation plays a pivotal role in the prognosis of alcoholic hepatitis. J Hepatol 2015;63:609-621.
27. Lackner C, Stauber RE, Davies S, Denk H, Dienes HP, Gnemmi V, et al. Development and prognostic relevance of a histologic grading and staging system for alcohol-related liver disease. J Hepatol 2021;75:810-819.
28. Crabb DW, Bataller R, Chalasani NP, Kamath PS, Lucey M, Mathurin P, et al. Standard definitions and common data elements for clinical trials in patients with alcoholic hepatitis: recommendation from the NIAAA alcoholic hepatitis consortia. Gastroenterology 2016;150:785-790.
29. American Psychiatric Association. Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, fifth edition. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2013.
30. Saunders JB, Aasland OG, Babor TF, de la Fuente JR, Grant M. Development of the alcohol use disorders identification test (AUDIT): WHO collaborative project on early detection of persons with harmful alcohol consumption--II. Addiction 1993;88:791-804.
31. Bush K, Kivlahan DR, McDonell MB, Fihn SD, Bradley KA. The AUDIT alcohol consumption questions (AUDIT-C): an effective brief screening test for problem drinking. Ambulatory care quality improvement project (ACQUIP). Alcohol use disorders identification test. Arch Intern Med 1998;158:1789-1795.
32. Fiellin DA, Reid MC, O'Connor PG. Screening for alcohol problems in primary care: a systematic review. Arch Intern Med 2000;160:1977-1989.
33. Saitz R, Mayo-Smith MF, Roberts MS, Redmond HA, Bernard DR, Calkins DR. Individualized treatment for alcohol withdrawal. A randomized double-blind controlled trial. JAMA 1994;272:519-523.
34. Baraona E, Leo MA, Borowsky SA, Lieber CS. Alcoholic hepatomegaly: accumulation of protein in the liver. Science 1975;190:794-795.
35. Mendenhall CL, Anderson S, Weesner RE, Goldberg SJ, Crolic KA. Protein-calorie malnutrition associated with alcoholic hepatitis. Veterans administration cooperative study group on alcoholic hepatitis. Am J Med 1984;76:211-222.
36. Litten RZ, Bradley AM, Moss HB. Alcohol biomarkers in applied settings: recent advances and future research opportunities. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 2010;34:955-967.
37. Cabezas J, Lucey MR, Bataller R. Biomarkers for monitoring alcohol use. Clin Liver Dis (Hoboken) 2016;8:59-63.
38. Sterneck M, Yegles M, Rothkirch von G, Staufer K, Vettorazzi E, Schulz KH, et al. Determination of ethyl glucuronide in hair improves evaluation of long-term alcohol abstention in liver transplant candidates. Liver Int 2014;34:469-476.
39. Stewart SH, Koch DG, Willner IR, Anton RF, Reuben A. Validation of blood phosphatidylethanol as an alcohol consumption biomarker in patients with chronic liver disease. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 2014;38:1706-1711.
40. Fleming MF, Anton RF, Spies CD. A review of genetic, biological, pharmacological, and clinical factors that affect carbohydrate-deficient transferrin levels. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 2004;28:1347-1355.
41. Hrubec Z, Omenn GS. Evidence of genetic predisposition to alcoholic cirrhosis and psychosis: twin concordances for alcoholism and its biological end points by zygosity among male veterans. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 1981;5:207-215.
42. Reed T, Page WF, Viken RJ, Christian JC. Genetic predisposition to organ-specific endpoints of alcoholism. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 1996;20:1528-1533.
43. Whitfield JB, Rahman K, Haber PS, Day CP, Masson S, Daly AK, et al. Brief report: genetics of alcoholic cirrhosis-GenomALC multinational study. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 2015;39:836-842.
44. Poynard T, Bedossa P, Opolon P. Natural history of liver fibrosis

progression in patients with chronic hepatitis C. The OBSVIRC, METAVIR, CLINIVIR, and DOSVIRC groups. Lancet 1997;349:825-832.
45. Bedogni G, Miglioli L, Masutti F, Ferri S, Castiglione A, Lenzi M, et al. Natural course of chronic HCV and HBV infection and role of alcohol in the general population: the Dionysos study. Am J Gastroenterol 2008;103:2248-2253.
46. Novo-Veleiro I, Alvela-Suárez L, Chamorro AJ, González-Sarmiento R, Laso FJ, Marcos M. Alcoholic liver disease and hepatitis C virus infection. World J Gastroenterol 2016;22:1411-1420.
47. Iida-Ueno A, Enomoto M, Tamori A, Kawada N. Hepatitis B virus infection and alcohol consumption. World J Gastroenterol 2017;23:2651-2659.
48. Åberg F, Helenius-Hietala J, Puukka P, Jula A. Binge drinking and the risk of liver events: a population-based cohort study. Liver Int 2017;37:1373-1381.
49. Pose E, Pera G, Torán P, Gratacós-Ginès J, Avitabile E, Expósito C, et al. Interaction between metabolic syndrome and alcohol consumption, risk factors of liver fibrosis: a population-based study. Liver Int 2021;41:1556-1564.
50. Thiele M, Madsen BS, Hansen JF, Detlefsen S, Antonsen S, Krag A. Accuracy of the enhanced liver fibrosis test vs fibrotest, elastography, and indirect markers in detection of advanced fibrosis in patients with alcoholic liver disease. Gastroenterology 2018;154:1369-1379.
51. Chrostek L, Panasiuk A. Liver fibrosis markers in alcoholic liver disease. World J Gastroenterol 2014;20:8018-8023.
52. Mueller S, Englert S, Seitz HK, Badea RI, Erhardt A, Bozaari B, et al. Inflammation-adapted liver stiffness values for improved fibrosis staging in patients with hepatitis C virus and alcoholic liver disease. Liver Int 2015;35:2514-2521.
53. Pavlov CS, Casazza G, Nikolova D, Tsochatzis E, Burroughs AK, Ivashkin VT, et al. Transient elastography for diagnosis of stages of hepatic fibrosis and cirrhosis in people with alcoholic liver disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2015;1:CD010542.
54. Thiele M, Rausch V, Fluhr G, Kjærgaard M, Piecha F, Mueller J, et al. Controlled attenuation parameter and alcoholic hepatic steatosis: diagnostic accuracy and role of alcohol detoxification. J Hepatol 2018;68:1025-1032.
55. Rasmussen DN, Thiele M, Johansen S, Kjærgaard M, Lindvig KP, Israelsen M, et al. Prognostic performance of 7 biomarkers compared to liver biopsy in early alcohol-related liver disease. J Hepatol 2021;75:1017-1025.
56. Ferraioli G, Tinelli C, Lissandrin R, Zicchetti M, Dal Bello B, Filice G, et al. Point shear wave elastography method for assessing liver stiffness. World J Gastroenterol 2014;20:4787-4796.
57. Cho Y, Choi YI, Oh S, Han J, Joo SK, Lee DH, et al. Point shear wave elastography predicts fibrosis severity and steatohepatitis in alcohol-related liver disease. Hepatol Int 2020;14:270-280.
58. Trebicka J, Gu W, de Ledinghen V, Aubé C, Krag A, Praktiknjo M, et al. Two-dimensional shear wave elastography predicts survival in advanced chronic liver disease. Gut 2022;71:402-414.
59. Marti-Aguado D, Rodríguez-Ortega A, Alberich-Bayarri A, Marti-Bonmati L. Magnetic resonance imaging analysis of liver fibrosis and inflammation: overwhelming gray zones restrict clinical use. Abdom Radiol (NY) 2020;45:3557-3568.
60. Selvaraj EA, Mózes FE, Jayaswal ANA, Zafarmand MH, Vali Y, Lee JA, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of elastography and magnetic resonance imaging in patients with NAFLD: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Hepatol 2021;75:770-785.
61. Chen HW, Gougol A, Chupetlovska K, Clemente A, Bataller R, Duarte-Rojo A, et al. Computed tomography-based radiomics identifies novel prognostic factors in alcohol associated hepatitis. AASLD The Liver Meeting; 2020 Nov 13-16.
62. European Association for the Study of Liver. EASL clinical practical guidelines: management of alcoholic liver disease. J Hepatol 2012;57:399-420.
63. Ventura-Cots M, El Hag M, Clemente A, Villaseca C, Oertel M, Aguilar-Bravo B, et al. Histological and molecular profiling reveals ductular reaction as a driver of portal hypertension in patients with alcohol-associated hepatitis. AASLD The Liver Meeting; 2020 Nov 13-16.
64. Dubois M, Sciarra A, Trépo E, Marot A, Saldarriaga J, Moreno C, et al. Histologic parameter score does not predict short-term survival in severe alcoholic hepatitis. United European Gastroenterol J 2020;8:1003-1012.
65. Arab JP, Roblero JP, Altamirano J, Bessone F, Chaves Araujo R, Higuera-De la Tijera F, et al. Alcohol-related liver disease: clinical practice guidelines by the Latin American Association for the study of the liver (ALEH). Ann Hepatol 2019;18:518-535.
66. Maddrey WC, Boitnott JK, Bedine MS, Weber FL Jr, Mezey E, White RI Jr. Corticosteroid therapy of alcoholic hepatitis. Gastroenterology 1978;75:193-199.
67. Kamath PS, Kim WR; Advanced Liver Disease Study Group. The model for end-stage liver disease (MELD). Hepatology 2007;45:797-805.
68. Forrest EH, Evans CD, Stewart S, Phillips M, Oo YH, McAvoy NC, et al. Analysis of factors predictive of mortality in alcoholic hepatitis and derivation and validation of the Glasgow alco-

holic hepatitis score. Gut 2005;54:1174-1179.
69. Gholam PM. Prognosis and prognostic scoring models for alcoholic liver disease and acute alcoholic hepatitis. Clin Liver Dis 2016;20:491-497.
70. Dominguez M, Rincón D, Abraldes JG, Miquel R, Colmenero J, Bellot P, et al. A new scoring system for prognostic stratification of patients with alcoholic hepatitis. Am J Gastroenterol 2008;103:2747-2756.
71. Dunn W, Jamil LH, Brown LS, Wiesner RH, Kim WR, Menon KV, et al. MELD accurately predicts mortality in patients with alcoholic hepatitis. Hepatology 2005;41:353-358.
72. Arraez DM, Cots MV, Altamirano J, Abraldes JG, Clemente A, Alvarado-Tapia E, et al. A large worldwide study shows that meld is the best scoring system to predict mortality in alcohol-associated hepatitis. AASLD The Liver Meeting; 2020 Nov 13-16.
73. Louvet A, Naveau S, Abdelnour M, Ramond MJ, Diaz E, Fartoux L, et al. The Lille model: a new tool for therapeutic strategy in patients with severe alcoholic hepatitis treated with steroids. Hepatology 2007;45:1348-1354.
74. Altamirano J, Fagundes C, Dominguez M, García E, Michelena J, Cárdenas A, et al. Acute kidney injury is an early predictor of mortality for patients with alcoholic hepatitis. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2012;10:65-71.e3.
75. Sujan R, Cruz-Lemini M, Altamirano J, Simonetto DA, Maiwall R, Axley P, et al. A validated score predicts acute kidney injury and survival in patients with alcoholic hepatitis. Liver Transpl 2018;24:1655-1664.
76. Fernandez-Carrillo C, Clemente A, Alvarado-Tapias E, Cots MV, Argemi J, Ray EC, et al. Identification of interleukin-18 as a specific urine biomarler of acute kidney injury in patients with alcohol-associated hepatitis. AASLD The Liver Meeting; 2020 Nov 13-16.
77. Degré D, Stauber RE, Englebert G, Sarocchi F, Verset L, Rainer F, et al. Long-term outcomes in patients with decompensated alcohol-related liver disease, steatohepatitis and Maddrey's discriminant function <32. J Hepatol 2020;72:636-642.
78. Clemente A, Atkinson S, Tyson LD, Cots MV, Argemi J, Vergis N, et al. Early alcohol relapse after an episode of alcohol-induced hepatitis (AH): prevalence, impact on liver function, genetic and non-genetic factors and identification of distinct risk profiles. AASLD The Liver Meeting; 2020 Nov 13-16.
79. Arab JP, Díaz LA, Baeza N, Idalsoaga F, Fuentes-López E, Arnold J, et al. Identification of optimal therapeutic window for steroid use in severe alcohol-associated hepatitis: a worldwide study. J Hepatol 2021;75:1026-1033.
80. Louvet A, Thursz MR, Kim DJ, Labreuche J, Atkinson SR, Sidhu SS, et al. Corticosteroids reduce risk of death within 28 days for patients with severe alcoholic hepatitis, compared with pentoxifylline or placebo-a meta-analysis of individual data from controlled trials. Gastroenterology 2018;155:458-468.e8.
81. Cho Y, Park YS, Kim HY, Kim W, Lee HJ, Kim DJ. Efficacy of granulocyte colony stimulating factor in patients with severe alcoholic hepatitis with partial or null response to steroid (GRACIAH trial): study protocol for a randomized controlled trial. Trials 2018;19:696.
82. Shasthry SM, Sharma MK, Shasthry V, Pande A, Sarin SK. Efficacy of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor in the management of steroid-nonresponsive severe alcoholic hepatitis: a double-blind randomized controlled trial. Hepatology 2019;70:802-811.
83. Louvet A, Labreuche J, Dao T, Thevenot T, Oberti F, Bureau C, et al. Combination of amoxicillin/clavulanate and prednisolone in severe alcoholic hepatitis: results of the randomized controlled trial Antibiocor. J Hepatol 2021;2021:S201-S202.
84. Bajaj JS, Gavis EA, Fagan A, Wade JB, Thacker LR, Fuchs M, et al. A randomized clinical trial of fecal microbiota transplant for alcohol use disorder. Hepatology 2021;73:1688-1700.
85. McClain CJ, Vatsalya V, Rex R, Hassanein TI, Stein LL, Flamm SL, et al. DUR-928 therapy for acute alcoholic hepatitis: a pilot study. Hepatology 2019;70:1483-1484.
86. Arab JP, Sehrawat TS, Simonetto DA, Verma VK, Feng D, Tang T, et al. An open-label, dose-escalation study to assess the safety and efficacy of il-22 agonist f-652 in patients with alcohol-associated hepatitis. Hepatology 2020;72:441-453.
87. Mathurin P, Moreno C, Samuel D, Dumortier J, Salleron J, Durand F, et al. Early liver transplantation for severe alcoholic hepatitis. N Engl J Med 2011;365:1790-1800.
88. Singal AK, Bashar H, Anand BS, Jampana SC, Singal V, Kuo YF. Outcomes after liver transplantation for alcoholic hepatitis are similar to alcoholic cirrhosis: exploratory analysis from the UNOS database. Hepatology 2012;55:1398-1405.
89. Im GY, Kim-Schluger L, Shenoy A, Schubert E, Goel A, Friedman SL, et al. Early liver transplantation for severe alcoholic hepatitis in the United States--a single-center experience. Am J Transplant 2016;16:841-849.
90. Lee BP, Chen PH, Haugen C, Hernaez R, Gurakar A, Philosophe B, et al. Three-year results of a pilot program in early liver transplantation for severe alcoholic hepatitis. Ann Surg 2017;265:20-29.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0017

91. Ronis MJ, Korourian S, Blackburn ML, Badeaux J, Badger TM. The role of ethanol metabolism in development of alcoholic steatohepatitis in the rat. Alcohol 2010;44:157-169.
92. Jiang Y, Zhang T, Kusumanchi P, Han S, Yang Z, Liangpunsakul S. Alcohol metabolizing enzymes, microsomal ethanol oxidizing system, cytochrome P450 2E1, catalase, and aldehyde dehydrogenase in alcohol-associated liver disease. Biomedicines 2020;8:50.
93. Crabb DW, Matsumoto M, Chang D, You M. Overview of the role of alcohol dehydrogenase and aldehyde dehydrogenase and their variants in the genesis of alcohol-related pathology. Proc Nutr Soc 2004;63:49-63.
94. Arab JP, Martin-Mateos RM, Shah VH. Gut-liver axis, cirrhosis and portal hypertension: the chicken and the egg. Hepatol Int 2018;12(Suppl 1):24-33.
95. Petrasek J, Bala S, Csak T, Lippai D, Kodys K, Menashy V, et al. IL-1 receptor antagonist ameliorates inflammasome-dependent alcoholic steatohepatitis in mice. J Clin Invest 2012;122:3476-3489.
96. Idalsoaga F, Kulkarni AV, Mousa OY, Arrese M, Arab JP. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and alcohol-related liver disease: two intertwined entities. Front Med (Lausanne) 2020;7:448.
97. Chedid A, Arain S, Snyder A, Mathurin P, Capron F, Naveau S. The immunology of fibrogenesis in alcoholic liver disease. Arch Pathol Lab Med 2004;128:1230-1238.
98. Lackner C, Tiniakos D. Fibrosis and alcohol-related liver disease. J Hepatol 2019;70:294-304.
99. Bataller R, Brenner DA. Liver fibrosis. J Clin Invest 2005;115:209-218.
100. Setshedi M, Wands JR, Monte SM. Acetaldehyde adducts in alcoholic liver disease. Oxid Med Cell Longev 2010;3:178-185.
101. Zhu H, Jia Z, Misra H, Li YR. Oxidative stress and redox signaling mechanisms of alcoholic liver disease: updated experimental and clinical evidence. J Dig Dis 2012;13:133-142.
102. Yi HS, Lee YS, Byun JS, Seo W, Jeong JM, Park O, et al. Alcohol dehydrogenase III exacerbates liver fibrosis by enhancing stellate cell activation and suppressing natural killer cells in mice. Hepatology 2014;60:1044-1053.
103. Notas G, Kisseleva T, Brenner D. NK and NKT cells in liver injury and fibrosis. Clin Immunol 2009;130:16-26.
104. Argemi J, Latasa MU, Atkinson SR, Blokhin IO, Massey V, Gue JP, et al. Defective HNF4alpha-dependent gene expression as a driver of hepatocellular failure in alcoholic hepatitis. Nat Commun 2019;10:3126.
105. European Association for Study of Liver; Asociacion Latinoamericana para el Estudio del Higado. EASL-ALEH clinical practice guidelines: non-invasive tests for evaluation of liver disease severity and prognosis. J Hepatol 2015;63:237-264.
106. Madsen BS, Thiele M, Detlefsen S, Sørensen MD, Kjaergaard M, Møller LS, et al. Prediction of liver fibrosis severity in alcoholic liver disease by human microfibrillar-associated protein 4. Liver Int 2020;40:1701-1712.
107. Prystupa A, Kiciński P, Luchowska-Kocot D, Nowicki G, Dzida G, Myśliński W, et al. Analysis of novel serum markers of fibrosis and angiogenesis in patients with alcoholic liver cirrhosis. Ann Agric Environ Med 2020;27:568-573.
108. Bianco C, Casirati E, Malvestiti F, Valenti L. Genetic predisposition similarities between NASH and ASH: identification of new therapeutic targets. JHEP Rep 2021;3:100284.
109. Whitfield JB, Schwantes-An TH, Darlay R, Aithal GP, Atkinson SR, Bataller R, et al. A genetic risk score and diabetes predict development of alcohol-related cirrhosis in drinkers. J Hepatol 2022;76:275-282.
110. Vatsalya V, Cave MC, Kong M, Gobejishvili L, Falkner KC, Craycroft J, et al. Keratin 18 is a diagnostic and prognostic factor for acute alcoholic hepatitis. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2020;18:2046-2054.
111. Hu K, Perez-Matos MC, Argemi J, Vilar-Gomez E, Shalaurova I, Bullitt E, et al. Lipoprotein Z, a hepatotoxic lipoprotein, predicts outcome in alcohol-associated hepatitis. Hepatology 2022;75:968-982.
112. Duan Y, Llorente C, Lang S, Brandl K, Chu H, Jiang L, et al. Bacteriophage targeting of gut bacterium attenuates alcoholic liver disease. Nature 2019;575:505-511.
113. Guldiken N, Argemi J, Gurbuz B, Atkinson SR, Oliverius M, Fila P, et al. Serum transferrin as a biomarker of hepatocyte nuclear factor 4 alpha activity and hepatocyte function in liver diseases. BMC Med 2021;19:39.
114. Michelena J, Altamirano J, Abraldes JG, Affò S, Morales-Ibanez O, Sancho-Bru P, et al. Systemic inflammatory response and serum lipopolysaccharide levels predict multiple organ failure and death in alcoholic hepatitis. Hepatology 2015;62:762-772.
115. Momen-Heravi F, Saha B, Kodys K, Catalano D, Satishchandran A, Szabo G. Increased number of circulating exosomes and their microRNA cargos are potential novel biomarkers in alcoholic hepatitis. J Transl Med 2015;13:261.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0104
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:16-32

Review

Management of refractory ascites

Florence Wong

Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Toronto General Hospital, University Health Network, University of Toronto, Toronto, Canada

The development of refractory ascites in approximately 10% of patients with decompensated cirrhosis heralds the progression to a more advanced stage of cirrhosis. Its pathogenesis is related to significant hemodynamic changes, initiated by portal hypertension, but ultimately leading to renal hypoperfusion and avid sodium retention. Inflammation can also contribute to the pathogenesis of refractory ascites by causing portal microthrombi, perpetuating the portal hypertension. Many complications accompany the development of refractory ascites, but renal dysfunction is most common. Management starts with continuation of sodium restriction, which needs frequent reviews for adherence; and regular large volume paracentesis of 5 L or more with albumin infusions to prevent the development of paracentesis-induced circulatory dysfunction. Albumin infusions independent of paracentesis may have a role in the management of these patients. The insertion of a covered, smaller diameter, transjugular intrahepatic porto-systemic stent shunt (TIPS) in the appropriate patients with reasonable liver reserve can bring about improvement in quality of life and improved survival after ascites clearance. Devices such as an automated low-flow ascites pump may be available in the future for ascites treatment. Patients with refractory ascites should be referred for liver transplant, as their prognosis is poor. In patients with refractory ascites and concomitant chronic kidney disease of more than stage 3b, assessment should be referred for dual liver-kidney transplants. In patients with very advanced cirrhosis not suitable for any definitive treatment for ascites control, palliative care should be involved to improve the quality of life of these patients. **(Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:16-32)**

Keywords: Ascites; Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunt; Liver transplantation; Albumin; Paracentesis

INTRODUCTION

The development of ascites in the natural history of cirrhosis heralds the onset of decompensation. More contemporary data from the United Kingdom suggest that decompensation occurs at the rate of 31% in the first year after the diagnosis of cirrhosis, and thereafter at the rate of 5–7% per annum, with ascites being the most common mode of decompensation.[1] Ascites is usually responsive to diuretic therapy at the initial stage. However, with the progression of the cirrhotic process, renal sodium retention becomes more avid and increasing diuretic doses are required to control the ascites. Ultimately, the patient either develops complications to the diuretics or the ascites is no longer responsive to the diuretics. The patient is said to have refractory ascites (RA) and some form of second-line therapy will need to be instituted. Approximately 10% of patients with cirrhosis and ascites have RA at any given time. In addition to the usual complica-

Corresponding author : **Florence Wong**
Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Toronto General Hospital, University Health Network, University of Toronto, 200 Elizabeth Street, Toronto Ontario M5G2C4, Canada
Tel: +1-416-3403834, Fax: +1-416-3405019, E-mail: Florence.wong@utoronto.ca
https://orcid.org/0000-0001-9263-8869

Editor: Jung-Hwan Yu, Inha University Hospital, Korea

Received : Apr. 17, 2022 / **Revised :** Jun. 1, 2022 / **Accepted :** Jun. 7, 2022

tions associated with the presence of ascites such as the risk for the development of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, electrolyte abnormalities, or renal dysfunction, the presence of RA is associated with its own unique problems such as a constant sense of fullness, decreased appetite, the development of various hernias, nutritional deficiencies, and sarcopenia. Therefore, patients with RA have a very poor quality of life.[2] Older literature has indicated a 1-year mortality for patients with RA to be at 50%,[3] although more recent reports have indicated a slightly improved prognosis, but the mortality is still in excess of 20% at 1 year.[4]

DEFINITION OF RA

Tense ascites can be recurrent or refractory. Recurrent ascites is ascites that recurs at least three times a year despite dietary sodium restriction and diuretic therapy. It may be a forerunner of RA.[5] RA is defined as ascites that cannot be mobilized or the early recurrence of which (after a large volume paracentesis [LVP]) cannot be prevented by medical therapy.[5] RA can be divided into two subtypes: diuretic resistant or diuretic intolerant. Table 1 details the diagnostic criteria for both subtypes.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF RA

Patients with decompensated cirrhosis have significant hemodynamic changes, initiated by architectural distortion of the liver related to cirrhosis. The laying down of fibrous scar tissues and nodular formation within the liver provides the fixed component of obstruction to portal flow, while stellate cell activation furnishes the dynamic component of increased resistance to portal flow. Stellate cells themselves also produce extracellular matrix and collagen, adding to the fixed component of the increase in intrahepatic resistance as the liver cirrhosis progresses. Microthrombi formation within the

Table 1. Diagnostic criteria for refractory ascites

	Criteria
Refractory ascites	Ascites that cannot be mobilized or the early recurrence of which (i.e., after therapeutic paracentesis) cannot be satisfactorily prevented by medical therapy
A) diuretic resistant	The development of refractory ascites is due to lack of response to dietary sodium restriction and maximal doses of diuretics
B) diuretic intractable	The development of refractory ascites is due to the development of diuretic-induced complications* that precludes the use of effective doses of diuretics
Duration of treatment	Maximum doses of diuretic + adherence to a low sodium diet of ≤88 mmol/day for ≥1 week
Maximum diuretic doses	Either spironolactone 400 mg/day or amiloride 30 mg/day plus furosemide 160 mg/day
Lack of response	Mean weight loss of <0.8 kg over 4 days and daily urinary sodium excretion less than the daily sodium intake
Early ascites recurrence	Re-appearance of grade 2 or moderate ascites with moderate symmetrical abdominal distention, or grade 3 with massive ascites with marked abdominal distention within 4 weeks of initial mobilization
Diuretic induced complications*	Renal impairment, hyponatremia, hypo- or hyperkalemia, hepatic encephalopathy

Adapted from Salerno et al.[5]
*Renal impairment: increase of serum creatinine by >100% to a value >133 μmol/L (2 mg/dL) in patients with ascites responding to treatment. Hyponatremia: decrease of serum sodium by >10 mmol/L to a serum sodium of <125 mmol/L. Hypo- or hyperkalemia: change in serum potassium to <3 mmol/L or >6 mmol/L despite appropriate measures. Hepatic encephalopathy: development of encephalopathy in the absence of any other precipitating factor.

Abbreviations:

ACLF, acute-on-chronic liver failure; alfapump, automated low flow ascites pump; BNP, brain natriuretic peptide; CKD, chronic kidney disease; EABV, effective arterial blood volume; FIPS, Freiburg Index of Post-TIPS survival; HE, hepatic encephalopathy; LVP, large volume paracentesis; MELD, Model of End-stage Liver Disease; NSBB, non-selective beta-blocker; PPCD, post-paracentesis circulatory dysfunction; PTFE, polytetrafluoroethylene; RA, refractory ascites; TIPS, transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunt

intrahepatic vasculature can add to the distortion of the liver architecture by causing areas of parenchymal extinction.[6] Another process that contributes to the progressive increase in portal hypertension in cirrhosis is the development of collateral vessels. There is angiogenesis driven by vascular endothelial growth factor, augmenting the splanchnic capacitance, leading to increased portal flow,[7] perpetuating the portal hypertension.

The development of portal hypertension has many downstream effects. Firstly, the distension of the splanchnic vessels increases the shear stress on the vessels, and this leads to the production of various vasodilators including nitric oxide. As a result, splanchnic vasodilatation occurs. Some of these excess splanchnic vasodilators can be transferred to the systemic circulation via portosystemic shunts, causing systemic vasodilation. The resultant relative insufficient effective arterial blood volume (EABV) leads to the activation of various vasoconstrictor systems in an attempt to reduce the extent of the splanchnic and systemic vasodilation and to stimulate renal sodium and water retention to increase the intravascular volume. However, the presence of portal hypertension will preferentially localize the excess fluid into the peritoneal cavity as ascites, leaving the central circulation relatively deficient in EABV.

Another downstream effect of portal hypertension is the disruption of the gut vascular barrier related to venous congestion from splanchnic vasodilatation and splanchnic neoangiogenesis. The increased permeability of the gut results in a rise in the translocation of gut bacteria. Many of these bacterial products have vasodilatory properties themselves; contributing to the splanchnic vasodilatation. Other components of bacterial products can stimulate the innate immune system, leading to systemic inflammation. Within the liver, the pro-inflammatory milieu promotes further fibrosis; within the splanchnic circulation, inflammation promotes splanchnic thrombosis,[7,8] further aggravating the portal hypertension, thereby perpetuating the above-mentioned portal hypertension-related hemodynamic changes (Fig. 1).

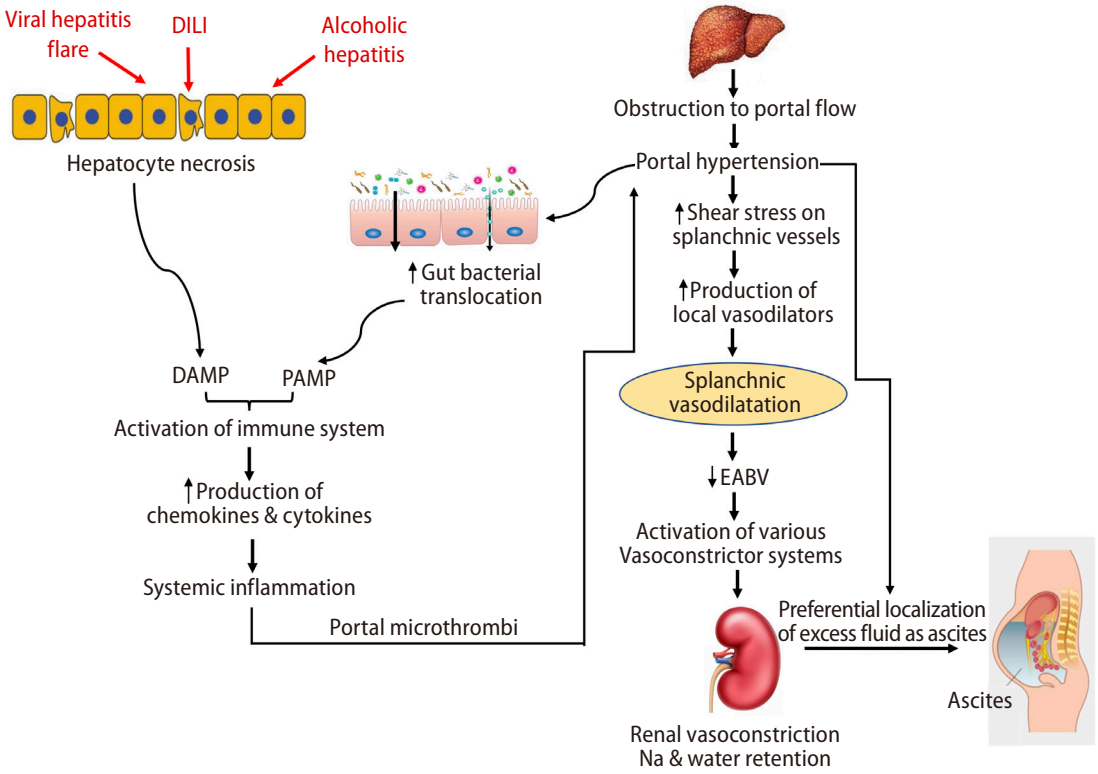


Figure 1. Pathophysiology of ascites formation. DILI, drug induced liver injury; DAMP, damage associated molecular pattern; PAMP, pathogen associated molecular pattern; EABV, effective arterial blood volume.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0104

As the cirrhotic process progresses, and the portal hypertension increases, the above changes become more severe, and the sodium retention becomes more avid, while the renal circulation becomes more vasoconstricted. Ultimately, altered renal blood flow sets in,[9] renal hypoperfusion ensues, leading to the development of chronic renal insufficiency, or what was previously known as type 2 hepatorenal syndrome, and the ascites becomes refractory to diuretic therapy.

MANAGEMENT OF RA

The management of patients with RA should follow a stepwise approach, starting with sodium restriction, and LVP. Judicious use of medications could avoid further complications. In the appropriate patients, the insertion of a transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunt (TIPS) should be considered. All patients with RA should be assessed for liver transplant (Fig. 2).

Dietary sodium and fluid restriction

Dietary sodium restriction is required at all stages of ascites including those with RA, as it reduces the rate of ascites accumulation. It is recommended that daily sodium intake should be limited to 88 mmol or 2 g per day.[10] Counselling with a dietitian is helpful, as is frequent reviews of food diary, especially in patients who are accumulating ascites at a rapid rate. Information on where to purchase low sodium food items and advice on low sodium recipes are other measures that

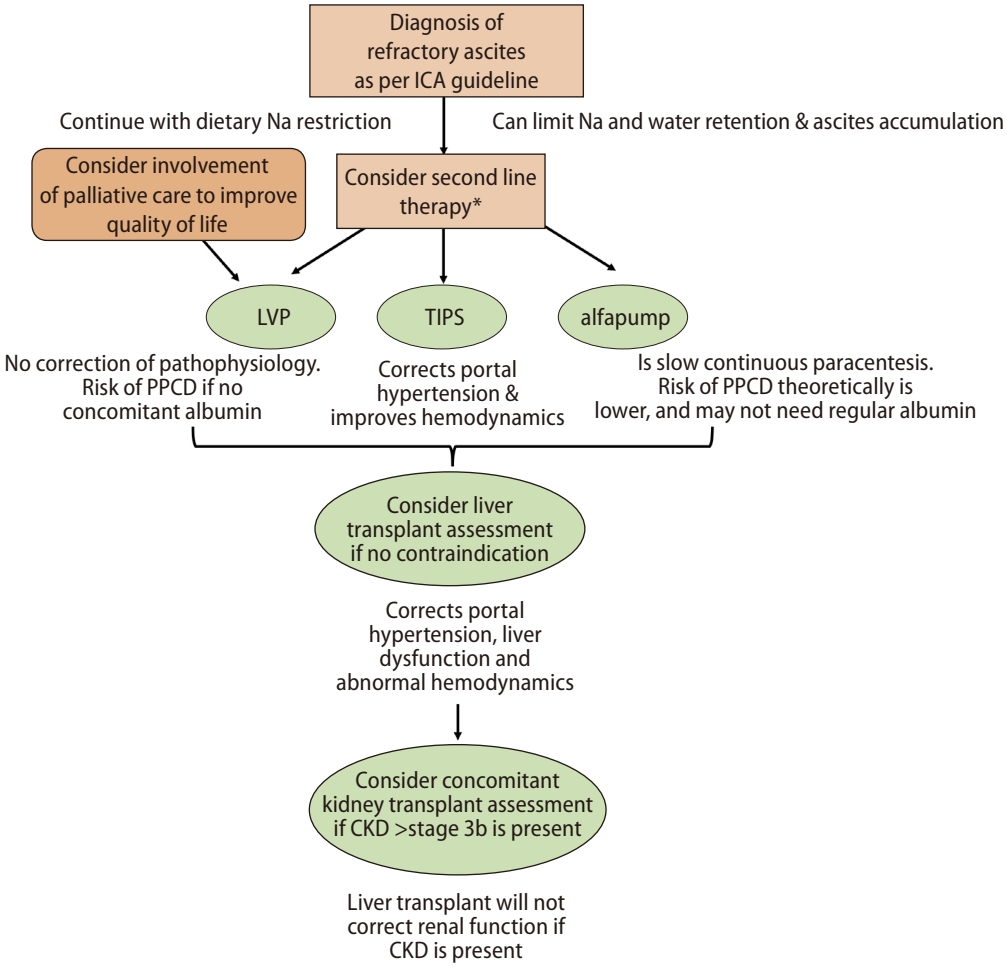


Figure 2. Suggested treatment algorithm of refractory ascites. ICA, International Ascites Club; LVP, large volume paracentesis; PPCD, post paracentesis circulatory dysfunction; TIPS, transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunt; alfapump, automated low flow ascites pump; CKD, chronic kidney disease. *Second line therapies are: LVP, TIPS or alfapump.

can improve compliance with sodium restriction. Some patients who have been labeled as having RA can lose their ascites and start responding to diuretics again once they adhere to their sodium restriction, especially in patients whose daily renal sodium excretion is more than 88 mmol/day.

Fluid restriction is not required in patients with RA. It is difficult to enforce and is not practical. Fluid restriction is only useful when the fluid intake is less than the urine output, which in patients with RA is often around 500 mL/day. In patients who have hyponatremia with serum sodium of ≤125 mmol/L, it is recommended that some fluid restriction be instituted.[11] However, the level of serum sodium that should initiate fluid restriction has not been well defined.

Calculating the sodium balance

This is important in determining compliance with dietary sodium restriction, especially in patients who are rapidly gaining weight after a LVP. A 24-hour urine collection to measure the renal sodium output and a weight chart are required. A 24-hour urine collection is preferred to a spot urine sample as it is more accurate. In patients who are prescribed an 88 mmol daily sodium restriction diet, and who are excreting no urinary sodium at all, the daily sodium accumulation is 88 mmol/day or 616 mmol/week. Since the ascitic sodium concentration is the same as serum sodium concentration, the weekly ascites accumulation is 616 mmol/week ÷ 140 mmol/L or 4.4 L/week. Any patient who is requesting a weekly LVP of more than 4.4 L is clearly non-compliant with dietary sodium restriction, and repeat dietary counselling is needed (Fig. 3). The accumulation of ascites is usually a little less, as there is insensible loss of sodium through the respiratory tract. Frequently, a food record is very revealing, as many patients regard sodium restriction as "just not adding salt at the table" without realizing that many prepared food items are high in sodium. Patients who are excreting more than 88

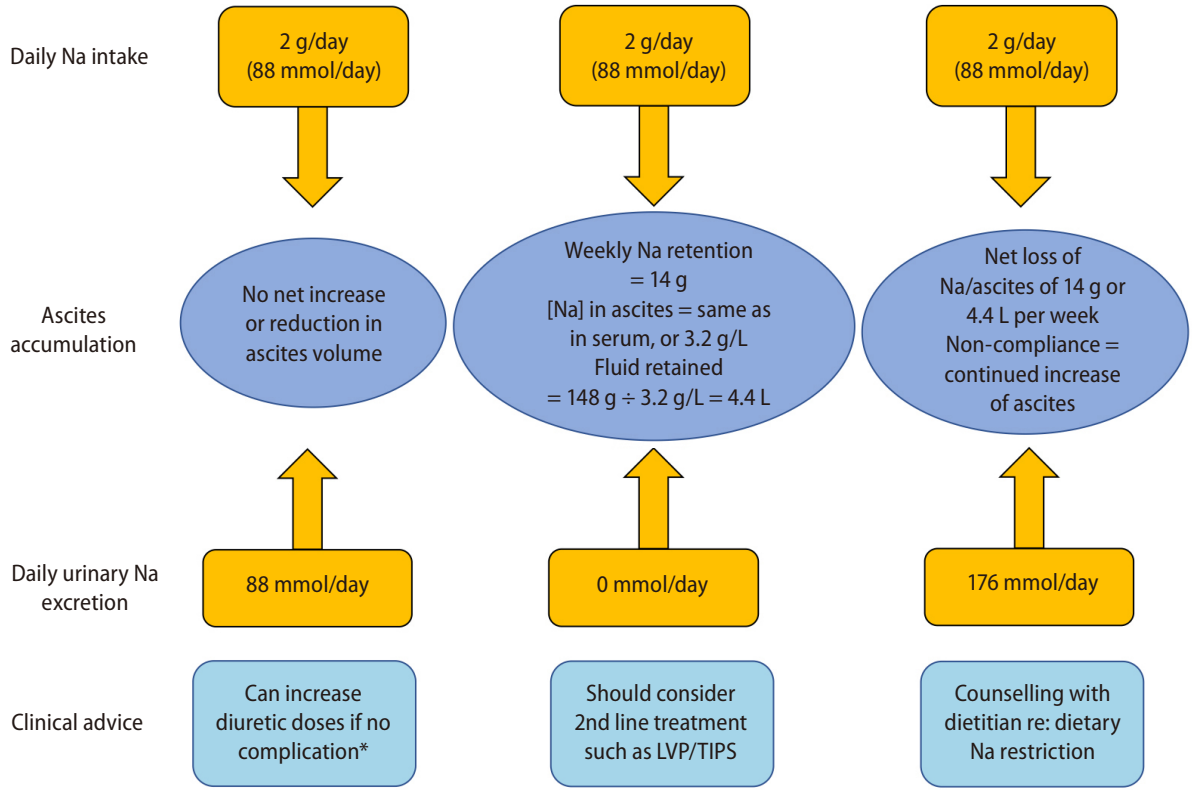


Figure 3. Calculating the sodium balance. LVP, large volume paracentesis; Na, sodium; TIPS, transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunt. *Renal impairment as indicated by increase of serum creatinine by >100% to a value of >133 μmol/L or 2 mg/dL; or hyponatreamia with a decrease in serum sodium of >10 mmol/L to a value of <125 mmol/L; or hypokalemia to a value of <3.0 mmol/L; or hyperkalemia to a value of >6.0 mmol/L; or the development of hepatic encephalopathy in the absence of any other precipitating factors.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0104

mmol of sodium per day should be losing weight while on an 88 mmol sodium intake per day, as they should be in a negative sodium balance. If this is not happening, the dietary re-education is needed.[12]

Albumin infusions

Regular albumin infusions have been advocated for the management of patients with decompensated cirrhosis. Indeed, in patients with uncomplicated ascites who were still responding to diuretic therapy, the use of regular albumin infusions, initially 40 g twice weekly for 2 weeks, then 40 g weekly for a total of 18 months, has been shown to improve their overall survival,[13] especially in patients whose serum albumin was maintained at a minimum of 40 g/L.[14] However, for patients with more advanced cirrhosis who were on the liver transplant waiting list, the use of regular albumin infusions at a dose of 40 g every 2 weeks plus midodrine did not impact their probability of developing complications nor their survival.[15] In the only randomized controlled trial including 70 patients with cirrhosis and RA, 45 patients were randomized to receive 40 g of albumin twice weekly.[16] There was a significant reduction in the 24-month hospital admissions for complications of cirrhosis and mortality. This suggests that regular albumin infusions may be beneficial for these patients. However, further supportive randomized controlled trials are needed before regular albumin infusions can be recommended as the standard of care for patients with cirrhosis and RA. It also appears that the dosing and frequency of infusions may be important to achieve positive results.

The use of non-selective beta-blockers (NSBBs)

NSBBs are the cornerstone in the management of portal hypertension in cirrhosis. The blocking of β1 adrenergic action reduces heart rate and hence cardiac output by 20%; the blocking of β2 adrenergic action in the splanchnic vasculature allows unopposed adrenergic action, causing splanchnic vasoconstriction, and hence reduced portal inflow including that from collateral vessels by about 15%. Therefore, the total reduction in portal venous flow with NSBB use is approximately 35%. Labetalol and carvedilol are 2 NSBBs that also have α1 adrenergic blocking effects, and therefore can cause intra-hepatic vasodilatation, with further reduction in portal pressure. The use of NSBB in patients with compensated cirrhosis and clinically significant portal hypertension (hepatic venous pressure gradient ≥10 mmHg) has been shown to significantly reduce the likelihood of decompensation or death.[17] However, the use of NABBs in patients with ascites is more controversial. The initial studies certainly indicated that the use of NSBBs in patients with ascites, especially those with RA, was associated with increased complications and mortality.[18-21] Subsequent studies showed that NSBB use in patients with ascites, including those with RA had no impact on the development of renal dysfunction or mortality.[22,23] There were also less bacterial infections with NSBB use.[24] In fact, the withdrawal of NSBB was associated with an increase in the likelihood of variceal bleeding, bacterial infections, and the development of renal dysfunction, as well as an increase in hospitalization rate and mortality.[25] In patients with acute-on-chronic liver failure (ACLF), many of whom had RA, the use of NSBB was thought to be associated with a reduction in ACLF grade.[26] These seemingly contradictory findings may be related to significant heterogeneity among the various studies.

The recent detailed evaluation of the cardiovascular effects of NSBB use in advanced cirrhosis has shed some light to guide the use of NSBB in patients with RA.[27] These patients with their significant arterial vasodilatation are critically dependent on adequate cardiac systolic function and sympathetic hyper-activity to maintain renal perfusion. Therefore, the use of NSBB may impair cardiac systolic function and reduce the renal perfusion pressure to the point that is below the threshold of renal blood flow autoregulation. That is, the kidneys are no longer able to adjust the renal perfusion in response to a fall in the perfusion pressure. Therefore, patients with RA who are taking NSBB are at risk for the development of renal dysfunction including hepatorenal syndrome.[28] The guidance from the 2021 American Association for the Study of the Liver on the management of ascites suggests that NSBBs may be withheld in patients with hemodynamic abnormalities as indicated by low systolic blood pressure <90 mmHg, hyponatremia with serum sodium <130 mmol/L, or the presence of acute kidney injury. NSBBs might be reintroduced if circulatory dysfunction improves with improvement of these parameters.[11] Carvedilol is not recommended for patients with RA as it causes more systemic hypotension due to its additional adrenergic blocking effects.[29]

Large volume paracentesis (LVP)

LVP arbitrarily has been defined as removal of ascites of >5 L. Because LVP does not correct the underlying pathophysiology of ascites formation, ascites recurs soon after a session of LVP. This is because the loss of ascites through LVP is associated with a reduction in the intra-abdominal pressure, and this tends to exaggerate the pressure difference between the cirrhotic liver and the abdominal cavity, which encourages the rapid refilling of the abdominal cavity. Therefore, repeat LVPs are usually required in the management of these patients. Repeat LVPs have been shown to be safe and effective in the management of RA in cirrhosis, and is associated with lower incidence of electrolyte abnormalities, renal dysfunction, and hemodynamic instability when compared to continued diuretic use.[30] However, the redistribution of the circulatory volume to refill the abdominal cavity can lead to a further reduction in the EABV, increasing the likelihood of developing further renal dysfunction, dilutional hyponatremia, and risk for mortality, a condition known as post-paracentesis circulatory dysfunction (PPCD).[31] Therefore, volume replacement with colloid solutions such as albumin has been recommended following LVP to prevent PPCD.[32] In general, the higher the volume of LVP, the more likely the patient is to develop PPCD. There has never been a dose response study for albumin use for LVP and the literature has reported various doses of albumin being used with LVP. Expert opinion suggests an albumin dose of 6–8 g/L of ascites removed,[11] although reduced dose of 4 g of albumin/L of ascites removed was equally effective in the prevention of PPCD.[33] A further study showed that by providing a higher amount of albumin of 9.0±2.5 g/L of ascites removed and limiting LVP to 8 L can prevent the development of renal dysfunction despite the presence of PPCD.[34] Survival was also not affected over a mean follow-up of 2 years in those who developed PPCD.

It has been suggested that paracenteses of <5 L do not require any intravascular volume replacement, as these small paracenteses are not associated with significant disturbance of systemic and renal hemodynamics.[35] However, in patients with ACLF, albumin use with small volume paracentesis has been shown to reduce the incidence of PPCD together with its attendant complications such as acute kidney injury, hyponatremia, and high mortality.[36] This is because albumin, with its volume expanding, anti-inflammatory and immune modulatory properties, can significantly reduce the heightened inflammation and severely deranged hemodynamics that are commonly observed in patients with ACLF.

Finally, the presence of coagulopathy should not be a contra-indication to LVP, as minimal bleeding was reported with LVP even in patients who had an PT-INR of >1.5 and a platelet count of $<50\times10^9$/L.[37] Therefore, the infusion of platelets or clotting factors are not necessary for LVP.

TIPS

A TIPS is a prosthesis that bridges a branch of the portal vein with a branch of the hepatic vein and is very effective in reducing the portal pressure. Physiologically, the lowering of portal pressure allows the gradual return of the splanchnic volume to the central circulation, thereby slowly filling the EABV.[38] This is associated with the gradual suppression of the activated renin-angiotensin-aldosterone and the sympathetic nervous systems,[39] accompanied by a gradual reduction in the severity of renal sodium retention in these patients. When the activities of these neurohormonal systems have fallen to below their sodium retaining thresholds, we can expect ascites clearance. This usually takes about 3 to 6 months.[40] Six months post TIPS placement in patients with RA, 45% of patients show complete response, whilst 63% show partial response.[41] Eventually, TIPS is effective in controlling ascites in approximately 80% of patients. Therefore, it is important to manage patient expectation, as TIPS does not clear the ascites instantly; rather, the ascites will gradually diminish until it eventually disappears. While the ascites is still present, it is important to continue dietary sodium restriction until total ascites clearance. The use of diuretics post-TIPS is controversial, as this tends to reduce the EABV, and theoretically can delay the clearance of ascites.

Several randomized controlled trials have compared TIPS vs. LVP in the management of RA (Table 2),[42-47] and all shown that TIPS is significantly better than LVP in the control of ascites. However, the survival advantage of TIPS over LVP in patients with RA was not established until recently,[48] and this is dependent on careful patient selection.[49,50] In general, younger patients who have a low Model of End-stage Liver Disease (MELD) score tend to do well with excellent transplant-free survival at 3 years.[50] This is especially true if the patient's major problem is related to portal hypertension and not liver dysfunction. A small increase in patient's age, MELD score, or hemodynamic parameters can decrease transplant-

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0104

Table 2. Randomized controlled trials of TIPS vs. LVP as treatment for refractory ascites

Study	No. of assessed/ enrolled	Inclusion criteria	Exclusion criteria	Safety	Efficacy
Lebrec et al.[42] (1996)	25/25	Cirrhosis & RA defined as: no response to maximum diuretics for 5 days while in hospital, or ≥2 admissions for tense ascites in ≤4 months	Age >70 years HE ≥ grade 2 PVT Biliary obstruction sCr >1.7 mg/dL HCC Active bacterial infection Severe extra-hepatic disease Pulmonary hypertension	1) HE: TIPS group, severe recurrent grade 3 HE in 2 patients, mild HE in 1 patient; LVP group, no HE 2) Survival at 2 years: TIPS group, 29%±13%; paracentesis group, 60%±16%	Minimum or no ascites at 4 months of all surviving patients: TIPS group, 5/6; paracentesis group, 1/10
Rössle et al.[43] (2000)	150/60	Cirrhosis & RA as defined by IAC criteria*: 55% Cirrhosis & recurrent ascites: 45%	HE ≥ grade 2 PVT Bilirubin >5 mg/dL sCr >3.0 mg/dL Advanced HCC Hepatic hydrothorax Technical failure of paracentesis	1) HE at mean follow-up of approximately 44 months: TIPS group, 58%; LVP group, 48% 2) Survival at 2 years: TIPS group, 58%; paracentesis group, 32% (P=0.11)	Complete response at 6 months: TIPS group, 79%; paracentesis group, 24% (P=0.001) Partial response at 6 months: TIPS group, 5%; paracentesis group, 19% (P=N.S.)
Ginès et al.[44] (2002)	119/70	Cirrhosis & RA as defined by IAC criteria*	Age <18 or >75 years HE ≥ grade 2 PVT Bilirubin >10 mg/dL sCr >3.0mg/dL Prothrombin index <40% Platelet <40×10^9/L HCC CHF Parenchymal renal disease	1) Severe HE at mean follow-up of 282–325 days: TIPS group, 60%; LVP group, 34% (P=0.03) 2) Transplant free survival at 2 years: TIPS group, 26%; paracentesis group, 30% (P=0.51)	Median time to ascites recurrence: TIPS group, 171 days; paracentesis group, 20 days (P<0.0001)

Table 2. Continued

Study	No. of assessed/ enrolled	Inclusion criteria	Exclusion criteria	Safety	Efficacy
Sanyal et al.[45] (2003)	525/109	Cirrhosis & RA as defined by IAC criteria* sCr <1.5 mg/dL	HE ≥ grade 2 PVT Bilirubin >10 mg/dL INR >2.0 HCC Bacterial infection Alcoholic hepatitis Cardiopulmonary failure Pulmonary hypertension Parenchymal renal disease Recent GI bleed Life limiting extra-hepatic disease	1) Severe HE: TIPS group, 38%; LVP group, 21% (P=0.058) 2) Transplant free survival: TIPS group, 19.6 months; paracentesis group, 12.4 months (P=0.77)	Recurrent ascites at 180 days: TIPS group, 6/57 (10.5%); paracentesis group, 26/52 (50%) (P<0.0001)
Salerno et al.[49] (2007)	137/66	Cirrhosis & RA as defined by IAC criteria*: 68% Cirrhosis & recidivant ascites: 32%	Age >72 years HE ≥ grade 2 PVT Bilirubin >6 mg/dL sCr >3.0 mg/dL Child-Pugh score >11 Advanced HCC Bacterial infection Cardiopulmonary failure Recent GI bleed	1) HE: TIPS group, 61%; LVP group, 39% (P=0.086) 2) Transplant free survival at 2 years: TIPS group, 59%; paracentesis group, 29% (P=0.021)	Failure of treatment: TIPS group, 7/33 (21.2%); paracentesis group, 19/33 (57.6%) (P=0.0012)
Narahara et al.[47] (2011)	78/60	Cirrhosis & RA as defined by IAC criteria* Bilirubin <3.0 mg/dL sCr <1.9 mg/dL Child-Pugh score <11	Age >70 years Episodes of HE PV cavernoma HCC or other Malignancy Active infection Active severe Cardiac or pulmonary disease Organic kidney disease	1) Severe HE: TIPS group, 67%; LVP group, 17% (P<0.01) 2) Overall survival at 2 years: TIPS group, 64%; paracentesis group, 35% (P<0.005)	Complete or partial response at 1 year: TIPS group, 20/30 (67%); paracentesis group, 8/30 (17%) (P<0.005)

TIPS, transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunt; RA, refractory ascites; HE, hepatic encephalopathy; PVT, portal vein thrombosis; sCr, serum creatinine; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; LVP, large volume paracentesis; IAC, International Ascites Club; N.S., not significant; CHF, congestive heart failure; INR, international normalized ratio; GI, gastrointestinal; PV, portal vein.
*Diagnosis of refractory ascites by the International Ascites Club: Salerno et al.[5] or Table 1.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0104

free survival significantly.[50] For the former patient, TIPS can be used as a definitive treatment for the RA, while for the latter patient, TIPS is used as a bridge therapy while waiting for a liver transplant. A recent study suggests that a TIPS inserted in patients with recurrent ascites (the need for at least three LVPs within 12 months with a time interval of >4 weeks between LVPs) could result in fewer side effects and improved survival when compared to LVP (93% vs. 52%, P=0.003);[51] in particular, the post-TIPS incidence of hepatic encephalopathy (HE) (see below) was similar between the two groups. However, this study has not been replicated, and therefore, TIPS insertion at the stage of recurrent ascites cannot be recommended as standard of care yet.

The insertion of TIPS is associated with many complications. Immediate complications related to the procedure include arrhythmia, hemoperitoneum, and liver capsule rupture, which in experienced hands are rare. Other complications in the early post-TIPS period include shunt migration, shunt kinking, and ischemic hepatitis as evidenced by a significant rise in liver enzymes and hemolytic anemia. Therefore, patients may remain jaundiced for several weeks to months post TIPS. When bare stents were used in earlier times, shunt stenosis occurred frequently. These are now relatively uncommon with the polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) covered stents,[52] related to reduction in the thickness of the neointima. The major clinical complication is HE, either newly onset or worsening of existing HE irrespectively of the type of stent used, estimated to occur in 30–50% of patients.[53,54] The risk factors for the development of HE includes advancing age, higher Child-Pugh and MELD scores, prior episodes of spontaneous HE, sarcopenia and lower portal systemic pressure gradient post-TIPS.[55] The latter is usually associated with a maximally dilated TIPS. A recent report confirmed a lower incidence of HE (27%) in patients who had their PTFE stent deliberately under-dilated to 6 mm compared to patients whose stent was dilated to 8–10 mm (54%) without any negative impact on variceal bleeding or ascites recurrence or on the incidence of stent thrombosis.[56] Therefore, it appears that either under-dilation or smaller diameter stents are more appropriate to reduce the likelihood of post-TIPS HE. The use of lactulose and rifaximin pre-emptively has also been shown to provide better HE control in the post-TIPS period.[57,58] Another potential complication of TIPS insertion is the development of cardiac failure post-TIPS. The placement of TIPS returns a significant volume from the splanchnic circulation to the systemic circulation, and the cardiac output can increase by up to 50%.[38] Therefore, patients with pre-existing cardiac dysfunction, whether systolic incompetence or abnormal diastolic relaxation, or the presence of pulmonary hypertension are at risk for post-TIPS cardiac decompensation. The appropriate pre-TIPS cardiac investigations include electrocardiogram, echocardiogram, and measurement of brain natriuretic peptide (BNP).[59] A normal cardiac investigation with a BNP level of <40 pg/mL and a pro-N-terminal BNP of <125 pg/mL have been reported as indicators that will rule out cardiac decompensation post-TIPS.[60]

Other pre-TIPS investigations include assessing for sites of infection, especially biliary and dental infections. Once the TIPS is inserted, any source of infection that can reach the TIPS via the blood stream may produce endotipsitis. Although this is a rare complication, the occurrence of endotipsitis will lead to recurrence of bacteremia which may not be eradicated even with prolonged courses of antibiotics.[61]

Appropriate patient selection is very important to optimize patient response to TIPS with clearance of ascites and to reduce the likelihood for complications. Various academic societies have recommended against placing a TIPS in patients who are older than 70 years of age, with a MELD score of >18, who have had spontaneous HE ≥ grade 2, or the presence of cardiac failure, pulmonary hypertension, liver cancer, sepsis, or occlusive portal vein thrombosis.[11,62] Clearance of ascites with TIPS is associated with improved quality of life,[63] better nitrogen balance,[64] significant muscle gain,[65] and improved survival.[48,66,67] A recently validated Freiburg Index of Post-TIPS survival (FIPS) included age, bilirubin, albumin, and creatinine in its prediction of high risk for mortality post-TIPS. Patients in the high-risk category had a median post-TIPS survival of 5 months vs. 48 months in the low-risk group (P<0.001).[68] However, the predictive power of FIPS is not as accurate in patients who have received an early TIPS for ascites that has not yet reached the refractory stage. A further study showed improved post-TIPS survival in patients who received an 8 mm covered stent compared to those who received a 10 mm covered stent.[69]

The automated low flow ascites pump (alfapump)

The alfapump is a programmable and rechargeable device that is implanted subcutaneously. It slowly pumps the ascites

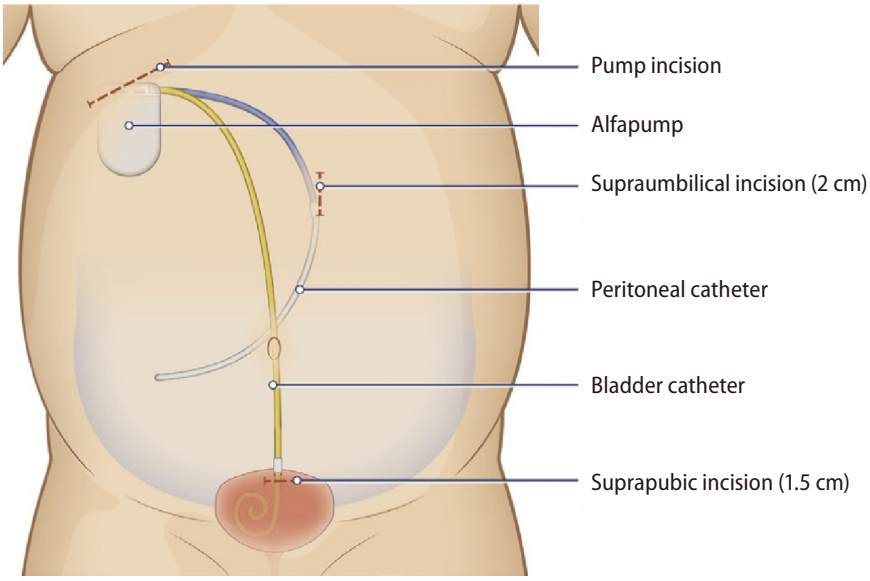


Figure 4. The automated low flow ascites pump (alfapump) system *in situ*.

from the peritoneal cavity via a peritoneal catheter and discharges it via a bladder catheter into the bladder, from there it is discharged as urine (Fig. 4). Effectively, it is performing continuous small volume paracentesis. The device is programmed to pump ascites for up to 16 hours during awake hours, so not to disturb the patient's sleep by requiring the patient to urinate the ascites at night. The device is fitted with various sensors in the peritoneum and in the bladder so that it will stop pumping if there is little or no ascites. The rate of ascites discharge can also be adjusted according to the patient's dietary sodium consumption. Therefore, the management of ascites is individualized. Usually, the use of the alfapump system does not require the concomitant use of albumin infusions.

A randomized controlled trial,[70] several prospective,[71-75] and retrospective[76] studies as well as a meta-analysis[77] have shown that the alfapump is effective in the control of ascites by reducing the frequency and volume of paracenteses. The initial study showed a high incidence of complications including infection of the alfapump system, pump malfunction, and dislodgement of catheters.[71] With the use of prophylactic antibiotics, refinement of pump design, and the implantation techniques, these complications have become less frequent. A proportion of patients still develop renal dysfunction despite the slow continuous discharge of ascites. A physiological study showed that there is still activation of the various vasoconstrictor systems with the small volume but continuous paracentesis.[78] It has been suggested that patients should be monitored for the development of renal dysfunction, and given intermittent albumin as required. Therefore, it is prudent to avoid alfapump insertion in patients with renal dysfunction with serum creatinine >132 μmol/L (1.5 mg/dL) or estimated glomerular filtration rate <30 mL/min/1.32 m^2.[79] Other contra-indications for alfapump insertion include at least 2 or more systemic or local abdominal infections in the previous 6 months, recent intra-abdominal surgery, history of bladder cancer, previous solid organ transplantation, and bilirubin level >85 μmol/L.[79]

Once the ascites is under control, patients show significant improvement in their mobility and quality of life.[75,80] The effects of the alfapump on the survival of these patients has not been formally studied but has been shown to be at least the same as patients who undergo regular LVP.[66]

Liver transplantation

Liver transplantation remains the definitive treatment for patients with RA and concomitant liver dysfunction. However, for patients whose major complications of liver cirrhosis are related to portal hypertension alone without significant liver dysfunction, their priority for liver transplantation remains low. A recent publication has shown that patients with

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0104

ascites and a MELD score of <15 still had a mortality risk of 47.5% at 1 year without a liver transplant, related to infectious causes.[81] The presence of persistent ascites is equivalent to adding 4.5 MELD[82] or 3.5 MELD-Na[83] score points to the patient's calculated MELD, especially in patients with a lower calculated MELD score of less than 21.[83,84] Therefore, patients with RA as the only manifestation of cirrhosis should still be considered for liver transplantation despite fairly low MELD score. Patients with RA and concomitant hyponatremia will have higher priority for liver transplant as their ranking will be captured by a higher MELD-Na score. After liver transplantation, ascites may persist for weeks to months, as it takes time for the systemic and renal hemodynamics to adjust back to normal, especially if high portal inflow persists after liver transplantation.[85] Therefore, patients are advised to remain on sodium-restricted diet in the post-transplant period until ascites disappears.

Treatment of RA in patients with chronic kidney disease (CKD)

CKD has always been known to be associated with RA. It used to be known as type 2 hepatorenal syndrome.[86] However, the prevalence of CKD in cirrhosis is increasing, related to the increased prevalence of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis and its associated conditions such as diabetes mellitus and systemic hypertension.[87] Furthermore, it is now also recognized that CKD can develop after repeat episodes of acute kidney injury.[88] There is very little published literature specifically on the management of ascites in patients with CKD. In general, patients with RA and CKD should have their ascites managed the same way as patients without CKD. However, the volume of ascites removed at paracentesis should not be excessive, as the risk for acute kidney injury post-paracentesis is proportional to the volume of ascites removed.[89] The insertion of a TIPS to treat RA in patients with CKD also appears to be safe.[90] When these patients are being evaluated for liver transplantation, consideration should be given for combined liver kidney transplant, especially in patients with stage ≥3b CKD with their GFR at ≤44 mL/min/1.73 m^2 for more than 3 months.

Palliative care in patients with RA

There remains a significant number of patients with RA who are not liver transplant candidates. They are not appropriate as TIPS recipients because of comorbid conditions, and the alfapump system is not widely available. Therefore, LVP remains the only option available to these patients as a treatment for their RA. Recently, there has been a push for these patients to receive palliative care as their survival is rather limited.[91] There is some interest in the use of a tunnelled catheter to provide long-term ascites drainage at home rather than having regular hospital visits for LVPs.[92,93] Some patients reported preference for the tunnelled catheter as this avoids repeat LVPs in hospital, and therefore improved quality of life.[94] However, bacterial peritonitis, ascites leakage, and local cellulitis remain concerns.[95] Therefore, until there are well-designed randomized controlled trials to confirm its safety and efficacy, this cannot be recommended as standard of care for patients with advanced liver disease and RA.[96]

CONCLUSION

RA represents further deterioration of the patient with ascites when the ascites is no longer responsive to diuretic therapy. Despite this, sodium restriction remains an integral part of the management of these patients. LVP remains the cornerstone of ascites management, but care needs to be taken to avoid inducing the development of PPCD. Regular infusions of albumin may be of benefits but remain to be proven. In the appropriate patients, TIPS insertion can provide permanent relief of ascites. The use of an alfapump system in patients who are not TIPS candidates can provide slow and continuous ascites removal, therefore eliminating abdominal bloating with associated benefits of increased appetite, and eventual improved mobility. This requires long-term use of antibiotics as prophylaxis against infection of the alfapump system. As the prognosis of patients with cirrhosis is negatively impacted by the presence of RA, these patients need to be assessed for liver transplant. In patients with RA and CKD, consideration should be given for combined liver-kidney transplant.

Conflicts of Interest

Sequana Medical: Consultant, and grant support to institution.

REFERENCES

1. Fleming KM, Aithal GP, Card TR, West J. The rate of decompensation and clinical progression of disease in people with cirrhosis: a cohort study. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2010;32:1343-1350.
2. Macdonald S, Jepsen P, Alrubaiy L, Watson H, Vilstrup H, Jalan R. Quality of life measures predict mortality in patients with cirrhosis and severe ascites. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2019;49:321-330.
3. Moreau R, Delègue P, Pessione F, Hillaire S, Durand F, Lebrec D, et al. Clinical characteristics and outcome of patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites. Liver Int 2004;24:457-464.
4. Jepsen P, Watson H, Macdonald S, Vilstrup H, Jalan R. MELD remains the best predictor of mortality in outpatients with cirrhosis and severe ascites. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2020;52:492-499.
5. Salerno F, Guevara M, Bernardi M, Moreau R, Wong F, Angeli P, et al. Refractory ascites: pathogenesis, definition and therapy of a severe complication in patients with cirrhosis. Liver Int 2010;30:937-947.
6. Gracia-Sancho J, Marrone G, Fernández-Iglesias A. Hepatic microcirculation and mechanisms of portal hypertension. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2019;16:221-234.
7. Iwakiri Y, Trebicka J. Portal hypertension in cirrhosis: pathophysiological mechanisms and therapy. JHEP Rep 2021;3:100316.
8. Engelmann C, Clària J, Szabo G, Bosch J, Bernardi M. Pathophysiology of decompensated cirrhosis: portal hypertension, circulatory dysfunction, inflammation, metabolism and mitochondrial dysfunction. J Hepatol 2021;75 Suppl 1:S49-S66.
9. Stadlbauer V, Wright GA, Banaji M, Mukhopadhya A, Mookerjee RP, Moore K, et al. Relationship between activation of the sympathetic nervous system and renal blood flow autoregulation in cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 2008;134:111-119.
10. Moore KP, Wong F, Gines P, Bernardi M, Ochs A, Salerno F, et al. The management of ascites in cirrhosis: report on the consensus conference of the International Ascites Club. Hepatology 2003;38:258-266.
11. Biggins SW, Angeli P, Garcia-Tsao G, Ginès P, Ling SC, Nadim MK, et al. Diagnosis, evaluation, and management of ascites, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis and hepatorenal syndrome: 2021 practice guidance by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Hepatology 2021;74:1014-1048.
12. Adebayo D, Neong SF, Wong F. Refractory ascites in liver cirrhosis. Am J Gastroenterol 2019;114:40-47.
13. Caraceni P, Riggio O, Angeli P, Alessandria C, Neri S, Foschi FG, et al. Long-term albumin administration in decompensated cirrhosis (ANSWER): an open-label randomised trial. Lancet 2018;391:2417-2429.
14. Caraceni P, Tufoni M, Zaccherini G, Riggio O, Angeli P, Alessandria C, et al. On-treatment serum albumin level can guide long-term treatment in patients with cirrhosis and uncomplicated ascites. J Hepatol 2021;74:340-349.
15. Solà E, Solé C, Simón-Talero M, Martín-Llahí M, Castellote J, Garcia-Martínez R, et al. Midodrine and albumin for prevention of complications in patients with cirrhosis awaiting liver transplantation. A randomized placebo-controlled trial. J Hepatol 2018;69:1250-1259.
16. Di Pascoli M, Fasolato S, Piano S, Bolognesi M, Angeli P. Long-term administration of human albumin improves survival in patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites. Liver Int 2019;39:98-105.
17. Villanueva C, Albillos A, Genescà J, Garcia-Pagan JC, Calleja JL, Aracil C, et al. β blockers to prevent decompensation of cirrhosis in patients with clinically significant portal hypertension (PREDESCI): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre trial. Lancet 2019;393:1597-1608.
18. Sersté T, Melot C, Francoz C, Durand F, Rautou PE, Valla D, et al. Deleterious effects of beta-blockers on survival in patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites. Hepatology 2010;52:1017-1022.
19. Sersté T, Francoz C, Durand F, Rautou PE, Melot C, Valla D, et al. Beta-blockers cause paracentesis-induced circulatory dysfunction in patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites: a cross-over study. J Hepatol 2011;55:794-799.
20. Kalambokis GN, Christodoulou D, Baltayiannis G, Christou L. Propranolol use beyond 6 months increases mortality in patients with Child-Pugh C cirrhosis and ascites. Hepatology 2016;64:1806-1808.
21. Mandorfer M, Bota S, Schwabl P, Bucsics T, Pfisterer N, Kruzik M, et al. Nonselective β blockers increase risk for hepatorenal syndrome and death in patients with cirrhosis and spontaneous bacterial peritonitis. Gastroenterology 2014;146:1680-1690.e1.
22. Scheiner B, Parada-Rodriguez D, Bucsics T, Schwabl P, Mandorfer M, Pfisterer N, et al. Non-selective beta-blocker treatment does not impact on kidney function in cirrhotic patients with varices. Scand J Gastroenterol 2017;52:1008-1015.
23. Leithead JA, Rajoriya N, Tehami N, Hodson J, Gunson BK, Tripathi D, et al. Non-selective β-blockers are associated with improved survival in patients with ascites listed for liver transplantation. Gut 2015;64:1111-1119.
24. Sasso R, Rockey DC. Non-selective beta-blocker use in cirrhotic patients is associated with a reduced likelihood of hospitalisa-

tion for infection. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2021;53:418-425.
25. Bossen L, Krag A, Vilstrup H, Watson H, Jepsen P. Nonselective β-blockers do not affect mortality in cirrhosis patients with ascites: post hoc analysis of three randomized controlled trials with 1198 patients. Hepatology 2016;63:1968-1976.
26. Mookerjee RP, Pavesi M, Thomsen KL, Mehta G, Macnaughtan J, Bendtsen F, et al. Treatment with non-selective beta blockers is associated with reduced severity of systemic inflammation and improved survival of patients with acute-on-chronic liver failure. J Hepatol 2016;64:574-582.
27. Téllez L, Albillos A. Non-selective beta-blockers in patients with ascites: the complex interplay among the liver, kidney and heart. Liver Int 2022;42:749-761.
28. Téllez L, Ibáñez-Samaniego L, Pérez Del Villar C, Yotti R, Martínez J, Carrión L, et al. Non-selective beta-blockers impair global circulatory homeostasis and renal function in cirrhotic patients with refractory ascites. J Hepatol 2020;73:1404-1414.
29. Reiberger T, Mandorfer M. Beta adrenergic blockade and decompensated cirrhosis. J Hepatol 2017;66:849-859.
30. Ginés P, Arroyo V, Quintero E, Planas R, Bory F, Cabrera J, et al. Comparison of paracentesis and diuretics in the treatment of cirrhotics with tense ascites. Results of a randomized study. Gastroenterology 1987;93:234-241.
31. Ruiz-del-Arbol L, Monescillo A, Jimenéz W, Garcia-Plaza A, Arroyo V, Rodés J. Paracentesis-induced circulatory dysfunction: mechanism and effect on hepatic hemodynamics in cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 1997;113:579-586.
32. Bernardi M, Caraceni P, Navickis RJ, Wilkes MM. Albumin infusion in patients undergoing large-volume paracentesis: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. Hepatology 2012;55:1172-1181.
33. Alessandria C, Elia C, Mezzabotta L, Risso A, Andrealli A, Spandre M, et al. Prevention of paracentesis-induced circulatory dysfunction in cirrhosis: standard vs half albumin doses. A prospective, randomized, unblinded pilot study. Dig Liver Dis 2011;43:881-886.
34. Tan HK, James PD, Wong F. Albumin may prevent the morbidity of paracentesis-induced circulatory dysfunction in cirrhosis and refractory ascites: a pilot study. Dig Dis Sci 2016;61:3084-3092.
35. Peltekian KM, Wong F, Liu PP, Logan AG, Sherman M, Blendis LM. Cardiovascular, renal, and neurohumoral responses to single large-volume paracentesis in patients with cirrhosis and diuretic-resistant ascites. Am J Gastroenterol 1997;92:394-399.
36. Arora V, Vijayaraghavan R, Maiwall R, Sahney A, Thomas SS, Ali R, et al. Paracentesis-induced circulatory dysfunction with modest-volume paracentesis is partly ameliorated by albumin infusion in acute-on-chronic liver failure. Hepatology 2020;72:1043-1055.
37. De Gottardi A, Thévenot T, Spahr L, Morard I, Bresson-Hadni S, Torres F, et al. Risk of complications after abdominal paracentesis in cirrhotic patients: a prospective study. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2009;7:906-909.
38. Wong F, Sniderman K, Liu P, Allidina Y, Sherman M, Blendis L. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunt: effects on hemodynamics and sodium homeostasis in cirrhosis and refractory ascites. Ann Intern Med 1995;122:816-822.
39. Rössle M. TIPS: 25 years later. J Hepatol 2013;59:1081-1093.
40. Tan HK, James PD, Sniderman KW, Wong F. Long-term clinical outcome of patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites treated with transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt insertion. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2015;30:389-395.
41. Russo MW, Sood A, Jacobson IM, Brown RS Jr. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt for refractory ascites: an analysis of the literature on efficacy, morbidity, and mortality. Am J Gastroenterol 2003;98:2521-2527.
42. Lebrec D, Giuily N, Hadengue A, Vilgrain V, Moreau R, Poynard T, et al. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts: comparison with paracentesis in patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites: a randomized trial. French Group of Clinicians and a Group of Biologists. J Hepatol 1996;25:135-144.
43. Rössle M, Ochs A, Gülberg V, Siegerstetter V, Holl J, Deibert P, et al. A comparison of paracentesis and transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunting in patients with ascites. N Engl J Med 2000;342:1701-1707.
44. Ginès P, Uriz J, Calahorra B, Garcia-Tsao G, Kamath PS, Del Arbol LR, et al. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunting versus paracentesis plus albumin for refractory ascites in cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 2002;123:1839-1847.
45. Sanyal AJ, Genning C, Reddy KR, Wong F, Kowdley KV, Benner K, et al. The North American study for the treatment of refractory ascites. Gastroenterology 2003;124:634-641.
46. Salerno F, Merli M, Riggio O, Cazzaniga M, Valeriano V, Pozzi M, et al. Randomized controlled study of TIPS versus paracentesis plus albumin in cirrhosis with severe ascites. Hepatology 2004;40:629-635.
47. Narahara Y, Kanazawa H, Fukuda T, Matsushita Y, Harimoto H, Kidokoro H, et al. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt versus paracentesis plus albumin in patients with refractory ascites who have good hepatic and renal function: a prospective randomized trial. J Gastroenterol 2011;46:78-85.
48. Bai M, Qi XS, Yang ZP, Yang M, Fan DM, Han GH. TIPS improves

liver transplantation-free survival in cirrhotic patients with refractory ascites: an updated meta-analysis. World J Gastroenterol 2014;20:2704-2714.
49. Salerno F, Cammà C, Enea M, Rössle M, Wong F. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt for refractory ascites: a meta-analysis of individual patient data. Gastroenterology 2007;133:825-834.
50. Trebicka J. Does transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt stent differentially improve survival in a subset of cirrhotic patients? Semin Liver Dis 2018;38:87-96.
51. Bureau C, Thabut D, Oberti F, Dharancy S, Carbonell N, Bouvier A, et al. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts with covered stents increase transplant-free survival of patients with cirrhosis and recurrent ascites. Gastroenterology 2017;152:157-163.
52. Barrio J, Ripoll C, Bañares R, Echenagusia A, Catalina MV, Camúñez F, et al. Comparison of transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt dysfunction in PTFE-covered stent-grafts versus bare stents. Eur J Radiol 2005;55:120-124.
53. Casadaban LC, Parvinian A, Minocha J, Lakhoo J, Grant CW, Ray CE Jr, et al. Clearing the confusion over hepatic encephalopathy after TIPS creation: incidence, prognostic factors, and clinical outcomes. Dig Dis Sci 2015;60:1059-1066.
54. Fonio P, Discalzi A, Calandri M, Doriguzzi Breatta A, Bergamasco L, Martini S, et al. Incidence of hepatic encephalopathy after transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS) according to its severity and temporal grading classification. Radiol Med 2017;122:713-721.
55. Schindler P, Heinzow H, Trebicka J, Wildgruber M. Shunt-induced hepatic encephalopathy in tips: current approaches and clinical challenges. J Clin Med 2020;9:3784.
56. Schepis F, Vizzutti F, Garcia-Tsao G, Marzocchi G, Rega L, De Maria N, et al. Under-dilated TIPS associate with efficacy and reduced encephalopathy in a prospective, non-randomized study of patients with cirrhosis. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2018;16:1153-1162.e7.
57. Seifert LL, Schindler P, Schoster M, Weller JF, Wilms C, Schmidt HH, et al. Recurrence of hepatic encephalopathy after TIPS: effective prophylaxis with combination of lactulose and rifaximin. J Clin Med 2021;10:4763.
58. Bureau C, Thabut D, Jezequel C, Archambeaud I, D'Alteroche L, Dharancy S, et al. The use of rifaximin in the prevention of overt hepatic encephalopathy after transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt : a randomized controlled trial. Ann Intern Med 2021;174:633-640.
59. García-Pagán JC, Saffo S, Mandorfer M, Garcia-Tsao G. Where does TIPS fit in the management of patients with cirrhosis? JHEP Rep 2020;2:100122.
60. Billey C, Billet S, Robic MA, Cognet T, Guillaume M, Vinel JP, et al. A prospective study identifying predictive factors of cardiac decompensation after transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt: the toulouse algorithm. Hepatology 2019;70:1928-1941.
61. Mizrahi M, Adar T, Shouval D, Bloom AI, Shibolet O. Endotipsitis-persistent infection of transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt: pathogenesis, clinical features and management. Liver Int 2010;30:175-183.
62. European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL clinical practice guidelines for the management of patients with decompensated cirrhosis. J Hepatol 2018;69:406-460.
63. Gülberg V, Liss I, Bilzer M, Waggershauser T, Reiser M, Gerbes AL. Improved quality of life in patients with refractory or recidivant ascites after insertion of transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts. Digestion 2002;66:127-130.
64. Allard JP, Chau J, Sandokji K, Blendis LM, Wong F. Effects of ascites resolution after successful TIPS on nutrition in cirrhotic patients with refractory ascites. Am J Gastroenterol 2001;96:2442-2447.
65. Jahangiri Y, Pathak P, Tomozawa Y, Li L, Schlansky BL, Farsad K. Muscle gain after transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt creation: time course and prognostic implications for survival in cirrhosis. J Vasc Interv Radiol 2019;30:866-872.e4.
66. Will V, Rodrigues SG, Berzigotti A. Current treatment options of refractory ascites in liver cirrhosis - a systematic review and meta-analysis. Dig Liver Dis 2022;54:1007-1014.
67. Tsien C, Shah SN, McCullough AJ, Dasarathy S. Reversal of sarcopenia predicts survival after a transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2013;25:85-93.
68. Bettinger D, Sturm L, Pfaff L, Hahn F, Kloeckner R, Volkwein L, et al. Refining prediction of survival after TIPS with the novel Freiburg index of post-TIPS survival. J Hepatol 2021;74:1362-1372.
69. Trebicka J, Bastgen D, Byrtus J, Praktiknjo M, Terstiegen S, Meyer C, et al. Smaller-diameter covered transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt stents are associated with increased survival. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2019;17:2793-2799.e1.
70. Bureau C, Adebayo D, Chalret de Rieu M, Elkrief L, Valla D, Peck-Radosavljevic M, et al. Alfapump® system vs. large volume paracentesis for refractory ascites: a multicenter randomized controlled study. J Hepatol 2017;67:940-949.
71. Bellot P, Welker MW, Soriano G, von Schaewen M, Appenrodt B,

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0104

Wiest R, et al. Automated low flow pump system for the treatment of refractory ascites: a multi-center safety and efficacy study. J Hepatol 2013;58:922-927.
72. Thomas MN, Sauter GH, Gerbes AL, Stangl M, Schiergens TS, Angele M, et al. Automated low flow pump system for the treatment of refractory ascites: a single-center experience. Langenbecks Arch Surg 2015;400:979-983.
73. Stirnimann G, Berg T, Spahr L, Zeuzem S, McPherson S, Lammert F, et al. Treatment of refractory ascites with an automated low-flow ascites pump in patients with cirrhosis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2017;46:981-991.
74. Solbach P, Höner Zu Siederdissen C, Wellhöner F, Richter N, Heidrich B, Lenzen H, et al. Automated low-flow ascites pump in a real-world setting: complications and outcomes. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2018;30:1082-1089.
75. Wong F, Bendel E, Sniderman K, Frederick T, Haskal ZJ, Sanyal A, et al. Improvement in quality of life and decrease in large-volume paracentesis requirements with the automated low-flow ascites pump. Liver Transpl 2020;26:651-661.
76. Will V, Rodrigues SG, Stirnimann G, Gottardi A, Bosch J, Berzigotti A. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt and alfapump® system for refractory ascites in liver cirrhosis: outcomes and complications. United European Gastroenterol J 2020;8:961-969.
77. Lepida A, Marot A, Trépo E, Degré D, Moreno C, Deltenre P. Systematic review with meta-analysis: automated low-flow ascites pump therapy for refractory ascites. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2019;50:978-987.
78. Solà E, Sanchez-Cabús S, Rodriguez E, Elia C, Cela R, Moreira R, et al. Effects of alfapump™ system on kidney and circulatory function in patients with cirrhosis and refractory ascites. Liver Transpl 2017;23:583-593.
79. Aagaard NK, Malago M, De Gottardi A, Thomas M, Sauter G, Engelmann C, et al. Consensus care recommendations for alfapump® in cirrhotic patients with refractory or recurrent ascites. BMC Gastroenterol 2022;22:111.
80. Stepanova M, Nader F, Bureau C, Adebayo D, Elkrief L, Valla D, et al. Patients with refractory ascites treated with alfapump® system have better health-related quality of life as compared to those treated with large volume paracentesis: the results of a multicenter randomized controlled study. Qual Life Res 2018;27:1513-1520.
81. Mazumder NR, Atiemo K, Daud A, Kho A, Abecassis M, Levitsky J, et al. Patients with persistently low MELD-Na scores continue to be at risk of liver-related death. Transplantation 2020;104:1413-1418.
82. Heuman DM, Abou-Assi SG, Habib A, Williams LM, Stravitz RT, Sanyal AJ, et al. Persistent ascites and low serum sodium identify patients with cirrhosis and low MELD scores who are at high risk for early death. Hepatology 2004;40:802-810.
83. Somsouk M, Kornfield R, Vittinghoff E, Inadomi JM, Biggins SW. Moderate ascites identifies patients with low model for end-stage liver disease scores awaiting liver transplantation who have a high mortality risk. Liver Transpl 2011;17:129-136.
84. Prohic D, Mesihovic R, Vanis N, Puhalovic A. Prognostic significance of ascites and serum sodium in patients with low meld scores. Med Arch 2016;70:48-52.
85. Hadengue A, Lebrec D, Moreau R, Sogni P, Durand F, Gaudin C, et al. Persistence of systemic and splanchnic hyperkinetic circulation in liver transplant patients. Hepatology 1993;17:175-178.
86. Salerno F, Gerbes A, Ginès P, Wong F, Arroyo V. Diagnosis, prevention and treatment of hepatorenal syndrome in cirrhosis. Gut 2007;56:1310-1318.
87. Kumar R, Priyadarshi RN, Anand U. Chronic renal dysfunction in cirrhosis: a new frontier in hepatology. World J Gastroenterol 2021;27:990-1005.
88. Bassegoda O, Huelin P, Ariza X, Solé C, Juanola A, Gratacós-Ginès J, et al. Development of chronic kidney disease after acute kidney injury in patients with cirrhosis is common and impairs clinical outcomes. J Hepatol 2020;72:1132-1139.
89. Patil V, Jain M, Venkataraman J. Paracentesis-induced acute kidney injury in decompensated cirrhosis - prevalence and predictors. Clin Exp Hepatol 2019;5:55-59.
90. Ponzo P, Campion D, Rizzo M, Roma M, Caviglia GP, Giovo I, et al. Transjugular intrahepatic porto-systemic shunt in cirrhotic patients with hepatorenal syndrome - chronic kidney disease: Impact on renal function. Dig Liver Dis 2022;54:1101-1108.
91. D'Amico G, Morabito A, D'Amico M, Pasta L, Malizia G, Rebora P, et al. Clinical states of cirrhosis and competing risks. J Hepatol 2018;68:563-576.
92. Macken L, Bremner S, Gage H, Touray M, Williams P, Crook D, et al. Randomised clinical trial: palliative long-term abdominal drains vs large-volume paracentesis in refractory ascites due to cirrhosis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2020;52:107-122.
93. Corrigan M, Thomas R, McDonagh J, Speakman J, Abbas N, Bardell S, et al. Tunnelled peritoneal drainage catheter placement for the palliative management of refractory ascites in patients with liver cirrhosis. Frontline Gastroenterol 2020;12:108-112.
94. Cooper M, Pollard A, Pandey A, Bremner S, Macken L, Evans

CJ, et al. Palliative long-term abdominal drains versus large volume paracentesis in refractory ascites due to cirrhosis (REDUCe study): qualitative outcomes. J Pain Symptom Manage 2021;62:312-325.e2.
95. Roy A, Taneja S, Duseja AK, Singh V. Letter: long-term abdominal drains in refractory ascites-evolving concept of palliative care in decompensated cirrhosis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2020;52:1266-1267.
96. Macken L, Hashim A, Mason L, Verma S. Permanent indwelling peritoneal catheters for palliation of refractory ascites in end-stage liver disease: a systematic review. Liver Int 2019;39:1594-1607.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0104

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0058
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:33-50

Review

Wnt signaling in liver regeneration, disease, and cancer

Gengyi Zou[1] and Jae-Il Park[1,2]

[1]Department of Experimental Radiation Oncology, The University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center, Houston, TX; [2]Genetics and Epigenetics Program, The University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center Graduate School of Biomedical Sciences, Houston, TX, USA

The liver exhibits the highest recovery rate from acute injuries. However, in chronic liver disease, the long-term loss of hepatocytes often leads to adverse consequences such as fibrosis, cirrhosis, and liver cancer. The Wnt signaling plays a pivotal role in both liver regeneration and tumorigenesis. Therefore, manipulating the Wnt signaling has become an attractive approach to treating liver disease, including cancer. Nonetheless, given the crucial roles of Wnt signaling in physiological processes, blocking Wnt signaling can also cause several adverse effects. Recent studies have identified cancer-specific regulators of Wnt signaling, which would overcome the limitation of Wnt signaling target approaches. In this review, we discussed the role of Wnt signaling in liver regeneration, precancerous lesion, and liver cancer. Furthermore, we summarized the basic and clinical approaches of Wnt signaling blockade and proposed the therapeutic prospects of cancer-specific Wnt signaling blockade for liver cancer treatment. **(Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:33-50)**

Keywords: WNT signaling pathway; Liver regeneration; Liver diseases; Hepatocellular carcinoma

INTRODUCTION

Liver regeneration has been extensively studied.[1-3] *In vivo* studies have shown that partial hepatectomy or chemical injury activates extracellular and intracellular signaling pathways, leading to liver regeneration. Hepatocyte loss during chronic liver diseases triggers compensatory proliferation of the surviving hepatocytes.[4-6] Apart from liver regeneration in physiological conditions, genotoxic risk factors might lead them to convert to neoplasia. Hepatitis virus, alcohol abuse, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), and aflatoxin-B1 exposure are also the main etiological factors to induce the development of precancerous lesions in the liver. Liver cancer is one of the top 10 lethal cancers worldwide. Its estimated death rate in 2021 is 6% in males and 4% in females.[7] Liver cancer consists of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), cholan-

Corresponding author : **Gengyi Zou**
Department of Experimental Radiation Oncology, The University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center, 6565 MD Anderson Blvd Unit 1054, Houston, TX 77030, USA
Tel: +1-713-792-3659, Fax: +1-713-794-5369, E-mail: gzou@mdanderson.org
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-5399-8674

Jae-Il Park
Department of Experimental Radiation Oncology, The University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center, 6565 MD Anderson Blvd. Unit 1052, Houston, TX 77030, USA
Tel: +1-713-792-3659, Fax: +1-713-794-5369, E-mail: jaeil@mdanderson.org
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-0737-2654

Editor: Norifumi Kawada, Osaka City University Medical School, Japan

Received : Mar. 1, 2022 / **Revised :** Apr. 28, 2022 / **Accepted :** Jun. 30, 2022

giocarcinoma (CCA), hepatoblastoma (HB), and several other rare tumors (angiosarcoma, intraductal papillary neoplasm of the bile duct, and mucinous cystic neoplasm). HCC is the most common primary liver cancer frequently developed with chronic liver disease, such as cirrhosis caused by hepatitis virus infection.[8]

Among various signaling pathways associated with liver biology,[9-12] Wnt signaling is involved in all stages of liver disease progression, from liver injury to inflammation, fibrosis, cirrhosis, and tumorigenesis. Several Wnt ligands are secreted by various hepatic cells, including hepatocytes, stellate cells, Kupffer cells, biliary epithelial cells, and sinusoidal endothelial cells.[13-16] Based on the oncogenic roles of Wnt signaling in cancer, several components and regulators of Wnt signaling have been proposed as the druggable targets to improve the current therapeutic efficacy in the liver cancer treatment.[17]

Herein, we review the roles of Wnt signaling in liver regeneration and liver tumorigenesis and the therapeutic targets of Wnt signaling in liver cancer treatment.

Wnt SIGNALING

Wnt signaling is evolutionarily conserved and orchestrates various cellular processes, including cell proliferation, differentiation, migration, polarity, stemness, and lineage plasticity.[18,19] Consequently, Wnt signaling plays a pivotal role in organogenesis, tissue homeostasis, tissue regeneration, and tumorigenesis.[20-25] The Wnt signaling is triggered by the binding of the Wnt ligands to the frizzed (FZD) receptors. The mammals have 19 Wnt ligands and 10 FZD receptors,[26] resulting in the complexity and specificity in Wnt signaling activation. Based on the involvement of β-catenin, a key component of Wnt signaling, Wnt signaling is generally classified into canonical (β-catenin-mediated) and non-canonical (β-catenin-independent) Wnt signaling (Fig. 1). In the canonical Wnt/β-catenin pathway, the protein destruction complex (casein kinase 1 [CK1], glycogen synthase kinase 3 [GSK3], adenomatous polyposis coli [APC], and axis inhibition proteins [AXINs]) targets the β-catenin protein for degradation via CKI1 and GSK3-mediated sequential phosphorylation at the N-terminus (Ser-45, Thr-41, Ser-37, and Ser-33) of β-catenin followed by β-TrCP, an E3 ligase, recruitment. Conversely, binding of the canonical Wnt ligands to the FZD receptors and LRP5/6 co-receptors activates dishevelled (DVL), which inhibits the protein destruction complex. As a result, β-catenin protein is stabilized and translocated into the nucleus to transactivate the canonical Wnt target genes by replacing the co-repressors associated with the T-cell factor/lymphoid enhancer-binding factor (TCF/LEF) with the co-activators. Non-canonical Wnt signaling pathways include the planar cell polarity pathway (involved in c-Jun N-terminal kinase [JNK] activation, small GTPase activation, and cytoskeletal rearrangement), and the Wnt/Ca^{2+} pathway (activating phospholipase C [PLC] and protein kinase C [PKC]).[18,19]

Wnt SIGNALING IN LIVER REGENERATION

Upon partial hepatectomy or acute liver injury, the number of hepatocytes is drastically reduced. Various signaling pathways (epidermal growth factor [EGF], hepatocyte growth factor [HGF], Wnt/β-catenin, and Notch) stimulate the hepatocytes in the G0 phase to proliferate, compensating tissue loss and restoring the physiological functions of the liver.[27-29] During liver regeneration, endothelial cells under shear stress produce Wnts to activate Wnt/β-catenin signaling in hepatocytes. Additionally, the organ precisely senses the size of the

Abbreviations:

AFB1, aflatoxin type B1; ALD, alcoholic liver disease; APC, adenomatous polyposis coli; AXIN, axis inhibition protein; CCA, cholangiocarcinoma; CCl_4, carbon tetrachloride; CEBPA, CCAAT enhancer-binding protein α; CK1, casein kinase 1; CREBBP/CBP, CREB binding protein; CV, central vein; DDC, 1,4-dihydro-2,4,6-trimethyl-pyridine-3,5-di carboxylate; DEN, diethylnitrosamine; DKK1, Dickkopf 1; DVL, dishevelled; E2F1, E2F transcription factor 1; EGF, epidermal growth factor; EMT, epithelial-mesenchymal transition; ERK, extracellular signal-regulated kinase; EtOH, ethanol; FZD, frizzed; GPC3, glypican-3; GSK3, glycogen synthase kinase 3; HB, hepatoblastoma; HBsAg, hepatitis B virus surface antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; HCV, hepatitis C virus; HGF, hepatocyte growth factor; Ig, immunoglobulin; IGF1, insulin-like growth factor 1; JNK, c-Jun N-terminal kinase; KO, knock-out; LGR5, leucine-containing repeat G-protein-coupled receptor 5; LOF, loss-of-function; LRP6, lipoprotein receptor-related protein 6; MAPK, mitogen-activated protein kinase; MCP, monocyte chemoattractant protein; MMP7, matrix metallopeptidase; mTOR, mammalian target of rapamycin; MVBs, multivesicular bodies; NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; NCOA2, nuclear receptor coactivator 2; NF-κB, nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells; peg-IFN, pegylated-Interferon-α2a; PI3K, phosphoinositide 3-kinase; PKC, protein kinase C; PLC, phospholipase C; PORCN, porcupine; PPARG, peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ; RanBP3, Ran-binding protein 3; ROS, reactive oxygen species; SAL, salinomycin; SFRP1, secreted frizzled-related protein 1; sFZD7, secreted FZD7; SREBF, sterol regulatory element binding transcription factor; TCF/LEF, T-cell factor/lymphoid enhancer-binding factor; TMEM9, transmembrane protein 9; TNKS, tankyrase; VEGF, vascular endothelial growth factor; WF1, Wnt inhibitory factor 1; WISP1, Wnt1-inducible-signaling pathway protein 1

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0058

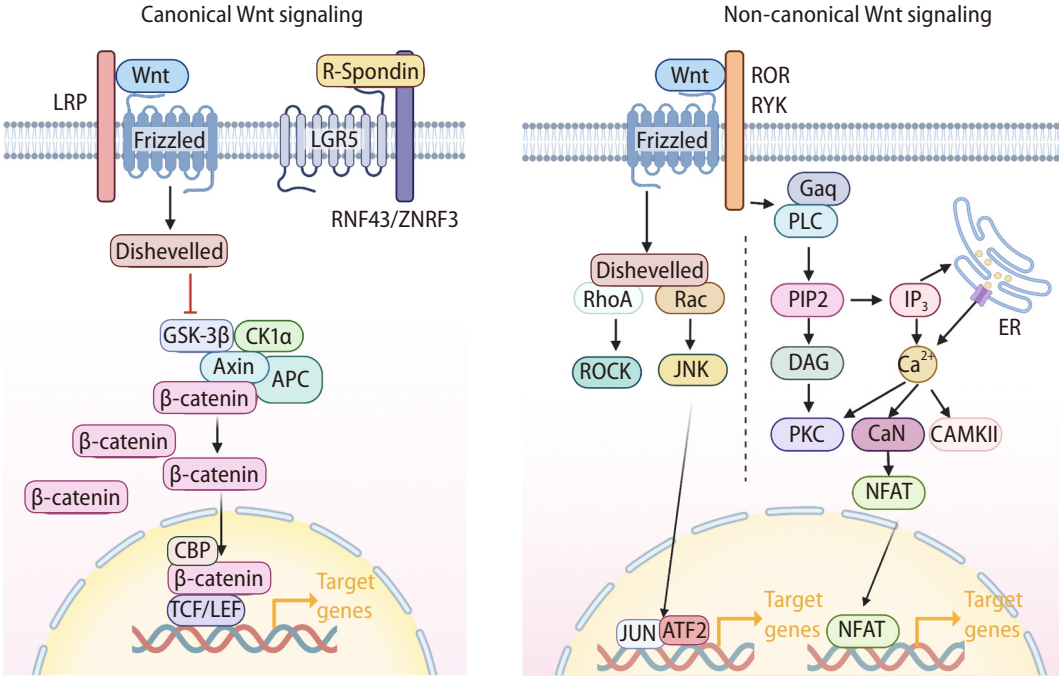


Figure 1. Wnt signaling. Illustration of canonical and non-canonical Wnt signaling. The hallmark of the canonical Wnt/β-catenin pathway is the stabilization and nuclear translocation of β-catenin. In the absence of Wnt ligands, cytoplasmic β-catenin is degraded by the destruction complex (Axin, APC, GSK3β, and CK1α). Upon Wnt ligand binding to Frizzled receptors (FZDs) and LRP, the destruction complex is inhibited, β-catenin protein is stabilized in the cytosol and translocated into the nucleus. Nuclear β-catenin then recruits transcriptional coactivator CREBBP to transactivate target genes in conjunction with TCF/LEF transcription factors. Additionally, FZDs are ubiquitinated by ZNRF3 and RNF43 E3 ligases, which are inhibited by R-spondin binding to LGR5, increasing the cells' sensitivity to Wnt ligands. In Wnt/PCP signaling, Wnt ligands bind to FZDs or their co-receptors (ROR and RYK) to trigger a cascade reaction, involving the small GTPases RhoA and Ras-related C3 botulinum toxin substrate (Rac), then activating Rho-associated protein kinases (ROCKs) and JUN N-terminal kinases (JNK), respectively. These lead to cytoskeletal rearrangements and/or transcriptional responses such as ATF2. In Wnt/Ca^{2+} signaling, the activation of phospholipase C (PLC) triggers the release of Ca^{2+} from the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), which promotes the transcription of nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT) through several intermediate steps. Created with BioRender.com. LRP, lipoprotein receptor-related protein; LGR5, leucine-containing repeat G-protein-coupled receptor 5; RNF43, ring finger protein 43; ZNRF3, zinc and ring finger 3; GSK-3β, glycogen synthase kinase 3β; CK1α, casein kinase 1α; APC, adenomatous polyposis coli; CBP, CREB binding protein; TCF/LEF, T-cell factor/lymphoid enhancer-binding factor; ROR, receptor tyrosine kinase-like orphan receptor; RYK, receptor tyrosine kinase; ARF2, activating transcription factor 2; PIP2, phosphatidylinositol 4,5-biphosphate; DAG, diacylglycerol; PKC, protein kinase C.

regenerating liver and adjusts its size to 100%.[2]

Several animal models (rat, mouse, and zebrafish) were utilized for liver regeneration study.[30-33] The partial hepatectomy is the classic strategy to create the murine liver regeneration model.[30] Carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4) is a frequently used chemical to induce liver injury in rats and mice.[34] Meanwhile, several dietary-induced liver injury models are also commonly used.[35] Biliary injury and regeneration can be induced by the 1,4-dihydro-2,4,6-trimethyl-pyridine-3,5-dicarboxylate (DDC) diet.[35] Besides murine models, zebrafish emerged as a potent model for drug screening of liver generation.[32,33] Partial hepatectomy, drug-induced liver injury, and nitroreductase-mediated hepatocyte ablation were employed to establish the zebrafish liver injury model.[32,33,36,37]

Transient activation of the canonical Wnt signaling is indispensable for liver regeneration (Fig. 2).[13,15,27] In rat models, overexpressed Wnt1 and nuclear β-catenin are predominantly accumulated in remaining parenchymal cells after 70% partial hepatectomy. The level of β-catenin increased within 5 minutes after hepatectomy, accompanied by its nuclear translocation and subsequent target gene expression for hepatocyte proliferation.[27] Significantly, genetic ablation of β-catenin/Ctnnb1 impairs liver regeneration of mice from partial hepatectomy.[38] The liver-specific *Ctnnb1* knock-out (KO) delayed DNA synthesis and hepatocyte proliferation in mice after partial hepatectomy. Conversely, activation of

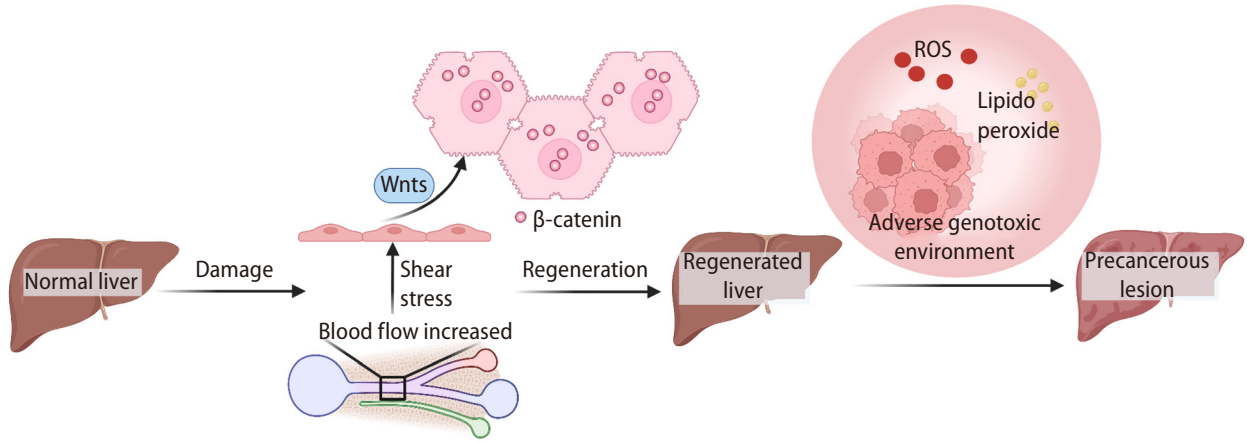


Figure 2. Wnt signaling in liver regeneration. In normal liver, most hepatocytes are polyploid with random chromosomal deletions. Upon liver injury, the increased narrow portal vein pressure stimulates the initiating signals for liver regeneration. The activation of Wnt signaling is crucial in liver regeneration. Moreover, in chronic liver injury, the ROS and lipid peroxide are the risk factors damaging the reproducing hepatocytes, leading to precancerous lesion development. Created with BioRender.com. ROS, reactive oxygen species.

Wnt/β-catenin signaling accelerates liver regeneration in the zebrafish model.[39] It was also shown that liver damage upregulated leucine-containing repeat G-protein-coupled receptor 5 (LGR5) and AXIN2 in the hepatocytes.[40] LGR5 is a marker of actively dividing stem and progenitor cells in Wnt-driven self-renewing tissues.[41] LGR5 interacts with FZD and lipoprotein receptor-related protein 6 (LRP6) to enhance phosphorylation of LRP6, which in turn enhances the Wnt/β-catenin signaling.[42] While Lgr5 is not expressed in healthy adult livers, after liver damage, Lgr5+ cells appear near the bile ducts, consistent with strong activation of the Wnt signaling.[41] AXIN2 is another Wnt downstream target gene transactivated by β-catenin.[43] Like AXIN1, AXIN2 combined with other destruction complex components degrades β-catenin, serving as a negative feedback regulator of the Wnt signaling.[44]

Other than core components of Wnt signaling, additional regulators of Wnt signaling were implicated in liver regeneration. Recently, our group identified the transmembrane protein 9 (TMEM9) gene as an amplifier of Wnt/β-catenin signaling. TMEM9 is a type I transmembrane protein primarily localized in lysosomes and multivesicular bodies (MVBs). While the ablation of TMEM9 inhibits the activity of the Wnt/β-catenin signaling, β-catenin transactivates *TMEM9*, leading to hyperactivation of Wnt/β-catenin signaling.[45] Interestingly, TMEM9 is highly expressed in hepatocytes around the central vein (CV) of regenerating liver.[46] TMEM9 hyperactivates Wnt/β-catenin signaling to promote liver regeneration through lysosomal degradation of APC protein.[46] *Tmem9* KO impairs CCl4-induced liver regeneration with downregulation of Wnt/β-catenin signaling.[46]

In addition to the role of Wnt/β-catenin signaling in regeneration, sustained activation of the Wnt signaling is associated with the progression of chronic liver diseases and liver tumorigenesis (Fig. 2). Additionally, reactive oxygen species (ROS) and lipid peroxide are the risk factors for the development of the precancerous lesion in the liver.[47,48] However, the crosstalk between Wnt signaling and ROS has not been fully revealed in the liver. It was reported that β-catenin can be further stabilized by ROS.[49] Meanwhile, lipid peroxidation products mainly generated by ROS activate the canonical Wnt pathway through oxidative stress.[50] Therefore, it is likely the potential crosstalk between Wnt signaling and ROS might contribute to liver cancer development.

Accumulating evidence suggests that many chronic liver diseases contribute to liver cancer development, described below.

Wnt SIGNALING IN PRECANCEROUS LIVER LESION

Hepatitis virus

Globally distributed hepatitis B virus (HBV) and hepatitis C virus (HCV) are the crucial triggers of HCC initiation. Both HBV

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0058

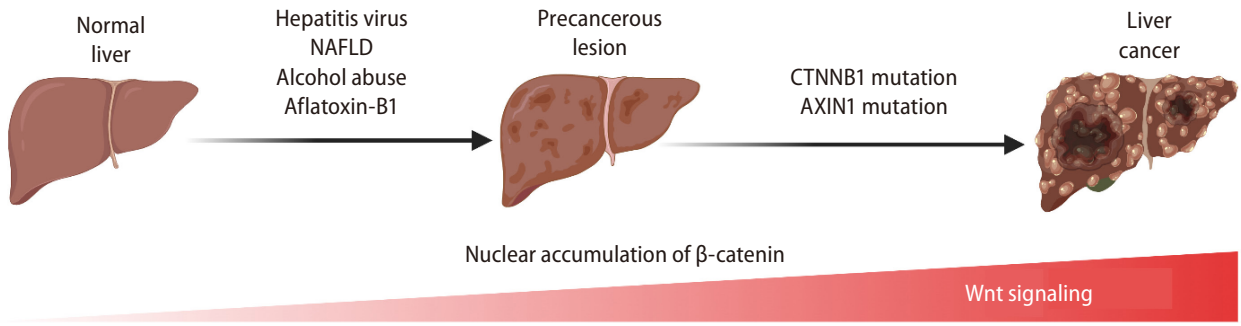


Figure 3. Wnt signaling in liver cancer. Dynamic activation of β-catenin and Wnt signaling-related gene mutations from risk factor exposure to final liver cancer. With the precancerous lesions induced by hepatitis virus, NAFLD, alcohol assumption, or aflatoxin-B1, genetic and epigenetic alteration (e.g., mutations in the CTNNB1 or AXIN1 genes) lead to the accumulation and nuclear translocation of β-catenin, resulting in initiating liver cancer development. Created with BioRender.com. NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease.

and HCV can induce chronic infections and are essential pathogenic factors in cirrhosis and liver cancer (Fig. 3).[51,52] The epidemiological data show that more than 70% of patients with liver cancer have HBV infection, 10–20% have HCV infection, and a significant proportion of patients have both HBV and HCV infection.[53-55]

After infection, the DNA of HBV is integrated into the host genome, inducing genomic instability and transactivation of cancer-related genes, which culminates in the formation of early cancer cell clones. Mechanistically, HBV contributes to HCC development through direct and indirect means.[56] Direct mechanisms include virus mutations, HBV DNA integration, growth regulatory genes activation by HBV-encoded proteins.[57] Indirect mechanisms include the activation of cellular oncogenes associated with HBV DNA integration, genetic instability induced by viral integration or the regulatory protein HBx, and the development of liver disease mediated by immune enhancement due to viral proteins.[58]

Both hepatitis B virus surface antigen (HBsAg) and HBx modulate the expressions of genes involved in Wnt signaling activation. HBsAg activates the transcription factor LEF1 of the Wnt signaling.[59] The X protein encoded by the hepatitis B virus has a vital role in stimulating viral gene expression and replication, critical for maintaining chronic carrier status. HBx, a 17 kDa multifunctional protein, upregulates the expression of Wnt ligands (WNT1 and WNT3), the receptor (FZD2 and FZD7), a component of the destruction complex (GSK3β), E-cadherin, and Wnt1-inducible-signaling pathway protein 1 (WISP1), a suppressor of Wnt antagonists (secreted frizzled-related protein 1 [SFRP1] and SFRP5). On the other hand, the Wnt signaling key components (β-catenin and AXIN1) are highly mutated in HBV-associated HCC. Loss-of-function (LOF) mutations of the *AXIN1* are observed in HBV-HCC patients. In HBV and/or HCV-associated HCC patients, the most frequent mutation in the *CTNNB1* gene is enriched in the exon 3 encoding the N-terminal phosphorylation sites.[60-62] These aberrantly controlled genes in Wnt signaling subsequently promote and lead to the development of HCC.[63-65]

The oncogenic mechanism of HCV in liver cancer is mainly mediated by Wnt/β-catenin signaling hyperactivation via the core protein and two nonstructural proteins, NS3 and NS5A.[66] The core protein (HCV core antigen) is a significant component of HCV. It regulates hepatocyte transcription and promotes Wnt/β-catenin signaling by upregulating Wnt ligands (WNT1 and WNT3A), FZD receptors, and LRP5/6.[67,68] Additionally, at the early stage of HCV infection, the secreted Wnt antagonists, SFRP2 and Dickkopf 1 (DKK1), are downregulated by their promoter hypermethylation.[69,70] HCV core protein also promotes hypermethylation of the *CDH1* gene promoter region,[71] destabilizing the cadherin-catenin-actin complex for β-catenin release and activation.[72] NS5A stabilizes β-catenin via activating phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K)/AKT, leading to GSK3β inactivation followed by inhibiting the protein-destruction complex-mediated β-catenin degradation for Wnt target gene activation. At the early stage of viral infection, HCV-activated Wnt/β-catenin signaling also promotes liver fibrosis by enhancing the activation and survival of hepatic stellate cells.[17,73,74]

Alcohol abuse

Alcohol is a well-known risk factor for liver cancer. Alcoholic liver disease (ALD) is a chronic liver disease caused by long-term alcohol consumption (Fig. 3). ALD is characterized by the fatty liver at the beginning, then progressed to alcoholic hepatitis, liver fibrosis, and cirrhosis, which is pathologically associated with the precancerous lesions of HCC. *In vivo*, ethanol (EtOH) is metabolized into the reactive metabolite acetaldehyde, promoting liver tumorigenesis. Mice administered with the chemical carcinogen, diethylnitrosamine (DEN), for 7 weeks and the subsequent EtOH feeding for 16 weeks exhibited the increased total number of cancer foci and liver tumors.[75] Also, these tumors showed a 3- to 4-fold increase in the expression of proliferation markers and an increased expression of β-catenin, compared to non-tumor hepatocytes.[75] In a rat model of chronic liver disease, EtOH-treated liver was accompanied by the increased proliferation of hepatocytes, depletion of retinol and retinoic acid storage, augmented expression of phospho-GSK3β at the cell membrane, significant upregulation of soluble Wnt ligands (Wnt2 and Wnt7a), accumulation of nuclear β-catenin, and upregulation of β-catenin target genes (cyclin D1/CCND1, c-Myc/MYC, WISP1, and matrix metallopeptidase [MMP7]). These data suggest that long-term EtOH consumption activates the Wnt/β-catenin signaling and increases hepatocyte proliferation, promoting liver tumorigenesis.[75] Additionally, ROS accumulation, nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells (NF-κB)-dependent vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and monocyte chemoattractant protein (MCP)-1 upregulation, and activation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK)-mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) signaling also contribute to EtOH-induced liver tumorigenesis.[76-80]

NAFLD

The increasing prevalence of NAFLD was caused by an over-nourished lifestyle.[81,82] NAFLD is characterized by fat accumulation in the liver, evolving to end-stage liver diseases such as cirrhosis and HCC (Fig. 3).[83] The main risk factors of NAFLD include central obesity, overnutrition, insulin resistance, and metabolic syndrome.[84] In severe NAFLD, many tissue repair-related genes (TMEM204, FGFR2, matrix molecules, and matrix remodeling factors) were hypomethylated at their promoters and overexpressed. Conversely, genes in specific metabolic pathways (lipid metabolism, cytochrome P450 family, multidrug resistance, and fatty acid anabolic pathways) were hypermethylated and silenced.[85] Hyperinsulinemia is one of the risk factors of NAFLD.[86] SOX17 plays a vital role in regulating insulin secretion. *Sox17* KO mice display high susceptibility to high-fat diet-induced hyperglycemia and diabetes.[87] SOX17 directly interacts with the TCF/LEF transcription factor to repress the transcription of Wnt signaling target genes. The methylation of the *SOX17* promoter is a frequent event in human cancers. Epigenetic silencing of *SOX17* contributes to the aberrant activation of Wnt/β-catenin signaling,[88] accelerating progression from NAFLD to HCC. Besides, β-catenin inhibits the expression of CCAAT enhancer-binding protein α (CEBPA) and peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ (PPARG), which in turn inhibits the preadipocyte differentiation.[89] As the co-receptor of the Wnt/β-catenin signaling, LRP6 induces lipid accumulation in the liver via insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF1)/AKT/mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR)/sterol regulatory element binding transcription factor (SREBF) 1/2 signaling. Intriguingly, inhibiting the non-canonical Wnt signaling reduces lipid accumulation and inflammation.[90] Therefore, while reducing the effects of NAFLD risk factors, inhibition of the Wnt signaling is also essential for attenuating the development of NAFLD and preventing the initiation of HCC.

Aflatoxin-B1 exposure

Among the aflatoxins, aflatoxin type B1 (AFB1) primarily targets the liver as a highly potent hepatotoxin and hepatocarcinogen (Fig. 3). AFB1 impairs DNA repair processes, resulting in severe DNA mutagenesis, and also inhibits DNA and RNA metabolism. This pathological event ultimately leads to excessive liver lipid accumulation, liver enlargement, bile duct epithelial hyperplasia, and liver cancer. The potency of aflatoxin to cause liver cancer is significantly enhanced in the presence of HBV infection. Under chronic HBV infection, cytochrome P450s could metabolize inactive AFB1 to mutagenic AFB1-8,9-epoxide. Also, the infection leads to hepatocyte necrosis and regeneration, producing oxygen and nitrogen reactive species and increasing the incidence of AFB1-induced mutagenesis.[91] Clinical studies have shown that *CTNNB1* mutations are present in approximately one-quarter of HCC in areas with low aflatoxin B1 exposure. Interestingly,

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0058

these *CTNNB1* mutations were similar to those previously reported in the human HCC.[92]

Wnt SIGNALING IN LIVER CANCER

HCC

HCC is a common and fatal malignancy worldwide.[93] Regardless of the risk factors mentioned above, aberrant hyperactivation of Wnt/β-catenin signaling is observed in 95% of HCCs.[94] The most common genetic mutations of the Wnt signaling in HCC are the gain-of-function mutations in the *CTNNB1* gene encoding β-catenin,[61,95] which is somewhat distinct from colorectal cancer where Wnt/β-catenin signaling hyperactivation is mainly driven by the *APC* gene inactivation.[96] Missense mutations of *CTNNB1* exon 3 were observed in 18.1% of HCC cases. Missense mutations at codons 32, 33, 38, or 45 of the *CTNNB1* gene lead to the unphosphorylation of the N-terminus of β-catenin for its stabilization, nuclear translocation, and target gene transactivation.[60] Secondly, the LOF mutations in the *AXIN1* gene were observed in 5–19% of HCC cases.[97] *CTNNB1* and *AXIN1* mutations occur in patients with advanced HCC (Fig. 3).[98-100] Importantly, hyperactivation of the Wnt signaling is considered a hallmark of advanced HCC.[101] It should also be noted that mutations in the *CTNNB1* and *AXIN1* genes lead to different HCC subtypes accompanied by distinct clinical and pathological features. *CTNNB1* mutations are associated with less aggressive HCC, including chromosomally stable and highly differentiated tumors,[102] with a better prognosis.[95] In contrast, *AXIN1* mutations occur more frequently in more aggressive HCC tumors characterized by hypodifferentiated tumor cells and chromatin instability.[102] Consistently, the HCC tumors with *CTNNB1* mutations or *AXIN1* mutations showed different target gene expression.[61,95,103]

CCA

CCA is ranked as the second most common hepatobiliary cancer after HCC. CCA originates mainly from differentiated bile duct epithelial cells.[104] CCA is often diagnosed at an advanced stage with a poor prognosis. Current chemotherapy has not improved the survival rate of unresectable CCA patients. Clinical and preclinical studies have shown that activation of the Wnt/β-catenin signaling occurs throughout the initiation and progression of CCA. Wnt ligands (WNT2, WNT7b, and WNT10A) and TCF4 are upregulated in CCA, accompanied by nuclear translocation of β-catenin.[105,106] The progression of epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT) was observed in CCA, represented by the disrupted epithelial cell-cell junctions and mesenchymal characteristics.[107-109] Wnt/β-catenin signaling is one of the critical pathways promoting the EMT transition.[110,111] In CCA cells, suppression of Wnt/β-catenin signaling increased E-cadherin and downregulated vimentin,[112,113] suggesting that the Wnt/β-catenin signaling is associated with EMT during CCA tumorigenesis. β-catenin interacts with E-cadherin to form the cadherin-catenin-actin complex, maintaining epithelial cell adhesion, cytoskeleton, and integrity. During CCA development, the decreased E-cadherin releases β-catenin, resulting in β-catenin accumulation and nuclear translocation.[111] Then, β-catenin activates the transcription of twist, snails, and ZEB1 to induce the EMT process in CCA cells.[111]

HB

HB is a rare malignant tumor found in infants and children.[114] The preclinical and clinical studies showed the hyperactivation of Wnt/β-catenin signaling in HB. In HB cases, β-catenin was found to be increased in the cytoplasm and nucleus of the tumor cells.[115,116] While *CTNNB1* mutations are limited in the exon 3 in embryonal HB, the *CTNNB1* mutations in fetal HB encompass exon 3 and 4.[117] Meanwhile, missense, deletion, or insertion mutations in the *AXIN1* gene were detected in 8% of HB cases.[118]

MANIPULATING Wnt SIGNALING

Porcupine (PORCN)

PORCN is a membranous protein mainly localized in the endoplasmic reticulum. PORCN mediates the palmitoylation of Wnt ligands, an essential process for Wnt ligands secretion and ligand-frizzled receptor binding.[119-121] Genetic and pharmacological blockade of PORCN reduces palmitoylation and inhibits the secretion of Wnt ligands, suppressing Wnt signaling.[122] The clinical trials showed promising results of PORCN inhibitors in HCC treatment. ETC159, CGX1321, and RXC004

have entered phase I clinical trials, and IWP12 is still in the preclinical studies (Fig. 4).[123] In mouse models, *Porcn* KO induces embryonic lethality.[124,125] *Porcn* inhibition could cause adverse effects on bone homeostasis.[126]

Wnt ligands

In physiological conditions, Wnt signaling is activated by binding of secreted Wnt ligands to LRP5/6 coreceptors and FZD receptors.[127] Thus, targeting Wnt ligands by chemicals or neutralizing antibodies efficiently inhibits Wnt signaling. Based on the high expression of WNT1 in human HCC cell lines and tissues. Anti-WNT1 neutralizing antibody showed its growth inhibitory effect on HCC cell lines but not on normal hepatocytes, with reduced β-catenin's transcriptional activity (Fig. 4).[128]

Wnt antagonists

SFRPs, WIFs, and DKKs are the secreted Wnt signaling antagonists.[129,130] SFRP-1 and Wnt inhibitory factor 1 (WIF1) inhibit Wnt signaling by directly binding to Wnt ligands.[131] The

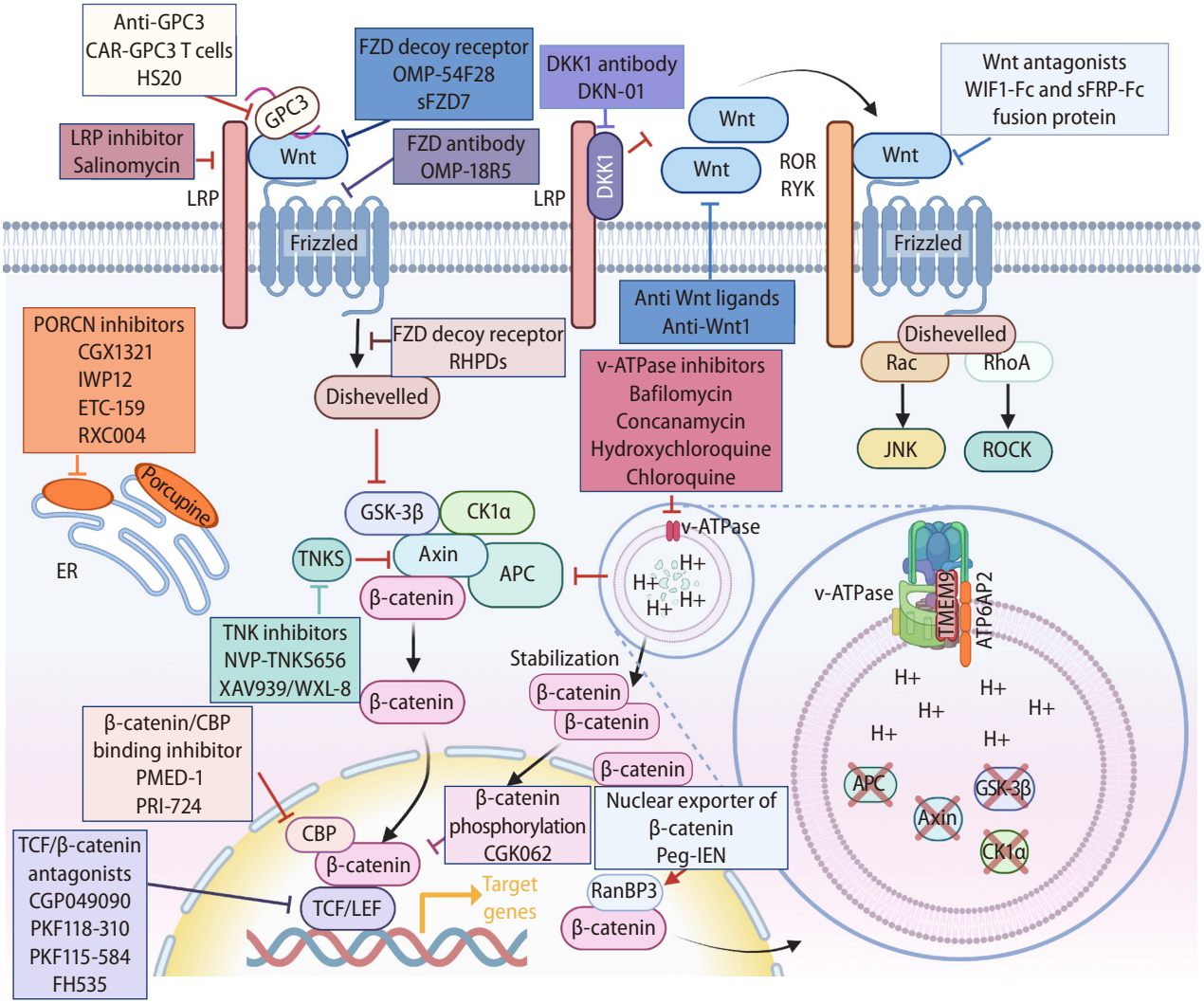


Figure 4. Manipulating Wnt signaling. Illustration of components and processes of Wnt signal transduction as druggable targets for liver cancer treatment. See the text for detail. Created with BioRender.com. GPC3, glypican-3; LRP, lipoprotein receptor-related protein; FZD, frizzled; DKK1, Dickkopf 1; ROR, receptor tyrosine kinase-like orphan receptor; RYK, receptor tyrosine kinase; PORCN, porcupine; ER, endoplasmic reticulum; GSK-3β, glycogen synthase kinase 3β; CK1α, casein kinase 1α; APC, adenomatous polyposis coli; TCF, T-cell factor; CBP, CREB binding protein; LEF, lymphoid enhancer-binding factor; peg-IFN, pegylated-Interferon-α2a; RanBP3, Ran-binding protein 3.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0058

fusion proteins WIF1-Fc and SFRP1-Fc were constructed by adding the Fc fragment of human immunoglobulin (Ig) G1 to WIF1 and SFRP1, respectively (Fig. 4).[132] The fusion proteins exert potent anti-tumor activity by downregulating E2F transcription factor 1 (E2F1), cyclin D1, and c-Myc, increasing apoptosis of HCC cells and impairing tumor vascularization. DKK1 was initially considered a β-catenin-dependent tumor suppressor.[130,133] Several studies have shown that DKK1 promotes tumor cell proliferation, which may be due to DKK1-induced endocytosis of LRP and subsequent activation of the Wnt/PCP signaling pathway.[134,135] DKN-01 is a humanized monoclonal antibody targeting DKK1 in phase I/II clinical trial for HCC (Fig. 4). Phase I investigated the safety of DKN-01 as a single agent and in combination with sorafenib to treat HCC. Phase II explores the anti-tumor activity and safety of DKN-01 in patients with advanced HCC.

FZD receptors

The FZD receptors are promising therapeutic targets for HCC. The anti-FZD antibody can effectively reduce the HCC tumor growth by blocking the activation of FZD receptors on the Wnt signaling.[136] FZD decoy receptor OMP-54F28 (ipafricept) is a recombinant fusion protein that binds to a human IgG1 Fc fragment of FZD8,[137,138] which acts synergistically with chemotherapeutic agents (Fig. 4).[139] A phase 1b dose-escalation clinical trial evaluated the safety, tolerability, and pharmacokinetics of OMP-54F28 when combined with sorafenib. Secreted FZD7 (sFZD7) is the extracellular domain of FZD7, expressed and purified from *Escherichia coli*. sFZD7 binding to WNT3 decreased the transcriptional activity of β-catenin/TCF4 and inhibited the growth of HepG2, Hep40, and Huh7.[140] In combination with doxorubicin, sFZD7 inhibited the expression of c-Myc/MYC, Cyclin D1/CCND1, and Survivin/BIRC5, reduced the phosphorylation levels of AKT and ERK1/2, inhibited the growth of Huh7 xenograft tumors, and acted as a chemosensitizer.[140] OMP-54F28 is entering phase I clinical trials, while sFZD7 remains in preclinical studies (Fig. 4).

FZD antibody OMP-18R5 (vantictumab) is a monoclonal antibody directly binding to FZD receptors, which blocks the binding of Wnt ligands to FZD 1, 2, 5, 7, and 8,[141] which inhibits β-catenin-mediated transactivation (Fig. 4). In patient-derived xenograft models, OMP-18R5 combined with chemotherapeutic agents synergistically inhibited the development of several cancers.[141,142] However, like PORCN inhibitors, OMP-18R5 has the same risk of impairing bone homeostasis.[143] In a dose-escalation clinical trial of OMP-18R5, one patient developed bone degeneration, controllable with zoledronic acid. The skeletal toxicity appeared to be manageable and reversible.[144]

LRP co-receptors

Salinomycin (SAL), isolated from *Streptomyces albus,* is a monocarboxylic polyether ionophore antibiotic.[145,146] SAL blocks Wnt-induced LRP phosphorylation and leads to LRP protein degradation, destabilizing the Wnt/FZD/LRP complex and inhibiting the Wnt/β-catenin signaling (Fig. 4).[147] SAL effectively inhibits β-catenin expression in HepG2/C3a cell line.[148] SAL also inhibits the migration and invasiveness of liver cancer stem cells through the Wnt/β-catenin signaling suppression.[149]

Tankyrase (TNKS)

TNKS mediates PARsylation and subsequent degradation of AXIN via the ubiquitin-proteasome pathway, which in turn disrupts the β-catenin destruction complex.[150] Subsequently, the released β-catenin enters the nucleus to transactivate Wnt target genes.[151,152] TNKS is overexpressed in many cancers, including HCC, gastric cancer, and colorectal cancer.[153-155] The TNKS inhibitors XAV939, WXL-8, and NVP-TNKS656, attenuated Wnt/β-catenin signaling and inhibited the growth of HCC cells (Fig. 4).[155-157] Moreover, TNKS inhibitors also suppressed HCC metastasis and invasion.[157] However, there are no relevant clinical trials for TNKS inhibitors in HCC.

Nuclear export of β-catenin

As shown in Table 1 and Supplementary Table 1, pegylated-Interferon-α2a (peg-IFN), the first-line therapy for the HCV-infected,[158] attenuates the recurrence of HCC (Fig. 4).[159] Mechanistically, peg-IFN upregulates the expression of Ran-binding protein 3 (RanBP3),[160] which enhances the nuclear export of β-catenin.[160] Thus, it is likely that peg-IFN-induced β-catenin nuclear export is a mechanism delaying HCC and improving survival in HCV patients.

β-catenin-mediated gene transactivation

The small molecule ICG-001 inhibits the interaction between β-catenin and CREB binding protein (CREBBP/CBP) for suppression of β-catenin-mediated gene transactivation (Fig. 4).[161] A phase Ib/IIa clinical trial of the ICG-001 derivative, PRI-724, targeting HCC has been terminated.[162] Similar to ICG-001, PMED-1 disrupts β-catenin-CREBBP interaction and suppresses β-catenin target gene activation.[163] PMED-1 inhibits HCC cell proliferation but not normal human hepatocytes.[163]

PKF118-310, PKF115-584, and CGP049090 are small-molecule inhibitors targeting the β-catenin-TCF complex (Fig. 4).[164] These antagonists displayed the dose-dependent cytotoxicity in HepG2, Hep40, and Huh7 cell lines, with reduced cytotoxicity (10%) to normal hepatocytes. PKF118-310, PKF115-584, and CGP049090 downregulated β-catenin target genes (*MYC*, *CCND1*, and *Survivin/BIRC5*) and inhibited the growth of HepG2 xenografts.[164,165] Similar to the mechanism of PKF118-

Table 1. Targeting Wnt signaling in liver cancers

Agent	Target	Phase	Trial identifier	Type
DKN-01	DKK1	Phase I/II	NCT03645980	Protein
OMP-18R5	FZD1, 2, 5, 7, and 8	Phase I	NCT01345201	Protein
sFZD7	FZD7	Preclinical	NA	Protein
RHPDs	FZD7	Preclinical	NA	Protein
OMP-54F28	FZD8	Phase I	NCT02069145	Protein
Salinomycin	LRP5/6	Preclinical	NA	Natural compounds
CGX1321	PORCN	Phase I	NCT03507998	Small molecule inhibitors
IWP12	PORCN	Preclinical	NA	Small molecule inhibitors
ETC-159	PORCN	Phase I	NCT02521844	Small molecule inhibitors
RXC004	PORCN	Phase I	NCT03447470	Small molecule inhibitors
NVP-TNKS656	Tankyrase	Preclinical	NA	Small molecule inhibitors
XAV939/WXL-8	Tankyrase	Preclinical	NA	Small molecule inhibitors
CGP049090	TCF/β-catenin	Preclinical	NA	Natural compounds
PKF118-310	TCF/β-catenin	Preclinical	NA	Natural compounds
PKF115-584	TCF/β-catenin	Preclinical	NA	Natural compounds
FH535	TCF/β-catenin	Preclinical	NA	Small molecule inhibitors
Peg-IFN	TCF/β-catenin	Phase II	NCT00610389	Protein
WIF1-Fc and sFRP-Fc	Wnt ligands	Preclinical	NA	Protein
Anti-Wnt1	Wnt1	Preclinical	NA	Protein
CGK062	β-catenin phosphorylation	Preclinical	NA	Small molecule inhibitors
PMED-1	β-catenin/CBP	Preclinical	NA	Small molecule inhibitors
PRI-724	β-catenin/CBP	Phase I/II	NCT01302405	Small molecule inhibitors
Hydroxychloroquine	v-ATPase	Phase II	NCT03037437	Small molecule inhibitors
Chloroquine	v-ATPase	Preclinical	NA	Small molecule inhibitors
Bafilomycin	v-ATPase	Preclinical	NA	Small molecule inhibitors
Concanamycin	v-ATPase	Preclinical	NA	Small molecule inhibitors
CAR-GPC3 T cell	GPC3	Phase I	NCT02932956	Cells
Anti-GPC3 antibody	GPC3	Phase II	NCT01507168	Protein
CIK with anti-GPC3	GPC3	Phase II	NCT03146637	Cells

DKK1, Dickkopf 1; FZD, frizzed; NA, not available; PORCN, porcupine; TCF, T-cell factor; peg-IFN, pegylated-Interferon-α2a; CBP, CREB binding protein; v-ATPase, vacuolar-type ATPase.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0058

310, PKF115-584, and CGP049090, FH535 inhibits β-catenin-mediated gene transactivation by interrupting the recruitment of nuclear receptor coactivator 2 (NCOA2)/GRIP1 to the β-catenin transcriptional complex.[166] It was shown that FH535 inhibits HCC cell proliferation by reducing cancer cell stemness.[165]

β-catenin phosphorylation

CGK062 promotes PKCα-mediated phosphorylation of β-catenin at Ser33/Ser37, which degrades β-catenin by the proteasome (Fig. 4).[167] Consistently, CGK062 inhibited the expression of β-catenin target genes (*CCND1*, *MYC*, and *AXIN2*) and suppressed the growth of Wnt/β-catenin-activated HCC cells.[167]

Cancer-specific targeting of Wnt signaling

Given the pivotal role of Wnt signaling in the homeostasis and regeneration of multiple organs,[168-170] broad-spectrum Wnt signaling inhibitors cause detrimental effects on the normal cells and organs. Therefore, cancer-specific Wnt signaling regulators may be attractive for Wnt signaling blockade therapy. TMEM9, an amplifier of Wnt/β-catenin signaling, promotes lysosomal protein degradation via v-ATPase, resulting in APC downregulation.[46] TMEM9 is highly expressed in liver regeneration and HCC. Genetic ablation of *TMEM9* inhibits HCC tumorigenesis with downregulation of Wnt/β-catenin signaling.[46] Similarly, v-ATPase inhibitors, bafilomycin and concanamycin,[171,172] also inhibit Wnt/β-catenin signaling without toxicity to normal cells and animals (Fig. 4, Table 1).[45,46] Thus, molecular targeting of the TMEM9-v-ATPase axis can be used as cancer-specific Wnt/β-catenin blockade.

Glypican-3 (GPC3) is a proteoglycan binding to the FZD receptor and stimulates Wnt ligands-FZD interaction, resulting in the Wnt signaling activation (Fig. 4).[173] GPC-3 is specifically expressed in HCC but not in normal human liver tissue.[174] The ectopic expression of GPC3 promotes the proliferation of HCC cells.[175] HS20 (an anti-GPC3 monoclonal antibody) suppresses Wnt/β-catenin signaling via inhibiting the interaction of Wnt3a with the GPC3.[176] In xenograft mouse models, HS20 inhibited HCC progression without apparent concomitant toxicity.[176] To date, including CAR-GPC3 T cells or anti-GPC3 antibodies, 33 clinical trials related to GPC3 for HCC treatment were registered (https://clinicaltrials.gov/) (Table 1, Supplementary Table 1).

Concluding remarks

Wnt signaling activation plays a pivotal role in liver regeneration, metabolic zonation, liver diseases, and liver cancer. Aberrantly hyperactivated Wnt signaling promotes liver tumorigenesis and progression, often in conjunction with liver diseases. Although direct targeting of Wnt signaling sounds attractive as cancer therapy, given the crucial roles of Wnt signaling in tissue homeostasis and regeneration, severe adverse effects from Wnt blockade are inevitable. Nonetheless, an in-depth understanding of the biology of Wnt signaling in liver cancer and exploring cancer-specific Wnt signaling regulators are expected to identify molecular targets specific to liver cancer, which may overcome the current limitations of Wnt signaling inhibitors, and further improve therapeutic strategies of liver cancer treatment.

Authors' contribution

G.Z. and J.I.P. wrote the manuscript.

Acknowledgements

We apologize for not including all relevant studies in the field due to limited space. This work was supported by the Cancer Prevention and Research Institute of Texas (RP200315 to J.I.P.) and the National Cancer Institute (CA193297 and CA256207 to J.I.P.).

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

Supplementary material is available at Clinical and Molecular Hepatology website (http://www.e-cmh.org).

REFERENCES

1. Clemens MM, McGill MR, Apte U. Mechanisms and biomarkers of liver regeneration after drug-induced liver injury. Adv Pharmacol 2019;85:241-262.

2. Michalopoulos GK. Hepatostat: liver regeneration and normal liver tissue maintenance. Hepatology 2017;65:1384-1392.
3. Ko S, Russell JO, Molina LM, Monga SP. Liver progenitors and adult cell plasticity in hepatic injury and repair: knowns and unknowns. Annu Rev Pathol 2020;15:23-50.
4. Duncan AW, Taylor MH, Hickey RD, Hanlon Newell AE, Lenzi ML, Olson SB, et al. The ploidy conveyor of mature hepatocytes as a source of genetic variation. Nature 2010;467:707-710.
5. Anti M, Marra G, Rapaccini GL, Rumi C, Bussa S, Fadda G, et al. DNA ploidy pattern in human chronic liver diseases and hepatic nodular lesions. Flow cytometric analysis on echo-guided needle liver biopsy. Cancer 1994;73:281-288.
6. Duncan AW, Hanlon Newell AE, Smith L, Wilson EM, Olson SB, Thayer MJ, et al. Frequent aneuploidy among normal human hepatocytes. Gastroenterology 2012;142:25-28.
7. Siegel RL, Miller KD, Fuchs HE, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2022. CA Cancer J Clin 2022;72:7-33.
8. Llovet JM, Zucman-Rossi J, Pikarsky E, Sangro B, Schwartz M, Sherman M, et al. Hepatocellular carcinoma. Nat Rev Dis Primers 2016;2:16018.
9. Tortelote GG, Reis RR, de Almeida Mendes F, Abreu JG. Complexity of the Wnt/β-catenin pathway: searching for an activation model. Cell Signal 2017;40:30-43.
10. Xia XH, Xiao CJ, Shan H. Facilitation of liver cancer SMCC7721 cell aging by sirtuin 4 via inhibiting JAK2/STAT3 signal pathway. Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci 2017;21:1248-1253.
11. Chen J, Gingold JA, Su X. Immunomodulatory TGF-β signaling in hepatocellular carcinoma. Trends Mol Med 2019;25:1010-1023.
12. Czauderna C, Castven D, Mahn FL, Marquardt JU. Context-dependent role of NF-κB signaling in primary liver cancer-from tumor development to therapeutic implications. Cancers (Basel) 2019;11:1053.
13. Russell JO, Monga SP. Wnt/β-catenin signaling in liver development, homeostasis, and pathobiology. Annu Rev Pathol 2018;13:351-378.
14. Cheng JH, She H, Han YP, Wang J, Xiong S, Asahina K, et al. Wnt antagonism inhibits hepatic stellate cell activation and liver fibrosis. Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol 2008;294:G39-G49.
15. Zeng G, Awan F, Otruba W, Muller P, Apte U, Tan X, et al. Wnt'er in liver: expression of Wnt and frizzled genes in mouse. Hepatology 2007;45:195-204.
16. Ma R, Martínez-Ramírez AS, Borders TL, Gao F, Sosa-Pineda B. Metabolic and non-metabolic liver zonation is established non-synchronously and requires sinusoidal Wnts. Elife 2020;9:e46206.
17. Monga SP. β-catenin signaling and roles in liver homeostasis, injury, and tumorigenesis. Gastroenterology 2015;148:1294-1310.
18. Nusse R, Clevers H. Wnt/β-catenin signaling, disease, and emerging therapeutic modalities. Cell 2017;169:985-999.
19. Clevers H, Nusse R. Wnt/β-catenin signaling and disease. Cell 2012;149:1192-1205.
20. Scheibner K, Bakhti M, Bastidas-Ponce A, Lickert H. Wnt signaling: implications in endoderm development and pancreas organogenesis. Curr Opin Cell Biol 2019;61:48-55.
21. Steinhart Z, Angers S. Wnt signaling in development and tissue homeostasis. Development 2018;145:dev146589.
22. Hu S, Monga SP. Wnt/-catenin signaling and liver regeneration: circuit, biology, and opportunities. Gene Expr 2021;20:189-199.
23. Zhan T, Rindtorff N, Boutros M. Wnt signaling in cancer. Oncogene 2017;36:1461-1473.
24. Raslan AA, Yoon JK. WNT signaling in lung repair and regeneration. Mol Cells 2020;43:774-783.
25. Girardi F, Le Grand F. Wnt signaling in skeletal muscle development and regeneration. Prog Mol Biol Transl Sci 2018;153:157-179.
26. Jackstadt R, Hodder MC, Sansom OJ. WNT and β-catenin in cancer: genes and therapy. Annu Rev Cancer Biol 2020;4:177-196.
27. Monga SP, Pediaditakis P, Mule K, Stolz DB, Michalopoulos GK. Changes in WNT/beta-catenin pathway during regulated growth in rat liver regeneration. Hepatology 2001;33:1098-1109.
28. Stolz DB, Mars WM, Petersen BE, Kim TH, Michalopoulos GK. Growth factor signal transduction immediately after two-thirds partial hepatectomy in the rat. Cancer Res 1999;59:3954-3960.
29. Köhler C, Bell AW, Bowen WC, Monga SP, Fleig W, Michalopoulos GK. Expression of notch-1 and its ligand Jagged-1 in rat liver during liver regeneration. Hepatology 2004;39:1056-1065.
30. Higgins GM, Anderson RM. Experimental pathology of the liver. 1. Restoration of the liver of the white rat following partial surgical removal. Arch Pathol 1931;12:186-202.
31. Nikfarjam M, Malcontenti-Wilson C, Fanartzis M, Daruwalla J, Christophi C. A model of partial hepatectomy in mice. J

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0058

Invest Surg 2004;17:291-294.
32. Sadler KC, Krahn KN, Gaur NA, Ukomadu C. Liver growth in the embryo and during liver regeneration in zebrafish requires the cell cycle regulator, uhrf1. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2007;104:1570-1575.
33. Curado S, Stainier DY, Anderson RM. Nitroreductase-mediated cell/tissue ablation in zebrafish: a spatially and temporally controlled ablation method with applications in developmental and regeneration studies. Nat Protoc 2008;3:948-954.
34. Teschke R, Vierke W, Goldermann L. Carbon tetrachloride (CCl4) levels and serum activities of liver enzymes following acute CCl4 intoxication. Toxicol Lett 1983;17:175-180.
35. Preisegger KH, Factor VM, Fuchsbichler A, Stumptner C, Denk H, Thorgeirsson SS. Atypical ductular proliferation and its inhibition by transforming growth factor beta1 in the 3,5-diethoxycarbonyl-1,4-dihydrocollidine mouse model for chronic alcoholic liver disease. Lab Invest 1999;79:103-109.
36. Oderberg IM, Goessling W. Partial hepatectomy in adult zebrafish. J Vis Exp 2021;(170):10.3791/62349.
37. North TE, Babu IR, Vedder LM, Lord AM, Wishnok JS, Tannenbaum SR, et al. PGE2-regulated Wnt signaling and N-acetylcysteine are synergistically hepatoprotective in zebrafish acetaminophen injury. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2010;107:17315-17320.
38. Sekine S, Gutiérrez PJ, Lan BY, Feng S, Hebrok M. Liver-specific loss of beta-catenin results in delayed hepatocyte proliferation after partial hepatectomy. Hepatology 2007;45:361-368.
39. Goessling W, North TE, Lord AM, Ceol C, Lee S, Weidinger G, et al. APC mutant zebrafish uncover a changing temporal requirement for wnt signaling in liver development. Dev Biol 2008;320:161-174.
40. Sun T, Pikiolek M, Orsini V, Bergling S, Holwerda S, Morelli L, et al. AXIN2+ pericentral hepatocytes have limited contributions to liver homeostasis and regeneration. Cell Stem Cell 2020;26:97-107.e6.
41. Huch M, Dorrell C, Boj SF, van Es JH, Li VS, van de Wetering M, et al. In vitro expansion of single Lgr5+ liver stem cells induced by Wnt-driven regeneration. Nature 2013;494:247-250.
42. Carmon KS, Lin Q, Gong X, Thomas A, Liu Q. LGR5 interacts and cointernalizes with Wnt receptors to modulate Wnt/β-catenin signaling. Mol Cell Biol 2012;32:2054-2064.
43. Jho EH, Zhang T, Domon C, Joo CK, Freund JN, Costantini F. Wnt/beta-catenin/Tcf signaling induces the transcription of Axin2, a negative regulator of the signaling pathway. Mol Cell Biol 2002;22:1172-1183.
44. Lustig B, Jerchow B, Sachs M, Weiler S, Pietsch T, Karsten U, et al. Negative feedback loop of Wnt signaling through upregulation of conductin/axin2 in colorectal and liver tumors. Mol Cell Biol 2002;22:1184-1193.
45. Jung YS, Jun S, Kim MJ, Lee SH, Suh HN, Lien EM, et al. TMEM9 promotes intestinal tumorigenesis through vacuolar-ATPase-activated Wnt/β-catenin signalling. Nat Cell Biol 2018;20:1421-1433.
46. Jung YS, Stratton SA, Lee SH, Kim MJ, Jun S, Zhang J, et al. TMEM9-v-ATPase activates Wnt/β-catenin signaling via APC lysosomal degradation for liver regeneration and tumorigenesis. Hepatology 2021;73:776-794.
47. Kudo Y, Sugimoto M, Arias E, Kasashima H, Cordes T, Linares JF, et al. PKCλ/ι loss induces autophagy, oxidative phosphorylation, and NRF2 to promote liver cancer progression. Cancer Cell 2020;38:247-262.e11.
48. Wang Z, Li Z, Ye Y, Xie L, Li W. Oxidative stress and liver cancer: etiology and therapeutic targets. Oxid Med Cell Longev 2016;2016:7891574.
49. Funato Y, Michiue T, Asashima M, Miki H. The thioredoxin-related redox-regulating protein nucleoredoxin inhibits Wnt-beta-catenin signalling through dishevelled. Nat Cell Biol 2006;8:501-508.
50. Zhou T, Zhou KK, Lee K, Gao G, Lyons TJ, Kowluru R, et al. The role of lipid peroxidation products and oxidative stress in activation of the canonical wingless-type MMTV integration site (WNT) pathway in a rat model of diabetic retinopathy. Diabetologia 2011;54:459-468.
51. Sun HC, Zhang W, Qin LX, Zhang BH, Ye QH, Wang L, et al. Positive serum hepatitis B e antigen is associated with higher risk of early recurrence and poorer survival in patients after curative resection of hepatitis B-related hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol 2007;47:684-690.
52. Rein DB, Wittenborn JS, Weinbaum CM, Sabin M, Smith BD, Lesesne SB. Forecasting the morbidity and mortality associated with prevalent cases of pre-cirrhotic chronic hepatitis C in the United States. Dig Liver Dis 2011;43:66-72.
53. Yang JD, Kim WR, Coelho R, Mettler TA, Benson JT, Sanderson SO, et al. Cirrhosis is present in most patients with hepatitis B and hepatocellular carcinoma. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011;9:64-70.
54. Roudot-Thoraval F. Epidemiology of hepatitis C virus infec-

tion. Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol 2021;45:101596.
55. Mavilia MG, Wu GY. HBV-HCV coinfection: viral interactions, management, and viral reactivation. J Clin Transl Hepatol 2018;6:296-305.
56. Levrero M, Zucman-Rossi J. Mechanisms of HBV-induced hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol 2016;64(1 Suppl):S84-S101.
57. Arbuthnot P, Kew M. Hepatitis B virus and hepatocellular carcinoma. Int J Exp Pathol 2001;82:77-100.
58. Neuveut C, Wei Y, Buendia MA. Mechanisms of HBV-related hepatocarcinogenesis. J Hepatol 2010;52:594-604.
59. Tian X, Li J, Ma ZM, Zhao C, Wan DF, Wen YM. Role of hepatitis B surface antigen in the development of hepatocellular carcinoma: regulation of lymphoid enhancer-binding factor 1. J Exp Clin Cancer Res 2009;28:58.
60. Javanmard D, Najafi M, Babaei MR, Karbalaie Niya MH, Esghaei M, Panahi M, et al. Investigation of CTNNB1 gene mutations and expression in hepatocellular carcinoma and cirrhosis in association with hepatitis B virus infection. Infect Agent Cancer 2020;15:37.
61. Zucman-Rossi J, Benhamouche S, Godard C, Boyault S, Grimber G, Balabaud C, et al. Differential effects of inactivated Axin1 and activated beta-catenin mutations in human hepatocellular carcinomas. Oncogene 2007;26:774-780.
62. Galy O, Chemin I, Le Roux E, Villar S, Le Calvez-Kelm F, Lereau M, et al. Mutations in TP53 and CTNNB1 in relation to hepatitis B and C infections in hepatocellular carcinomas from Thailand. Hepat Res Treat 2011;2011:697162.
63. Hsieh A, Kim HS, Lim SO, Yu DY, Jung G. Hepatitis B viral X protein interacts with tumor suppressor adenomatous polyposis coli to activate Wnt/β-catenin signaling. Cancer Lett 2011;300:162-172.
64. Feitelson MA, Duan LX. Hepatitis B virus X antigen in the pathogenesis of chronic infections and the development of hepatocellular carcinoma. Am J Pathol 1997;150:1141-1157.
65. Lau CC, Sun T, Ching AK, He M, Li JW, Wong AM, et al. Viral-human chimeric transcript predisposes risk to liver cancer development and progression. Cancer Cell 2014;25:335-349.
66. Moradpour D, Penin F. Hepatitis C virus proteins: from structure to function. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 2013;369:113-142.
67. Fukutomi T, Zhou Y, Kawai S, Eguchi H, Wands JR, Li J. Hepatitis C virus core protein stimulates hepatocyte growth: correlation with upregulation of Wnt-1 expression. Hepatology 2005;41:1096-1105.
68. Liu J, Ding X, Tang J, Cao Y, Hu P, Zhou F, et al. Enhancement of canonical Wnt/β-catenin signaling activity by HCV core protein promotes cell growth of hepatocellular carcinoma cells. PLoS One 2011;6:e27496.
69. Umer M, Qureshi SA, Hashmi ZY, Raza A, Ahmad J, Rahman M, et al. Promoter hypermethylation of Wnt pathway inhibitors in hepatitis C virus - induced multistep hepatocarcinogenesis. Virol J 2014;11:117.
70. Quan H, Zhou F, Nie D, Chen Q, Cai X, Shan X, et al. Hepatitis C virus core protein epigenetically silences SFRP1 and enhances HCC aggressiveness by inducing epithelial-mesenchymal transition. Oncogene 2014;33:2826-2835.
71. Ripoli M, Barbano R, Balsamo T, Piccoli C, Brunetti V, Coco M, et al. Hypermethylated levels of E-cadherin promoter in Huh-7 cells expressing the HCV core protein. Virus Res 2011;160:74-81.
72. Jung YS, Wang W, Jun S, Zhang J, Srivastava M, Kim MJ, et al. Deregulation of CRAD-controlled cytoskeleton initiates mucinous colorectal cancer via β-catenin. Nat Cell Biol 2018;20:1303-1314.
73. Liu Y, El-Serag HB, Jiao L, Lee J, Moore D, Franco LM, et al. WNT signaling pathway gene polymorphisms and risk of hepatic fibrosis and inflammation in HCV-infected patients. PLoS One 2013;8:e84407.
74. Takahara Y, Takahashi M, Zhang QW, Wagatsuma H, Mori M, Tamori A, et al. Serial changes in expression of functionally clustered genes in progression of liver fibrosis in hepatitis C patients. World J Gastroenterol 2008;14:2010-2022.
75. Mercer KE, Hennings L, Ronis MJ. Alcohol consumption, Wnt/β-catenin signaling, and hepatocarcinogenesis. Adv Exp Med Biol 2015;815:185-195.
76. Kim HS, Kim SJ, Bae J, Wang Y, Park SY, Min YS, et al. The p90rsk-mediated signaling of ethanol-induced cell proliferation in HepG2 cell line. Korean J Physiol Pharmacol 2016;20:595-603.
77. Wang F, Yang JL, Yu KK, Xu M, Xu YZ, Chen L, et al. Activation of the NF-κB pathway as a mechanism of alcohol enhanced progression and metastasis of human hepatocellular carcinoma. Mol Cancer 2015;14:10.
78. Yang CF, Zhong YJ, Ma Z, Li L, Shi L, Chen L, et al. NOX4/ROS mediate ethanol-induced apoptosis via MAPK signal pathway in L-02 cells. Int J Mol Med 2018;41:2306-2316.
79. Zhang C, Ellis JL, Yin C. Inhibition of vascular endothelial growth factor signaling facilitates liver repair from acute ethanol-induced injury in zebrafish. Dis Model Mech 2016;9:1383-1396.

80. Mandrekar P, Ambade A, Lim A, Szabo G, Catalano D. An essential role for monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 in alcoholic liver injury: regulation of proinflammatory cytokines and hepatic steatosis in mice. Hepatology 2011;54:2185-2197.
81. Yuen MF, Tanaka Y, Fong DY, Fung J, Wong DK, Yuen JC, et al. Independent risk factors and predictive score for the development of hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol 2009;50:80-88.
82. Wong VW, Chu WC, Wong GL, Chan RS, Chim AM, Ong A, et al. Prevalence of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and advanced fibrosis in Hong Kong Chinese: a population study using proton-magnetic resonance spectroscopy and transient elastography. Gut 2012;61:409-415.
83. Bhala N, Angulo P, van der Poorten D, Lee E, Hui JM, Saracco G, et al. The natural history of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease with advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis: an international collaborative study. Hepatology 2011;54:1208-1216.
84. Farrell GC, van Rooyen D, Gan L, Chitturi S. NASH is an inflammatory disorder: pathogenic, prognostic and therapeutic implications. Gut Liver 2012;6:149-171.
85. Murphy SK, Yang H, Moylan CA, Pang H, Dellinger A, Abdelmalek MF, et al. Relationship between methylome and transcriptome in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Gastroenterology 2013;145:1076-1087.
86. Chettouh H, Lequoy M, Fartoux L, Vigouroux C, Desbois-Mouthon C. Hyperinsulinaemia and insulin signalling in the pathogenesis and the clinical course of hepatocellular carcinoma. Liver Int 2015;35:2203-2217.
87. Jonatan D, Spence JR, Method AM, Kofron M, Sinagoga K, Haataja L, et al. Sox17 regulates insulin secretion in the normal and pathologic mouse β cell. PLoS One 2014;9:e104675.
88. Jia Y, Yang Y, Liu S, Herman JG, Lu F, Guo M. SOX17 antagonizes WNT/β-catenin signaling pathway in hepatocellular carcinoma. Epigenetics 2010;5:743-749.
89. Ackers I, Malgor R. Interrelationship of canonical and noncanonical Wnt signalling pathways in chronic metabolic diseases. Diab Vasc Dis Res 2018;15:3-13.
90. Wang S, Song K, Srivastava R, Dong C, Go GW, Li N, et al. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease induced by noncanonical Wnt and its rescue by Wnt3a. FASEB J 2015;29:3436-3445.
91. Kew MC. Synergistic interaction between aflatoxin B1 and hepatitis B virus in hepatocarcinogenesis. Liver Int 2003;23:405-409.
92. Devereux TR, Stern MC, Flake GP, Yu MC, Zhang ZQ, London SJ, et al. CTNNB1 mutations and beta-catenin protein accumulation in human hepatocellular carcinomas associated with high exposure to aflatoxin B1. Mol Carcinog 2001;31:68-73.
93. Yang JD, Hainaut P, Gores GJ, Amadou A, Plymoth A, Roberts LR. A global view of hepatocellular carcinoma: trends, risk, prevention and management. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2019;16:589-604.
94. Bengochea A, de Souza MM, Lefrançois L, Le Roux E, Galy O, Chemin I, et al. Common dysregulation of Wnt/frizzled receptor elements in human hepatocellular carcinoma. Br J Cancer 2008;99:143-150.
95. Boyault S, Rickman DS, de Reyniès A, Balabaud C, Rebouissou S, Jeannot E, et al. Transcriptome classification of HCC is related to gene alterations and to new therapeutic targets. Hepatology 2007;45:42-52.
96. Fodde R, Smits R, Clevers H. APC, signal transduction and genetic instability in colorectal cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 2001;1:55-67.
97. Khemlina G, Ikeda S, Kurzrock R. The biology of hepatocellular carcinoma: implications for genomic and immune therapies. Mol Cancer 2017;16:149.
98. Satoh S, Daigo Y, Furukawa Y, Kato T, Miwa N, Nishiwaki T, et al. AXIN1 mutations in hepatocellular carcinomas, and growth suppression in cancer cells by virus-mediated transfer of AXIN1. Nat Genet 2000;24:245-250.
99. Park JY, Park WS, Nam SW, Kim SY, Lee SH, Yoo NJ, et al. Mutations of beta-catenin and AXIN I genes are a late event in human hepatocellular carcinogenesis. Liver Int 2005;25:70-76.
100. Zhu M, Lu T, Jia Y, Luo X, Gopal P, Li L, et al. Somatic mutations increase hepatic clonal fitness and regeneration in chronic liver disease. Cell 2019;177:608-621.e12.
101. Marquardt JU, Seo D, Andersen JB, Gillen MC, Kim MS, Conner EA, et al. Sequential transcriptome analysis of human liver cancer indicates late stage acquisition of malignant traits. J Hepatol 2014;60:346-353.
102. Rebouissou S, Nault JC. Advances in molecular classification and precision oncology in hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol 2020;72:215-229.
103. Abitbol S, Dahmani R, Coulouarn C, Ragazzon B, Mlecnik B, Senni N, et al. AXIN deficiency in human and mouse hepatocytes induces hepatocellular carcinoma in the absence of β-catenin activation. J Hepatol 2018;68:1203-1213.
104. Lazaridis KN, Gores GJ. Cholangiocarcinoma. In: Boyer TD, Manns MP, Sanyal AJ, eds. Zakim and Boyer's Hepatology.

6th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders, 2012:1032-1044.
105. Boulter L, Guest RV, Kendall TJ, Wilson DH, Wojtacha D, Robson AJ, et al. WNT signaling drives cholangiocarcinoma growth and can be pharmacologically inhibited. J Clin Invest 2015;125:1269-1285.
106. Chen W, Liang J, Huang L, Cai J, Lei Y, Lai J, et al. Characterizing the activation of the Wnt signaling pathway in hilar cholangiocarcinoma using a tissue microarray approach. Eur J Histochem 2016;60:2536.
107. Banales JM, Marin JJG, Lamarca A, Rodrigues PM, Khan SA, Roberts LR, et al. Cholangiocarcinoma 2020: the next horizon in mechanisms and management. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2020;17:557-588.
108. Vaquero J, Guedj N, Clapéron A, Nguyen Ho-Bouldoires TH, Paradis V, Fouassier L. Epithelial-mesenchymal transition in cholangiocarcinoma: from clinical evidence to regulatory networks. J Hepatol 2017;66:424-441.
109. Nitta T, Mitsuhashi T, Hatanaka Y, Miyamoto M, Oba K, Tsuchikawa T, et al. Prognostic significance of epithelial-mesenchymal transition-related markers in extrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma: comprehensive immunohistochemical study using a tissue microarray. Br J Cancer 2014;111:1363-1372.
110. Chaw SY, Abdul Majeed A, Dalley AJ, Chan A, Stein S, Farah CS. Epithelial to mesenchymal transition (EMT) biomarkers--E-cadherin, beta-catenin, APC and vimentin--in oral squamous cell carcinogenesis and transformation. Oral Oncol 2012;48:997-1006.
111. Valenta T, Hausmann G, Basler K. The many faces and functions of β-catenin. EMBO J 2012;31:2714-2736.
112. Zhang GF, Qiu L, Yang SL, Wu JC, Liu TJ. Wnt/β-catenin signaling as an emerging potential key pharmacological target in cholangiocarcinoma. Biosci Rep 2020;40:BSR20193353.
113. Xue W, Dong B, Zhao Y, Wang Y, Yang C, Xie Y, et al. Upregulation of TTYH3 promotes epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition through Wnt/β-catenin signaling and inhibits apoptosis in cholangiocarcinoma. Cell Oncol (Dordr) 2021;44:1351-1361.
114. Carrillo-Reixach J, Torrens L, Simon-Coma M, Royo L, Domingo-Sàbat M, Abril-Fornaguera J, et al. Epigenetic footprint enables molecular risk stratification of hepatoblastoma with clinical implications. J Hepatol 2020;73:328-341.
115. Gupta K, Rane S, Das A, Marwaha RK, Menon P, Rao KL. Relationship of β-catenin and postchemotherapy histopathologic changes with overall survival in patients with hepatoblastoma. J Pediatr Hematol Oncol 2012;34:e320-e328.
116. Crippa S, Ancey PB, Vazquez J, Angelino P, Rougemont AL, Guettier C, et al. Mutant CTNNB1 and histological heterogeneity define metabolic subtypes of hepatoblastoma. EMBO Mol Med 2017;9:1589-1604.
117. López-Terrada D, Gunaratne PH, Adesina AM, Pulliam J, Hoang DM, Nguyen Y, et al. Histologic subtypes of hepatoblastoma are characterized by differential canonical Wnt and notch pathway activation in DLK+ precursors. Hum Pathol 2009;40:783-794.
118. Taniguchi K, Roberts LR, Aderca IN, Dong X, Qian C, Murphy LM, et al. Mutational spectrum of beta-catenin, AXIN1, and AXIN2 in hepatocellular carcinomas and hepatoblastomas. Oncogene 2002;21:4863-4871.
119. Shah K, Panchal S, Patel B. Porcupine inhibitors: novel and emerging anti-cancer therapeutics targeting the Wnt signaling pathway. Pharmacol Res 2021;167:105532.
120. Liu J, Pan S, Hsieh MH, Ng N, Sun F, Wang T, et al. Targeting Wnt-driven cancer through the inhibition of porcupine by LGK974. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2013;110:20224-20229.
121. Madan B, Ke Z, Harmston N, Ho SY, Frois AO, Alam J, et al. Wnt addiction of genetically defined cancers reversed by PORCN inhibition. Oncogene 2016;35:2197-2207.
122. Proffitt KD, Madan B, Ke Z, Pendharkar V, Ding L, Lee MA, et al. Pharmacological inhibition of the Wnt acyltransferase PORCN prevents growth of WNT-driven mammary cancer. Cancer Res 2013;73:502-507.
123. Wang W, Xu L, Liu P, Jairam K, Yin Y, Chen K, et al. Blocking Wnt secretion reduces growth of hepatocellular carcinoma cell lines mostly independent of β-catenin signaling. Neoplasia 2016;18:711-723.
124. Barrott JJ, Cash GM, Smith AP, Barrow JR, Murtaugh LC. Deletion of mouse porcn blocks Wnt ligand secretion and reveals an ectodermal etiology of human focal dermal hypoplasia/Goltz syndrome. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2011;108:12752-12757.
125. Liu W, Shaver TM, Balasa A, Ljungberg MC, Wang X, Wen S, et al. Deletion of porcn in mice leads to multiple developmental defects and models human focal dermal hypoplasia (Goltz syndrome). PLoS One 2012;7:e32331.
126. Funck-Brentano T, Nilsson KH, Brommage R, Henning P, Lerner UH, Koskela A, et al. Porcupine inhibitors impair trabecular and cortical bone mass and strength in mice. J Endocrinol 2018;238:13-23.
127. He X, Semenov M, Tamai K, Zeng X. LDL receptor-related proteins 5 and 6 in Wnt/beta-catenin signaling: arrows point

the way. Development 2004;131:1663-1677.
128. Wei W, Chua MS, Grepper S, So SK. Blockade of Wnt-1 signaling leads to anti-tumor effects in hepatocellular carcinoma cells. Mol Cancer 2009;8:76.
129. Cruciat CM, Niehrs C. Secreted and transmembrane wnt inhibitors and activators. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol 2013;5:a015081.
130. Niehrs C. Function and biological roles of the Dickkopf family of Wnt modulators. Oncogene 2006;25:7469-7481.
131. Kawazoe M, Kaneko K, Nanki T. Glucocorticoid therapy suppresses Wnt signaling by reducing the ratio of serum Wnt3a to Wnt inhibitors, sFRP-1 and Wif-1. Clin Rheumatol 2021;40:2947-2954.
132. Hu J, Dong A, Fernandez-Ruiz V, Shan J, Kawa M, Martínez-Ansó E, et al. Blockade of Wnt signaling inhibits angiogenesis and tumor growth in hepatocellular carcinoma. Cancer Res 2009;69:6951-6959.
133. Glinka A, Wu W, Delius H, Monaghan AP, Blumenstock C, Niehrs C. Dickkopf-1 is a member of a new family of secreted proteins and functions in head induction. Nature 1998;391:357-362.
134. Caneparo L, Huang YL, Staudt N, Tada M, Ahrendt R, Kazanskaya O, et al. Dickkopf-1 regulates gastrulation movements by coordinated modulation of Wnt/beta catenin and Wnt/PCP activities, through interaction with the Dally-like homolog Knypek. Genes Dev 2007;21:465-480.
135. Cha SW, Tadjuidje E, Tao Q, Wylie C, Heasman J. Wnt5a and Wnt11 interact in a maternal Dkk1-regulated fashion to activate both canonical and non-canonical signaling in Xenopus axis formation. Development 2008;135:3719-3729.
136. Nambotin SB, Lefrancois L, Sainsily X, Berthillon P, Kim M, Wands JR, et al. Pharmacological inhibition of frizzled-7 displays anti-tumor properties in hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol 2011;54:288-299.
137. Jimeno A, Gordon M, Chugh R, Messersmith W, Mendelson D, Dupont J, et al. A first-in-human phase I study of the anticancer stem cell agent ipafricept (OMP-54F28), a decoy receptor for wnt ligands, in patients with advanced solid tumors. Clin Cancer Res 2017;23:7490-7497.
138. Moore KN, Gunderson CC, Sabbatini P, McMeekin DS, Mantia-Smaldone G, Burger RA, et al. A phase 1b dose escalation study of ipafricept (OMP54F28) in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin in patients with recurrent platinum-sensitive ovarian cancer. Gynecol Oncol 2019;154:294-301.
139. Hoey T. Development of FZD8-Fc (OMP-54F28), a Wnt signaling antagonist that inhibits tumor growth and reduces tumor initiating cell frequency. AACR Annual Meeting; 2013; Washington DC, USA.
140. Wei W, Chua MS, Grepper S, So SK. Soluble frizzled-7 receptor inhibits Wnt signaling and sensitizes hepatocellular carcinoma cells towards doxorubicin. Mol Cancer 2011;10:16.
141. Fischer MM, Cancilla B, Yeung VP, Cattaruzza F, Chartier C, Murriel CL, et al. WNT antagonists exhibit unique combinatorial antitumor activity with taxanes by potentiating mitotic cell death. Sci Adv 2017;3:e1700090.
142. Gurney A, Axelrod F, Bond CJ, Cain J, Chartier C, Donigan L, et al. Wnt pathway inhibition via the targeting of frizzled receptors results in decreased growth and tumorigenicity of human tumors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2012;109:11717-11722.
143. Davis SL, Cardin DB, Shahda S, Lenz HJ, Dotan E, O'Neil BH, et al. A phase 1b dose escalation study of Wnt pathway inhibitor vantictumab in combination with nab-paclitaxel and gemcitabine in patients with previously untreated metastatic pancreatic cancer. Invest New Drugs 2020;38:821-830.
144. Smith DC, Rosen LS, Chugh R, Goldman J, Xu L, Kapoun AM, et al. First-in-human evaluation of the human monoclonal antibody vantictumab (OMP-18R5; antiFrizzled) targeting the WNT pathway in a phase I study for patients with advanced solid tumors. J Clin Oncol 2013;31(suppl):2540a.
145. Gupta PB, Onder TT, Jiang G, Tao K, Kuperwasser C, Weinberg RA, et al. Identification of selective inhibitors of cancer stem cells by high-throughput screening. Cell 2009;138:645-659.
146. Huczynski A. Salinomycin: a new cancer drug candidate. Chem Biol Drug Des 2012;79:235-238.
147. Lu D, Choi MY, Yu J, Castro JE, Kipps TJ, Carson DA. Salinomycin inhibits Wnt signaling and selectively induces apoptosis in chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2011;108:13253-13257.
148. Niwa AM, Semprebon SC, D'Epiro GFR, Marques LA, Zanetti TA, Mantovani MS. Salinomycin induces cell cycle arrest and apoptosis and modulates hepatic cytochrome P450 mRNA expression in HepG2/C3a cells. Toxicol Mech Methods 2022;32:341-351.
149. Liu Q, Sun J, Luo Q, Ju Y, Song G. Salinomycin suppresses tumorigenicity of liver cancer stem cells and Wnt/beta-catenin signaling. Curr Stem Cell Res Ther 2021;16:630-637.
150. Huang SM, Mishina YM, Liu S, Cheung A, Stegmeier F, Michaud GA, et al. Tankyrase inhibition stabilizes axin and antagonizes Wnt signalling. Nature 2009;461:614-620.
151. Clevers H. Wnt/beta-catenin signaling in development and

disease. Cell 2006;127:469-480.
152. Rubinfeld B, Albert I, Porfiri E, Fiol C, Munemitsu S, Polakis P. Binding of GSK3beta to the APC-beta-catenin complex and regulation of complex assembly. Science 1996;272:1023-1026.
153. Ma Y, Zhang P, Zhang Q, Wang X, Miao Q, Lyu X, et al. Dihydroartemisinin suppresses proliferation, migration, the Wnt/β-catenin pathway and EMT via TNKS in gastric cancer. Oncol Lett 2021;22:688.
154. Ma Z, Han C, Xia W, Wang S, Li X, Fang P, et al. circ5615 functions as a ceRNA to promote colorectal cancer progression by upregulating TNKS. Cell Death Dis 2020;11:356.
155. Ma L, Wang X, Jia T, Wei W, Chua MS, So S. Tankyrase inhibitors attenuate WNT/β-catenin signaling and inhibit growth of hepatocellular carcinoma cells. Oncotarget 2015;6:25390-25401.
156. Wu X, Luo F, Li J, Zhong X, Liu K. Tankyrase 1 inhibitior XAV939 increases chemosensitivity in colon cancer cell lines via inhibition of the Wnt signaling pathway. Int J Oncol 2016;48:1333-1340.
157. Huang J, Qu Q, Guo Y, Xiang Y, Feng D. Tankyrases/β-catenin signaling pathway as an anti-proliferation and anti-metastatic target in hepatocarcinoma cell lines. J Cancer 2020;11:432-440.
158. Ghany MG, Strader DB, Thomas DL, Seeff LB. Diagnosis, management, and treatment of hepatitis C: an update. Hepatology 2009;49:1335-1374.
159. Lee D, Chung YH, Kim JA, Park WH, Jin YJ, Shim JH, et al. Safety and efficacy of adjuvant pegylated interferon therapy for metastatic tumor antigen 1-positive hepatocellular carcinoma. Cancer 2013;119:2239-2246.
160. Thompson MD, Dar MJ, Monga SP. Pegylated interferon alpha targets Wnt signaling by inducing nuclear export of β-catenin. J Hepatol 2011;54:506-512.
161. Deng J, Hua L, Han T, Tian M, Wang D, Tang H, et al. The CREB-binding protein inhibitor ICG-001: a promising therapeutic strategy in sporadic meningioma with NF2 mutations. Neurooncol Adv 2020;2:vdz055.
162. Takahashi-Yanaga F, Kahn M. Targeting Wnt signaling: can we safely eradicate cancer stem cells? Clin Cancer Res 2010;16:3153-3162.
163. Delgado ER, Yang J, So J, Leimgruber S, Kahn M, Ishitani T, et al. Identification and characterization of a novel small-molecule inhibitor of β-catenin signaling. Am J Pathol 2014;184:2111-2122.
164. Wei W, Chua MS, Grepper S, So S. Small molecule antagonists of Tcf4/beta-catenin complex inhibit the growth of HCC cells in vitro and in vivo. Int J Cancer 2010;126:2426-2436.
165. Gedaly R, Galuppo R, Daily MF, Shah M, Maynard E, Chen C, et al. Targeting the Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway in liver cancer stem cells and hepatocellular carcinoma cell lines with FH535. PLoS One 2014;9:e99272.
166. Handeli S, Simon JA. A small-molecule inhibitor of Tcf/beta-catenin signaling down-regulates PPARgamma and PPARdelta activities. Mol Cancer Ther 2008;7:521-529.
167. Gwak J, Lee JH, Chung YH, Song GY, Oh S. Small molecule-based promotion of PKCα-mediated β-catenin degradation suppresses the proliferation of CRT-positive cancer cells. PLoS One 2012;7:e46697.
168. Chen X, Yang J, Evans PM, Liu C. Wnt signaling: the good and the bad. Acta Biochim Biophys Sin (Shanghai) 2008;40:577-594.
169. Chen D, Xie R, Shu B, Landay AL, Wei C, Reiser J, et al. Wnt signaling in bone, kidney, intestine, and adipose tissue and interorgan interaction in aging. Ann N Y Acad Sci 2019;1442:48-60.
170. Behari J. The Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway in liver biology and disease. Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2010;4:745-756.
171. Bowman EJ, Graham LA, Stevens TH, Bowman BJ. The bafilomycin/concanamycin binding site in subunit c of the v-ATPases from Neurospora crassa and Saccharomyces cerevisiae. J Biol Chem 2004;279:33131-33138.
172. Huss M, Ingenhorst G, König S, Gassel M, Dröse S, Zeeck A, et al. Concanamycin A, the specific inhibitor of v-ATPases, binds to the v(o) subunit c. J Biol Chem 2002;277:40544-40548.
173. Capurro M, Martin T, Shi W, Filmus J. Glypican-3 binds to frizzled and plays a direct role in the stimulation of canonical Wnt signaling. J Cell Sci 2014;127(Pt 7):1565-1575.
174. Guo M, Zhang H, Zheng J, Liu Y. Glypican-3: a new target for diagnosis and treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. J Cancer 2020;11:2008-2021.
175. Capurro MI, Xiang YY, Lobe C, Filmus J. Glypican-3 promotes the growth of hepatocellular carcinoma by stimulating canonical Wnt signaling. Cancer Res 2005;65:6245-6254.
176. Gao W, Kim H, Feng M, Phung Y, Xavier CP, Rubin JS, et al. Inactivation of Wnt signaling by a human antibody that recognizes the heparan sulfate chains of glypican-3 for liver cancer therapy. Hepatology 2014;60:576-587.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0095
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:51-64

Review

Development and prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with diabetes

Takuma Nakatsuka and Ryosuke Tateishi

Department of Gastroenterology, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Tokyo, Japan

The incidence of diabetes mellitus and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) has been increasing worldwide during the last few decades, in the context of an increasing prevalence of obesity and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). Epidemiologic studies have revealed that patients with diabetes have a 2- to 3-fold increased risk of developing HCC, independent of the severity and cause of the underlying liver disease. A bidirectional relationship exists between diabetes and liver disease: advanced liver disease promotes the onset of diabetes, and HCC is an important cause of death in patients with diabetes; conversely, diabetes is a risk factor for liver fibrosis progression and HCC development, and may worsen the long-term prognosis of patients with HCC. The existence of close interconnections among diabetes, obesity, and NAFLD causes insulin resistance-related hyperinsulinemia, increased oxidative stress, and chronic inflammation, which are assumed to be the underlying causes of hepatocarcinogenesis in patients with diabetes. No appropriate surveillance methods for HCC development in patients with diabetes have been established, and liver diseases, including HCC, are often overlooked as complications of diabetes. Although some antidiabetic drugs are expected to prevent HCC development, further research on the optimal use of antidiabetic drugs aimed at hepatoprotection is warranted. Given the increasing medical and socioeconomic impact of diabetes on HCC development, diabetologists and hepatologists need to work together to develop strategies to address this emerging health issue. This article reviews the current knowledge on the impact of diabetes on the development and progression of HCC. **(Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:51-64)**

Keywords: Hepatocellular carcinoma; Diabetes mellitus; Insulin resistance; Hyperinsulinemia; Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease

INTRODUCTION

The incidence and mortality of liver cancer have been continuously increasing during the last decades.[1] Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), the most common form of primary liver cancer, develops in the context of chronic liver disease in 70–90% of the cases. The main causes of the underlying liver diseases are persistent infection with hepatitis B virus (HBV) or hepatitis C virus (HCV) and alcohol abuse.[2,3] However, in recent years, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) and its more active form, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH), have emerged as new risk factors for HCC and are replacing viral- and alcohol-related liver diseases as major pathogenic promoters, particularly in developed countries.[4] NAFLD is a hepatic manifestation of metabolic syndrome, which is strongly associated with overweight or obesity, hypertension, dyslipidemia, and diabetes mellitus.

Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) is a disease characterized

Corresponding author : Ryosuke Tateishi
Department of Gastroenterology, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, 7-3-1 Hongo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 113-8655, Japan
Tel: +81-3-3815-5411, Fax: +81-3-3814-0021, E-mail: ryo.tate@gmail.com
https://orcid.org/0000-0003-3021-2517

Editor: Byoung Kuk Jang, Keimyung University School of Medicine, Korea

Received : Apr. 8, 2022 / **Revised :** Jun. 20, 2022 / **Accepted :** Jul. 3, 2022

by hyperglycemia, hyperinsulinemia, and insulin resistance, with a tremendous impact on human health worldwide. Epidemiologic evidence suggests that patients with diabetes have an increased risk of many kinds of cancer, including breast, pancreatic, lung, colorectal, and kidney cancers.[5,6] In particular, an important relationship between the presence of diabetes and a higher incidence of HCC has been confirmed.[7] This relationship occurs in association with obesity, impaired insulin sensitivity, and NAFLD, which are well-established risk factors for HCC development.[8] Independent of the presence of cirrhosis or the cause of the underlying liver disease, patients with diabetes have a 2- to 3-fold higher risk of developing HCC than individuals without diabetes.[9-17] A longer duration of diabetes may also be associated with an incremental increase in the risk of HCC,[18-20] and diabetes is an independent risk factor associated with reduced overall survival and disease-free survival in patients with HCC.[14,21,22] In addition, the proportion of diabetes among patients with HCC of nonviral etiology has continued to increase considerably during the last two decades.[23] Given the rapid increase in the global incidence of HCC and diabetes, hepatologists and diabetologists must recognize the strong link between the two diseases and appropriately manage diabetes to prevent the development of liver diseases and reduce the risk of HCC.

This review article summarizes the current knowledge on the impact of diabetes on the development and progression of HCC from an epidemiologic and pathophysiologic perspective. In addition, the relationship between diabetes medications and the risk of HCC development is also discussed.

IMPACT OF DIABETES ON LIVER DISEASE PROGRESSION

There is a known close relationship between chronic liver disease and diabetes. In a recent meta-analysis involving 58 studies with 9,705 patients with cirrhosis, the overall prevalence of diabetes was 31%, with the highest prevalence in patients with NAFLD (56%), followed by patients with cryptogenic liver disease (51%), HCV infection (32%), and alcoholic liver disease (27%).[24] Given that the liver plays a pivotal role in energy homeostasis and glucose metabolism, the close link between liver disease and diabetes is convincing.

The most common chronic liver disease observed in patients with diabetes is NAFLD.[25] As a metabolic syndrome component, T2DM can promote NAFLD. According to a recent meta-analysis involving 80 studies from 20 countries, conducted by Younossi et al.,[26] the global prevalence of NAFLD and NASH among patients with T2DM was 55.5% (95% confidence interval [CI], 47.3–63.7%) and 37.3% (95% CI, 24.7–50.0%), respectively. Given that the overall global prevalence of NAFLD was reported to be approximately 25%,[27] diabetes is clearly associated with the incidence and progression of NAFLD. The presence of insulin resistance and diabetes is considered a risk factor for more severe liver disease in NAFLD, even in patients with normal serum levels of alanine aminotransferase (ALT).[28] Meanwhile, NAFLD itself is associated with a 2- to 5-fold increased risk of diabetes development after correcting for various lifestyle and metabolic confounders.[29]

Diabetes is a risk factor for the development and progression of liver fibrosis, and a strong relationship exists between insulin resistance and liver fibrosis progression.[30] Several large cohort studies have shown that diabetes is associated with a 2- to 2.5-fold increased risk of cirrhosis, mainly due to NAFLD, independent of other metabolic syndrome components.[19,31,32] In contrast, glucose metabolism is altered in patients with advanced cirrhosis. Once cirrhosis is established, hyperglycemia may develop in up to 20% of patients within 5 years.[33] Furthermore, up to 80% of patients with cirrhosis may have insulin resistance, and between 20% and 60% will develop diabetes.[34] In patients with cirrhosis, hepatic insulin uptake and clearance are reduced owing to decreased liver cell mass and portosystemic venous collaterals, leading to impaired glucose tolerance and hyperinsulinemia.[25] In summary, diabetes and chronic liver disease, particularly NAFLD, can affect each other synergistically, causing the other condi-

Abbreviations:

ALT, alanine aminotransferase; AST, aspartate aminotransferase; AUROC, area under the receiver operating characteristic curve; CI, confidence interval; DDP-4, dipeptidyl peptidase-4; FIB-4, fibrosis-4; GLP-1, glucagon-like peptide-1; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; HCV, hepatitis C virus; HR, hazard ratio; IGF, insulin-like growth factor; IL-6, interleukin-6; NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; NASH, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis; OR, odds ratio; PI3K, phosphoinositide-3-kinase; RR, relative risk; SGLT2, sodium-glucose cotransporter 2; T2DM, type 2 diabetes mellitus; TNF, tumor necrosis factor

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0095

tion to worsen.

EPIDEMIOLOGIC STUDIES ON THE DEVELOPMENT OF HCC IN PATIENTS WITH DIABETES

Diabetes and cancer risk

The global prevalence of T2DM in 2019 was estimated to be approximately 9.3%, and the incidence is expected to continue to increase.[35] In parallel, the total number of deaths attributable to cancer is estimated to increase over time.[1] As there is strong evidence of a gradual increase in cancer risk and mortality with increasing incidence of diabetes,[36] diabetes is considered a risk factor for the development of various cancers. In an umbrella review of the evidence across meta-analyses of observational studies on the association of diabetes with the risk of cancer development, the relative risk (RR) of HCC was 2.31 (95% CI, 1.87–2.84), the highest of the 20 cancer types.[37] Prediabetes, including impaired fasting glucose and impaired glucose tolerance, is also associated with an increased risk of cancer. A meta-analysis of 16 prospective cohort studies with 891,426 participants revealed that prediabetes was associated with an increased overall cancer risk (RR, 1.15; 95% CI, 1.06–1.23), with a particularly high risk of HCC (RR, 2.01; 95% CI, 1.45–2.79).[38] These findings suggest that diabetes, and even prediabetic hyperinsulinemia or hyperglycemia, may be strongly associated with the development of HCC.

Diabetes and HCC risk

The link between diabetes and HCC was first reported approximately 40 years ago. Lawson et al.[39] observed a 4-fold excess of patients with diabetes among patients with HCC, in a case-control study involving 105 patients with HCC and equal numbers of age- and sex-matched controls. Subsequently, to date, various case-control, prospective cohort, and meta-analysis studies have shown a positive association between diabetes and an increased risk of HCC.[11-14,17,19,20,40-54] The principal observational and meta-analysis studies examining the association between diabetes and the risk of HCC are listed in Table 1. For example, El-Serag et al.[12] demonstrated that diabetes was significantly associated with the risk of incident HCC (hazard ratio [HR], 2.5; 95% CI, 1.9–3.2) in a meta-analysis of 13 cohort studies. The results were relatively consistent in different populations, different geographic locations, and a variety of control groups, and the association between HCC and diabetes was independent of alcohol use or viral hepatitis. In a meta-analysis of 25 cohort studies, Wang et al.[13] showed that diabetes was associated with an increased incidence of HCC (summary RR, 2.01; 95% CI, 1.61–2.51) compared with the absence of diabetes, and the association was independent of geographic location, alcohol consumption, history of cirrhosis, and HBV or HCV infection. In another meta-analysis involving 17 case-control studies and 32 cohort studies, Wang et al.[51] confirmed that the combined risk estimate of all studies showed a statistically significant increased risk of HCC among individuals with diabetes (RR, 2.31; 95% CI, 1.87–2.84), independent of several confounding factors and metabolic variables. Furthermore, Chen et al.[52] conducted a meta-analysis of 21 cohort studies and identified a total of 2,528 HCC cases in 35,202 participants. The summary RR of HCC with diabetes was 1.86 (95% CI, 1.49–2.31) in patients with chronic liver disease and 1.93 (95% CI, 1.35–2.76) in patients with cirrhosis, and subgroup analyses indicated that the positive associations were independent of geographic location, follow-up duration, and confounding factors such as smoking, alcohol use, and body mass index. In a recent large population-based cohort study including 50,284 men and 120,826 women enrolled in 1986 and followed up through 2012, Simon et al.[20] documented that diabetes was associated with an increased risk of HCC (HR, 4.59; 95% CI, 2.98–7.07), as was an increasing diabetes duration. Compared with individuals without diabetes, the multivariable HR for HCC was 2.96 (95% CI, 1.57–5.60) in those with a diabetes duration of <2 years, 6.08 (95% CI, 2.96–12.50) in those with a diabetes duration of <10 years, and 7.52 (95% CI, 3.88–14.58) in those with a diabetes duration of ≥10 years. These vast epidemiologic findings strongly suggest that diabetes has a considerable impact on the risk of HCC development, independent of various confounding factors.

Diabetes has a significant impact on hepatocarcinogenesis, particularly in patients with NAFLD. In a recent retrospective cohort study in patients with NAFLD diagnosed at 130 facilities of the Veterans Administration, Kanwal et al.[53] reported that 253 of the 271,906 patients developed HCC during a mean follow-up period of 9 years, and diabetes conferred the highest risk of progression to HCC among the metabolic fac-

Table 1. Principal observational studies and meta-analysis on the association between type 2 diabetes mellitus and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma

Study	Country	Description of the study	Subjects	Association
Davila et al.[11] (2005)	USA	Population-based case-control study	2,061 HCC cases and 6,183 controls	AOR, 2.87 (95% CI, 2.49–3.30)
Adami et al.[40] (1996)	Sweden	Hospital-based cohort study	153,852 with DM	SIR, 4.1 (95% CI, 3.8–4.5)
Wideroff et al.[41] (1997)	Denmark	Population-based cohort study	109,581 with DM	SIR, 4.0 (95% CI, 3.5–4.6)
Coughlin et al.[42] (2004)	USA	Population-based cohort study	467,922 men and 588,321 women without history of cancer	RR, 2.19 (95% CI, 1.76–2.72) for male
Johnson et al.[43] (2011)	Canada	Population-based cohort study	185,100 with DM and 185,100 without DM	HR, 2.53 (95% CI, 1.93–3.31)
Lai et al.[44] (2012)	Taiwan	Population-based cohort study	19,349 with DM and 77,396 without DM	HR, 1.73 (95% CI, 1.47–2.03)
Schlesinger et al.[45] (2013)	European countries	Population-based cohort study	363,426 participants without cancer	RR, 2.17 (95% CI, 1.36–3.47)
Koh et al.[46] (2013)	Shingapole	Population-based cohort study	63,257 middle-aged and older individuals	HR, 2.14 (95% CI, 1.69–2.71)
Setiawan et al.[47] (2014)	USA	Population-based cohort study	168,679 multiethnic individuals	RR, 2.62 (95% CI, 2.13–3.23)
Simon et al.[20] (2018)	USA	Population-based cohort study	50,284 men and 120,826 women	HR, 4.59 (95% CI, 2.98–7.07)
El-Serag et al.[19] (2004)	USA	Prospective cohort study	173,643 with DM and 650,620 without DM	HR, 2.16 (95% CI, 1.86–2.52)
Inoue et al.[48] (2006)	Japan	Prospective cohort study	97,771 individuals	HR, 2.24 (95% CI, 1.64–3.04) for male; HR, 1.94 (95% CI, 1.00–3.73) for female
Lai et al.[49] (2006)	Taiwan	Prospective cohort study	5,732 with DM and 49,184 without DM	HR, 1.84 (95% CI, 1.10–3.07)
Atchison et al.[50] (2011)	USA	Prospective cohort study	594,815 men with DM and 3,906,763 men without DM	RR, 1.95 (95% CI, 1.82–2.09)
El-Serag et al.[12] (2006)	-	Meta-analysis	13 case-control studies and 13 cohort studies	HR, 2.5 (95% CI. 1.9–3.2)
Yang et al.[14] (2011)	-	Meta-analysis	28 prospective studies	RR, 1.87 (95% CI, 1.15–2.27)
Wang et al.[13] (2012)	-	Meta-analysis	25 cohort studies	SRRs, 2.01 (95% CI, 1.61–2.51)
Wang et al.[51] (2012)	-	Meta-analysis	49 studies (32 cohorts and 17 case-controls)	RR, 2.31 (95% CI, 1.87–2.84)
Chen et al.[52] (2015)	-	Meta-analysis	21 cohort studies	SRRs, 1.86 (95% CI, 1.49–2.31)
Kanwal et al.[53] (2020)	US	Retrospective cohort study (NAFLD)	271,906 with NAFLD	HR, 2.77 (95% CI, 2.03–3.77)
Tan et al.[54] (2019)	-	Meta-analysis (HBV)	7 studies (5 cohorts and 2 case-controls)	HR, 1.77 (95% CI, 1.28–2.47)
Dyal et al.[17] (2016)	-	Meta-analysis (HCV)	9 studies (7 cohorts and 2 case-controls)	HR, 1.73 (95% CI, 1.30–2.30)

HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; AOR adjusted odds ratio; CI, confidence interval; DM, diabetes mellitus; SIR, standardized incidence ratios; RR, relative risk; HR, hazard ratio; SRRs, summary relative risks; NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCV, hepatitis C virus.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0095

tors (HR, 2.77; 95% CI, 2.03–3.77). On the other hand, diabetes also plays an important role in HCC associated with viral hepatitis. In a meta-analysis of five cohort studies and two case–control studies in patients with HBV, Tan et al.[54] demonstrated that the diabetes cohort had a higher incidence of HCC (pooled HR, 1.77; 95% CI, 1.28–2.47) than individuals without diabetes. In a meta-analysis of nine studies (seven cohort studies and two case-control studies) in patients with HCV, Dyal et al.[55] found that diabetes was closely associated with an increased risk of HCC (HR, 1.73; 95% CI, 1.30–2.30), independent of age, sex, obesity, hypertension, smoking, alcohol intake, serum liver enzyme levels, albumin, lipids, platelet count, and presence of cirrhosis or hepatic steatosis. Furthermore, Arase et al.[56] documented that diabetes caused a 1.73-fold increase in the HCC risk even after the termination of interferon therapy, in a retrospective cohort study involving 4,302 patients with HCV treated with interferon. In addition, in a recent meta-analysis involving 30 cohort studies, Váncsa et al.[15] demonstrated that diabetes was a significant risk factor for HCC in patients with HCV treated with direct-acting antivirals (adjusted HR, 1.31; 95% CI, 1.06–1.62). These findings indicate that diabetes is an independent risk factor for viral hepatitis-related HCC, even after viral elimination.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGIC MECHANISMS LINKING DIABETES WITH HCC RISK

Although the detailed mechanisms of carcinogenesis in patients with diabetes remain unclear, insulin resistance-related hyperinsulinemia and DNA damage due to increased oxidative stress are assumed to be the main causes.[57] Persistent hyperinsulinemia increases the production of insulin-like growth factor (IGF)-binding proteins, which, in turn, increase the bioavailability of IGF-1 produced by the liver. Elevated blood insulin and IGF-1 levels activate phosphoinositide-3-kinase (PI3K)/AKT/mammalian target of rapamycin signaling, a key pathway involved in fatty liver-related carcinogenesis,[58,59] which promotes hepatic cell proliferation and inhibits apoptosis.[60] Furthermore, hyperglycemia increases oxidative stress production through excess glucose oxidation in mitochondria. Many patients with diabetes have metabolic factors (e.g., obesity or dyslipidemia) and develop fatty liver, in which fatty acid oxidation facilitates the generation of reactive oxygen species and increases oxidative stress production. Oxidative stress is a known cause of vascular damage in diabetes and also induces genetic mutations through oxidative DNA damage, leading to carcinogenesis.[57] Furthermore, liver fat accumulation induces chronic inflammation and increases the production of inflammatory cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α, interleukin-6 (IL-6), and nuclear factor-κB, which may be involved in hepatocarcinogenesis.[61] In addition, alterations in the gut microbiota in patients with obesity and diabetes have also been implicated in NASH development and hepatocarcinogenesis.[62] Thus, a complex combination of direct and indirect mechanisms is postulated to promote hepatocarcinogenesis in patients with diabetes. The putative pathophysiologic mechanisms that may link diabetes and HCC are schematically summarized in Figure 1.

Obesity, diabetes, and metabolic syndrome may accelerate the progression of liver disease in patients with viral hepatitis as well as NAFLD. Diabetes and hepatitis virus infection synergistically induce the development of HCC. HCV infection itself is known to be associated with insulin resistance, which contributes to the progression of underlying liver fibrosis and the development of HCC by accelerating necroinflammation and oxidative stress in the liver.[27] Mechanistically, the core protein of the virus promotes insulin resistance by inducing the degradation of insulin receptor substrate-1.[63] In addition, HCV proteins directly associate with mitochondria and endoplasmic reticulum, promoting oxidative stress.[64] On the other hand, the link between HBV and metabolic syndrome or insulin resistance remains inconclusive; HBV infection itself appears to protect against steatosis, metabolic syndrome, and insulin resistance.[65]

INFLUENCE OF DIABETES ON HCC PROGNOSIS

Impact of HCC as a cause of death in patients with diabetes

Diabetes is an important risk factor for HCC development, whereas HCC is an important cause of death in patients with diabetes. In an analysis of individual-participant data on 123,205 deaths among 820,900 people in 97 prospective studies, the risk of HCC mortality was 2.16 times higher in patients with diabetes (95% CI, 1.62–2.88) than in those without diabetes, and the mortality risk from HCC of patients with diabetes was higher than that from all other cancers.[66] In addi-

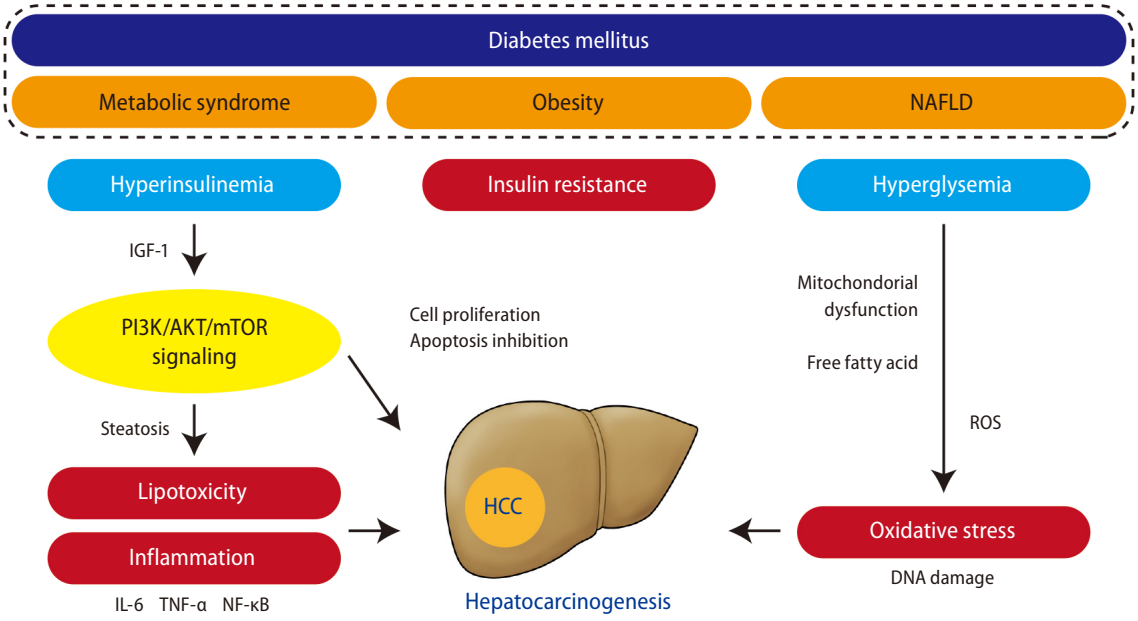


Figure 1. Putative key pathogenic factors that may link diabetes to HCC development. Metabolic syndrome, obesity, and NAFLD are strongly associated with diabetes. These factors induce insulin resistance-related hyperinsulinemia, leading to increased IGF-1, which promotes hepatocyte proliferation and inhibits apoptosis via activation of PI3K/AKT/mTOR signaling, key pathway involved in diabetes and obesity-related hepatocarcinogenesis. Activation of PI3K signaling promotes lipogenesis, which acts on hepatocarcinogenesis directly via lipotoxicity and indirectly via the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as TNF-α, IL-6, and NF-κB. Hyperglycemia and liver fat accumulation induce mitochondria dysfunction and free fatty acid release, which promotes ROS generation and leads to oxidative stress production. NAFLD, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; IGF, insulin-like growth factor; PI3K, phosphoinositide-3-kinase; mTOR, mammalian target of rapamycin; IL-6, interleukin-6; TNF, tumor necrosis factor; NF-κB, nuclear factor-κB; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; ROS, reactive oxygen species.

tion, Nakamura et al.[67] investigated the principal causes of death among 45,708 patients with diabetes who died in 241 hospitals throughout Japan during 2001–2010 and found that the most frequent cause of death was malignant neoplasms (38.3%), with liver cancer (6.0%) being the second leading cause of cancer death after lung cancer (7.0%). Therefore, HCC should be recognized as both an important cause of death and an important comorbidity that cannot be overlooked in patients with diabetes.

Impact of diabetes on the prognosis of patients with HCC

Various studies have been published on the impact of diabetes on the prognosis of patients with HCC, most of which state that diabetes itself worsens the prognosis of HCC. In a nationwide prospective study including 512,869 adults from 10 regions in China, Bragg et al.[68] documented that the presence of diabetes was associated with increased mortality from liver cancer (RR, 1.54; 95% CI, 1.28–1.86). In a meta-analysis of six studies reporting the risk of HCC-specific mortality, Yang et al.[14] indicated that preexisting diabetes was significantly associated with HCC-specific mortality (RR, 1.88; 95% CI, 1.39–2.55) and even all-cause death (RR, 1.38; 95% CI, 1.13–1.48), compared with the absence of diabetes. In another meta-analysis, diabetes was positively associated with HCC mortality (summary RR, 1.56; 95% CI, 1.30–1.87).[13] In addition, a meta-analysis of seven cohort studies found a statistically significant increased risk of HCC mortality (RR, 2.43; 95% CI, 1.66–3.55) in individuals with diabetes.[51] In another meta-analysis involving 20 studies with a total of 9,727 patients with HCC, Wang et al.[21] demonstrated that diabetes was associated with poor overall survival (adjusted HR, 1.55; 95% CI, 1.27–1.91). They also revealed that diabetes was associated with poor overall survival even in patients with HCC who have undergone curative therapy, including hepatic resection or nonsurgical treatment such as radiofrequency ablation. In addition, Liu et al.[69] demonstrated that diabetes was an independent risk factor for time to progression (HR, 1.29; 95% CI, 1.04–1.60) and cancer-specific mortality (HR, 1.24;

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0095

95% CI, 1.02–1.52) in 1,052 patients with intermediate-stage HCC who underwent transarterial chemoembolization.

However, some reports claim that the impact of diabetes on the prognosis of HCC varies depending on the clinical setting. In a meta-analysis involving 10 studies, Wang et al.[22] investigated the prognostic role of diabetes with HCC after curative treatments and demonstrated that the coexistence of diabetes impaired overall survival in patients with HCC with a tumor diameter of ≤5 cm (HR, 1.63; 95% CI, 1.25–2.12), but not in those with a tumor diameter of >5 cm (HR, 0.67; 95% CI, 0.39–1.15). Ho et al.[70] analyzed the prospective dataset of 3,573 patients with HCC and revealed that diabetes was not an independent prognostic predictor in all patients but was associated with decreased survival in patients within the Milan criteria (HR, 1.36; 95% CI, 1.155–1.601) and in those with a performance status of 0 (HR, 1.213; 95% CI, 1.055–1.394).

These data suggest that diabetes worsens long-term prognosis, at least in patients with early and treatable HCC, probably owing to decreased residual liver function due to diabetes after curative treatment. Presumably, tumor factors may be more prognostic in advanced liver cancer. As non-viral HCC tends to be diagnosed at an advanced stage,[71] the poor prognosis of DM-related HCC may be partly due to the lower chance of undergoing curative therapy. With recent advances in pharmacotherapy for advanced liver cancer,[72] future investigations are needed to determine how diabetes affects patients with HCC who are receiving systemic treatment.

HCC SURVEILLANCE IN PATIENTS WITH DIABETES

The current regional guidelines recommend HCC surveillance only in patients with cirrhosis.[73-75] However, up to 50% of cases of NAFLD-driven HCC, which is closely associated with metabolic syndrome including diabetes, occur in patients without cirrhosis, possibly owing to its unique nature of arising from lipotoxicity-mediated chronic inflammation.[4] Some reports suggest that an annual incidence of 1.5–2.0% would guarantee the cost-effectiveness of HCC surveillance. As mentioned above, diabetes may increase the risk of HCC by approximately 2- to 3-fold; however, this is much lower than the 24-fold increased risk caused by HBV or HCV.[74] In addition, the annual incidence of HCC in patients with diabetes is estimated to be <0.1%,[19] which is far below the threshold for efficient surveillance. Therefore, establishing strategies for efficient HCC surveillance in patients with diabetes has been challenging. As nonviral HCC tends to be diagnosed at an advanced stage[76] and diabetes is a factor associated with HCC detection over the Milan criteria,[77] there is an urgent need for a method for detecting HCC while the disease is in a treatable state in patients with diabetes.

To date, several HCC risk prediction models have been reported. Si et al.[78] established the Korean DM-HCC risk score using data from 3,544 patients with diabetes without viral hepatitis or alcoholic liver disease. In their study, three parameters (age >65 years, low triglyceride levels, and high gamma-glutamyl transferase levels) were independently associated with an increased risk of HCC, and the weighted sum of the scores from these three parameters predicted the 10-year incidence of HCC with an area under the receiver operating characteristic curve (AUROC) of 0.86. Li et al.[79] developed an HCC risk scoring system considering age, sex, smoking, hemoglobin A1c level, ALT level, presence of cirrhosis or viral hepatitis, antidiabetic or antihyperlipidemic medications, and total/high-density lipoprotein cholesterol ratio, using the Taiwan National Diabetes Care Management Program database including 31,723 Chinese patients with T2DM. The AUROC for the 3-, 5-, and 10-year HCC risk was 0.81, 0.80, and 0.77, respectively. These two models were based on the Cox proportional hazard model. Meanwhile, Rau et al.[80] developed an artificial neural network model for predicting HCC occurrence within 6 years of diabetes diagnosis by considering age, sex, hyperlipidemia, and chronic liver diseases, with an AUROC of 0.873. They analyzed 515 patients with diabetes who developed HCC after the diabetes diagnosis and compared them with matched 1,545 controls from the National Health Insurance Research Database of Taiwan.

Because liver fibrosis is the most important predictor of HCC development in patients with chronic liver disease, noninvasive fibrosis markers are a potential tool for risk stratification of HCC. Grecian et al.[81] tested the ability of individual fibrosis scores, including the enhanced liver fibrosis test, aspartate aminotransferase (AST)-to-platelet ratio index, AST-to-ALT ratio, NAFLD fibrosis score, and fibrosis-4 (FIB-4) index, to predict 11-year incident cirrhosis/HCC in a community cohort of 1,066 people with T2DM aged 60–75 years. All scores were significantly associated with incident liver-related events; however, they showed poor ability as a risk stratification tool, with low positive predictive values (5–46%) and

high false-negative and false-positive rates (up to 60% and 77%, respectively). Recently, we investigated the best criteria for identifying candidates for HCC surveillance among patients with diabetes.[82] The study included 239 patients with T2DM and nonviral HCC with >5 years of follow-up at diabetes clinics in 81 hospitals in Japan before the HCC diagnosis and 3,277 patients with T2DM without HCC from a prospective cohort study as controls. Multivariate logistic regression analyses showed that the FIB-4 index was an outstanding predictor of HCC development, with an AUROC of 0.811 for predicting the 5-year HCC incidence. Furthermore, an FIB-4 cutoff value of 3.61 helped identify high-risk patients, with a corresponding annual HCC incidence rate of 1.1%. These findings suggest the importance of setting appropriate cutoff values to identify high-risk cases and the utility of the simple calculation of the FIB-4 index as the first step toward HCC surveillance in patients with diabetes. A prospective study is warranted to validate the efficacy of an FIB-4-based surveillance strategy.

MEDICATIONS FOR DIABETES MELLITUS AND HCC RISK

As previously described, diabetes has been epidemiologically proven to increase the risk of HCC development; however, whether appropriate glycemic control can prevent HCC development is controversial. Recently, Luo et al.[83] found that a higher dietary diabetes risk reduction score, reflecting better adherence to a dietary therapy for T2DM prevention, was independently associated with a significantly lower risk of HCC among 137,608 USA participants after adjusting for major known risk factors for HCC, indicating that diabetes prevention may lead to a reduced risk of HCC development. Similarly, increasing evidence has suggested the potential hepatoprotective effects of some antidiabetic drugs.[84,85]

Metformin is a biguanide compound that improves insulin resistance by targeting the enzyme adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase, which induces the muscle uptake of glucose from the blood. In 2005, it was first reported that the use of metformin in patients with T2DM may reduce their risk of cancer.[86] Since then, numerous studies have been conducted on the preventive effect of metformin on the development of various cancers, including HCC.[87-95] Singh et al.[90] conducted a meta-analysis involving 10 studies with 22,650 cases of HCC in 334,307 patients with T2DM and showed an overall 50% reduced risk of incident HCC among metformin-treated patients (adjusted odds ratio [OR], 0.50; 95% CI, 0.34–0.73). Importantly, the protective effect of metformin remained significant after adjusting for the effect of other antidiabetic medications. Furthermore, a recent meta-analysis by Li et al.[92] showed that metformin use was significantly associated with a decreased risk of HCC in patients with T2DM (OR, 0.59; 95% CI, 0.51–0.68) and even with a decreased all-cause mortality in patients with diabetes and HCC (HR, 0.74; 95% CI, 0.66–0.83). In another meta-analysis, Zhou et al.[95] also documented that metformin significantly prolonged the survival of patients with HCC and T2DM even after the curative treatment of HCC. Considering these results, metformin use may reduce the risk of HCC development by approximately 50%. However, in these studies, metformin was not administered for the prevention of HCC but for the treatment of diabetes, leading to various biases. Home et al.[87] and Ma et al.[91] reported that two randomized controlled trials in their meta-analysis did not show a protective effect of metformin against HCC development. Singh et al.[90] also conducted a *post hoc* analysis of randomized controlled trials, and their results did not reveal any significant association between antidiabetic medication use and the risk of HCC. Thus, further validation based on evidence from randomized clinical trials is warranted.

Insulin is a potent mitogen associated with the upregulation of various growth factors that stimulate several signaling pathways related to cell proliferation and apoptosis inhibition.[84] Epidemiologic evidence indicates that the insulin secretion rate influences cancer risk or prognosis, and patients with diabetes treated with insulin have a higher risk of HCC.[60] Singh et al.[90] found in their meta-analysis that insulin use was associated with an increased risk of HCC (OR, 2.61; 95% CI, 1.46–4.65). Schlesinger et al.[45] conducted a prospective analysis involving 363,426 patients with diabetes and demonstrated that treatment with insulin conferred the highest risk of HCC (RR, 5.25, 95% CI, 2.93–9.44), whereas no association was observed in participants without insulin treatment. Likewise, in a large population-based study from Italy conducted by Bosetti et al.,[96] an increased risk of HCC was found with insulin use (OR, 3.73; 95% CI, 2.52–5.51), with a higher risk associated with a longer treatment duration. Although further validation is needed to clarify the true relationship between insulin use and hepatocarcinogenesis, epidemiologic and bi-

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0095

ological evidence suggests that insulin may have some hepatocarcinogenic effect.

The evidence for other classes of antidiabetic medications is limited and often inconsistent. Thiazolidinediones induce insulin sensitization and enhance glucose metabolism by activating peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma. In a randomized controlled trial, pioglitazone, a thiazolidinedione, has been shown to improve the pathogenesis of NASH, a common complication of diabetes.[97] However, according to several recent meta-analyses, the potential impact of thiazolidinediones on the development of HCC remains controversial.[90,98] Similar to insulin, sulfonylureas (oral insulin secretagogues) are associated with an increased risk of cancer, including HCC. Although sulfonylureas are known to potentially increase the risk of HCC, different drug generations have shown inconsistent results.[96,99,100] In a large cohort study including 108,920 Taiwanese patients with newly diagnosed T2DM, Chang et al.[101] observed a significantly increased risk of HCC in users of first- and second-generation sulfonylureas (adjusted OR, 1.40; 95% CI, 1.19–1.66), but no increased risk of HCC in users of the third-generation drug glimepiride. Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4) inhibitors work by increasing the circulating levels of incretins, such as glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) and glucose-dependent insulinotropic polypeptide, leading to the enhancement of insulin secretion and inhibition of glucagon secretion. Although experimental data indicate that DPP-4 inhibitors may reduce the risk of HCC development,[102] clinical evidence on the relationship between DPP-4 inhibitors and HCC development remains scarce. GLP-1 receptor agonists such as liraglutide and semaglutide have been reported to reduce body weight and improve hepatic histology in NASH.[103,104] However, no clinical evidence exists on whether GLP-1 receptor agonists can prevent the occurrence of HCC. A new class of oral hypoglycemic agents, sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors, can attenuate glucose reabsorption in the proximal tubule, leading to plasma glucose reduction. SGLT2 inhibitors have been reported to reduce hepatic fat content in patients with NAFLD;[105] however, there are no clinical data on whether they have a protective effect against hepatocarcinogenesis in patients with diabetes.

CONCLUSIONS

Diabetes mellitus, a disease characterized by hyperglycemia, hyperinsulinemia, and insulin resistance, has attracted large attention for its systemic complications. Although liver diseases, including NAFLD, NASH, cirrhosis, and HCC, are important complications of diabetes, they are often overlooked. To date, extensive epidemiologic and preclinical evidence has supported a robust association between diabetes and liver diseases, including HCC. In addition, a bidirectional relationship exists in that advanced liver disease may induce the onset of diabetes and diabetes is a recognized risk factor for the development and progression of liver disease and HCC. The association between these two diseases is complex, and further research is needed to clarify the causal relationship. Mechanistically, diabetes and liver cancer share common pathologies, including insulin resistance-related hyperinsulinemia, DNA damage due to increased oxidative stress, and chronic inflammation or lipotoxicity induced by liver fat accumulation.

In recent decades, diabetes and HCC have both become socioeconomic problems with high incidence rates worldwide, in the context of a growing population of individuals with obesity and an increasing prevalence of metabolic syndrome. However, there is no established method for appropriate HCC surveillance in patients with diabetes, and HCC is often detected at an incurable stage. Although some antidiabetic drugs are expected to prevent HCC development, further research on the optimal use of antidiabetic drugs aimed at hepatoprotection is essential. In summary, diabetologists and hepatologists need to work together to study liver diseases in patients with diabetes, and further evidence on the prevention and early detection of HCC occurring in association with diabetes is desired.

Authors' contribution

TN and RT contributed to the literature review and manuscript preparation.

Acknowledgements

This research was supported by Grants-in-Aid for Scientific Research 21K15989 (TN) and 20K08352 (RT), Program on Hepatitis from Japan Agency for Medical Research and Development (AMED) under Grant Number JP21fk0210090 (RT) and JP21fk0210066 (RT), and the Health, Labour, and Welfare

Policy Research Grants from the Ministry of Health, Laboure, and Welfare of Japan H30-Kansei-Shitei-003 (RT).

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Sung H, Ferlay J, Siegel RL, Laversanne M, Soerjomataram I, Jemal A, et al. Global cancer statistics 2020: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. CA Cancer J Clin 2021;71:209-249.
2. McGlynn KA, Petrick JL, El-Serag HB. Epidemiology of hepatocellular carcinoma. Hepatology 2021;73 Suppl 1:4-13.
3. El-Serag HB. Epidemiology of viral hepatitis and hepatocellular carcinoma. Gastroenterology 2012;142:1264-1273.e1.
4. Foerster F, Gairing SJ, Müller L, Galle PR. NAFLD-driven HCC: safety and efficacy of current and emerging treatment options. J Hepato 2022;76:446-457.
5. Shikata K, Ninomiya T, Kiyohara Y. Diabetes mellitus and cancer risk: review of the epidemiological evidence. Cancer Sci 2013;104:9-14.
6. Walker JJ, Johnson JA, Wild SH. Diabetes treatments and cancer risk: the importance of considering aspects of drug exposure. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 2013;1:132-139.
7. Mantovani A, Targher G. Type 2 diabetes mellitus and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma: spotlight on nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Ann Transl Med 2017;5:270.
8. Marengo A, Rosso C, Bugianesi E. Liver cancer: connections with obesity, fatty liver, and cirrhosis. Annu Rev Med 2016;67:103-117.
9. El-Serag HB, Richardson PA, Everhart JE. The role of diabetes in hepatocellular carcinoma: a case-control study among United States veterans. Am J Gastroenterol 2001;96:2462-2467.
10. Allaire M, Nault JC. Type 2 diabetes-associated hepatocellular carcinoma: a molecular profile. Clin Liver Dis (Hoboken) 2016;8:53-58.
11. Davila JA, Morgan RO, Shaib Y, McGlynn KA, El-Serag HB. Diabetes increases the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in the United States: a population based case control study. Gut 2005;54:533-539.
12. El-Serag HB, Hampel H, Javadi F. The association between diabetes and hepatocellular carcinoma: a systematic review of epidemiologic evidence. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2006;4:369-380.
13. Wang C, Wang X, Gong G, Ben Q, Qiu W, Chen Y, et al. Increased risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with diabetes mellitus: a systematic review and meta-analysis of cohort studies. Int J Cancer 2012;130:1639-1648.
14. Yang WS, Va P, Bray F, Gao S, Gao J, Li HL, et al. The role of pre-existing diabetes mellitus on hepatocellular carcinoma occurrence and prognosis: a meta-analysis of prospective cohort studies. PLoS One 2011;6:e27326.
15. Váncsa S, Németh D, Hegyi P, Szakács Z, Farkas Á, Kiss S, et al. Diabetes mellitus increases the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma after direct-acting antiviral therapy: systematic review and meta-analysis. Front Med (Lausanne) 2021;8:744512.
16. Yang C, Wan M, Lu Y, Yang X, Yang L, Wang S, et al. Associations between diabetes mellitus and the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in Asian individuals with hepatitis B and C infection: systematic review and a meta-analysis of cohort studies. Eur J Cancer Prev 2022;31:107-116.
17. Dyal HK, Aguilar M, Bartos G, Holt EW, Bhuket T, Liu B, et al. Diabetes mellitus increases risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic hepatitis C virus patients: a systematic review. Dig Dis Sci 2016;61:636-645.
18. Yoo JJ, Cho EJ, Han K, Heo SS, Kim BY, Shin DW, et al. Glucose variability and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with diabetes: a nationwide population-based study. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2021;30:974-981.
19. El-Serag HB, Tran T, Everhart JE. Diabetes increases the risk of chronic liver disease and hepatocellular carcinoma. Gastroenterology 2004;126:460-468.
20. Simon TG, King LY, Chong DQ, Nguyen LH, Ma Y, VoPham T, et al. Diabetes, metabolic comorbidities, and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma: results from two prospective cohort studies. Hepatology 2018;67:1797-1806.
21. Wang YG, Wang P, Wang B, Fu ZJ, Zhao WJ, Yan SL. Diabetes mellitus and poorer prognosis in hepatocellular carcinoma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PLoS One 2014;9:e95485.
22. Wang WM, Xu Y, Yang XR, Wang YH, Sun HX, Fan J. Prognostic role of diabetes mellitus in hepatocellular carcinoma patients after curative treatments: a meta-analysis. Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int 2011;10:346-355.
23. Tateishi R, Uchino K, Fujiwara N, Takehara T, Okanoue T, Seike M, et al. A nationwide survey on non-B, non-C hepatocellular carcinoma in Japan: 2011-2015 update. J Gastroenterol 2019;54:367-376.
24. Lee WG, Wells CI, McCall JL, Murphy R, Plank LD. Prevalence

of diabetes in liver cirrhosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Diabetes Metab Res Rev 2019;35:e3157.
25. Harrison SA. Liver disease in patients with diabetes mellitus. J Clin Gastroenterol 2006;40:68-76.
26. Younossi ZM, Golabi P, de Avila L, Paik JM, Srishord M, Fukui N, et al. The global epidemiology of NAFLD and NASH in patients with type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Hepatol 2019;71:793-801.
27. Nakatsuka T, Tateishi R, Koike K. Changing clinical management of NAFLD in Asia. Liver Int 2022;42:1955-1968.
28. Poonawala A, Nair SP, Thuluvath PJ. Prevalence of obesity and diabetes in patients with cryptogenic cirrhosis: a case-control study. Hepatology 2000;32(4 Pt 1):689-692.
29. Armstrong MJ, Adams LA, Canbay A, Syn WK. Extrahepatic complications of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology 2014;59:1174-1197.
30. Angulo P, Keach JC, Batts KP, Lindor KD. Independent predictors of liver fibrosis in patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Hepatology 1999;30:1356-1362.
31. Zoppini G, Fedeli U, Gennaro N, Saugo M, Targher G, Bonora E. Mortality from chronic liver diseases in diabetes. Am J Gastroenterol 2014;109:1020-1025.
32. Adams LA, Sanderson S, Lindor KD, Angulo P. The histological course of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a longitudinal study of 103 patients with sequential liver biopsies. J Hepatol 2005;42:132-138.
33. Gentile S, Loguercio C, Marmo R, Carbone L, Del Vecchio Blanco C. Incidence of altered glucose tolerance in liver cirrhosis. Diabetes Res Clin Pract 1993;22:37-44.
34. Holstein A, Hinze S, Thiessen E, Plaschke A, Egberts EH. Clinical implications of hepatogenous diabetes in liver cirrhosis. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2002;17:677-681.
35. Saeedi P, Petersohn I, Salpea P, Malanda B, Karuranga S, Unwin N, et al. Global and regional diabetes prevalence estimates for 2019 and projections for 2030 and 2045: results from the international diabetes federation diabetes atlas, 9th edition. Diabetes Res Clin Prac 2019;157:107843.
36. Arnold M, Pandeya N, Byrnes G, Renehan PAG, Stevens GA, Ezzati PM, et al. Global burden of cancer attributable to high body-mass index in 2012: a population-based study. Lancet Oncol 2015;16:36-46.
37. Tsilidis KK, Kasimis JC, Lopez DS, Ntzani EE, Ioannidis JP. Type 2 diabetes and cancer: umbrella review of meta-analyses of observational studies. BMJ 2015;350:g7607.
38. Huang Y, Cai X, Qiu M, Chen P, Tang H, Hu Y, et al. Prediabetes and the risk of cancer: a meta-analysis. Diabetologia 2014;57:2261-2269.
39. Lawson DH, Gray JM, McKillop C, Clarke J, Lee FD, Patrick RS. Diabetes mellitus and primary hepatocellular carcinoma. Q J Med 1986;61:945-955.
40. Adami HO, Chow WH, Nyrén O, Berne C, Linet MS, Ekbom A, et al. Excess risk of primary liver cancer in patients with diabetes mellitus. J Natl Cancer Inst 1996;88:1472-1477.
41. Wideroff L, Gridley G, Mellemkjaer L, Chow WH, Linet M, Keehn S, et al. Cancer incidence in a population-based cohort of patients hospitalized with diabetes mellitus in Denmark. J Natl Cancer Inst 1997;89:1360-1365.
42. Coughlin SS, Calle EE, Teras LR, Petrelli J, Thun MJ. Diabetes mellitus as a predictor of cancer mortality in a large cohort of US adults. Am J Epidemiol 2004;159:1160-1167.
43. Johnson JA, Bowker SL, Richardson K, Marra CA. Time-varying incidence of cancer after the onset of type 2 diabetes: evidence of potential detection bias. Diabetologia 2011;54:2263-2271.
44. Lai SW, Chen PC, Liao KF, Muo CH, Lin CC, Sung FC. Risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in diabetic patients and risk reduction associated with anti-diabetic therapy: a population-based cohort study. Am J Gastroenterol 2012;107:46-52.
45. Schlesinger S, Aleksandrova K, Pischon T, Jenab M, Fedirko V, Trepo E, et al. Diabetes mellitus, insulin treatment, diabetes duration, and risk of biliary tract cancer and hepatocellular carcinoma in a European cohort. Ann Oncol 2013;24:2449-2455.
46. Koh WP, Wang R, Jin A, Yu MC, Yuan JM. Diabetes mellitus and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma: findings from the Singapore Chinese health study. Br J Cancer 2013;108:1182-1188.
47. Setiawan VW, Hernandez BY, Lu SC, Stram DO, Wilkens LR, Le Marchand L, et al. Diabetes and racial/ethnic differences in hepatocellular carcinoma risk: the multiethnic cohort. J Natl Cancer Inst 2014;106:dju326.
48. Inoue M, Iwasaki M, Otani T, Sasazuki S, Noda M, Tsugane S. Diabetes mellitus and the risk of cancer: results from a large-scale population-based cohort study in Japan. Arch Intern Med 2006;166:1871-1877.
49. Lai MS, Hsieh MS, Chiu YH, Chen TH. Type 2 diabetes and hepatocellular carcinoma: a cohort study in high prevalence area of hepatitis virus infection. Hepatology 2006;43:1295-1302.
50. Atchison EA, Gridley G, Carreon JD, Leitzmann MF, McGlynn KA. Risk of cancer in a large cohort of U.S. veterans with diabetes. Int J Cancer 2011;128:635-643.
51. Wang P, Kang D, Cao W, Wang Y, Liu Z. Diabetes mellitus and

risk of hepatocellular carcinoma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Diabetes Metab Res Rev 2012;28:109-122.
52. Chen J, Han Y, Xu C, Xiao T, Wang B. Effect of type 2 diabetes mellitus on the risk for hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic liver diseases: a meta-analysis of cohort studies. Eur J Cancer Prev 2015;24:89-99.
53. Kanwal F, Kramer JR, Li L, Dai J, Natarajan Y, Yu X, et al. Effect of metabolic traits on the risk of cirrhosis and hepatocellular cancer in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology 2020;71:808-819.
54. Tan Y, Wei S, Zhang W, Yang J, Yang J, Yan L. Type 2 diabetes mellitus increases the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in subjects with chronic hepatitis B virus infection: a meta-analysis and systematic review. Cancer Manag Res 2019;11:705-713.
55. Dyal HK, Aguilar M, Bhuket T, Liu B, Holt EW, Torres S, et al. Concurrent obesity, diabetes, and steatosis increase risk of advanced fibrosis among HCV patients: a systematic review. Dig Dis Sci 2015;60:2813-2824.
56. Arase Y, Kobayashi M, Suzuki F, Suzuki Y, Kawamura Y, Akuta N, et al. Effect of type 2 diabetes on risk for malignancies includes hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic hepatitis C. Hepatology 2013;57:964-973.
57. Kasuga M, Ueki K, Tajima N, Noda M, Ohashi K, Noto H, et al. Report of the Japan Diabetes Society/Japanese Cancer Association Joint Committee on Diabetes and Cancer. Cancer Sci 2013;104:965-976.
58. Kudo Y, Tanaka Y, Tateishi K, Yamamoto K, Yamamoto S, Mohri D, et al. Altered composition of fatty acids exacerbates hepatotumorigenesis during activation of the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase pathway. J Hepatol 2011;55:1400-1408.
59. Nakatsuka T, Tateishi K, Kudo Y, Yamamoto K, Nakagawa H, Fujiwara H, et al. Impact of histone demethylase KDM3A-dependent AP-1 transactivity on hepatotumorigenesis induced by PI3K activation. Oncogene 2017;36:6262-6271.
60. Pollak M. The insulin and insulin-like growth factor receptor family in neoplasia: an update. Nat Rev Cancer 2012;12:159-169.
61. Park EJ, Lee JH, Yu GY, He G, Ali SR, Holzer RG, et al. Dietary and genetic obesity promote liver inflammation and tumorigenesis by enhancing IL-6 and TNF expression. Cell 2010;140:197-208.
62. Yoshimoto S, Loo TM, Atarashi K, Kanda H, Sato S, Oyadomari S, et al. Obesity-induced gut microbial metabolite promotes liver cancer through senescence secretome. Nature 2013;499:97-101.
63. Shintani Y, Fujie H, Miyoshi H, Tsutsumi T, Tsukamoto K, Kimura S, et al. Hepatitis C virus infection and diabetes: direct involvement of the virus in the development of insulin resistance. Gastroenterology 2004;126:840-848.
64. Sheikh MY, Choi J, Qadri I, Friedman JE, Sanyal AJ. Hepatitis C virus infection: molecular pathways to metabolic syndrome. Hepatology 2008;47:2127-2133.
65. Wang CC, Tseng TC, Kao JH. Hepatitis B virus infection and metabolic syndrome: fact or fiction? J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2015;30:14-20.
66. Rao Kondapally Seshasai S, Kaptoge S, Thompson A, Di Angelantonio E, Gao P, Sarwar N, et al. Diabetes mellitus, fasting glucose, and risk of cause-specific death. N Engl J Med 2011;364:829-841.
67. Nakamura J, Kamiya H, Haneda M, Inagaki N, Tanizawa Y, Araki E, et al. Causes of death in Japanese patients with diabetes based on the results of a survey of 45,708 cases during 2001-2010: report of the committee on causes of death in diabetes mellitus. J Diabetes Investig 2017;8:397-410.
68. Bragg F, Holmes MV, Iona A, Guo Y, Du H, Chen Y, et al. Association between diabetes and cause-specific mortality in rural and urban areas of China. JAMA 2017;317:280-289.
69. Liu G, Xia F, Fan G, Yu J, Bao L, Zhang C, et al. Type 2 diabetes mellitus worsens the prognosis of intermediate-stage hepatocellular carcinoma after transarterial chemoembolization. Diabetes Res Clin Pract 2020;169:108375.
70. Ho SY, Yuan MH, Chen CC, Liu PH, Hsu CY, Huang YH, et al. Differential survival impact of diabetes mellitus on hepatocellular carcinoma: role of staging determinants. Dig Dis Sci 2020;65:3389-3402.
71. Nagaoki Y, Hyogo H, Ando Y, Kosaka Y, Uchikawa S, Nishida Y, et al. Increasing incidence of non-HBV- and non-HCV-related hepatocellular carcinoma: single-institution 20-year study. BMC Gastroenterol 2021;21:306.
72. Finn RS, Zhu AX. Evolution of systemic therapy for hepatocellular carcinoma. Hepatology 2021;73 Suppl 1:150-157.
73. Marrero JA, Kulik LM, Sirlin CB, Zhu AX, Finn RS, Abecassis MM, et al. Diagnosis, staging, and management of hepatocellular carcinoma: 2018 practice guidance by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Hepatology 2018;68:723-750.
74. European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL clinical practice guidelines: management of hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol 2018;69:182-236.
75. Omata M, Cheng AL, Kokudo N, Kudo M, Lee JM, Jia J, et al. Asia-pacific clinical practice guidelines on the management

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0095

of hepatocellular carcinoma: a 2017 update. Hepatol Int 2017;11:317-70.
76. Tateishi R, Okanoue T, Fujiwara N, Okita K, Kiyosawa K, Omata M, et al. Clinical characteristics, treatment, and prognosis of non-B, non-C hepatocellular carcinoma: a large retrospective multicenter cohort study. J Gastroenterol 2015;50:350-360.
77. Wong LL, Reyes RJ, Kwee SA, Hernandez BY, Kalathil SC, Tsai NC. Pitfalls in surveillance for hepatocellular carcinoma: how successful is it in the real world? Clin Mol Hepatol 2017;23:239-248.
78. Si WK, Chung JW, Cho J, Baeg JY, Jang ES, Yoon H, et al. Predictors of increased risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with type 2 diabetes. PLoS One 2016;11:e0158066.
79. Li TC, Li CI, Liu CS, Lin WY, Lin CH, Yang SY, et al. Risk score system for the prediction of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with type 2 diabetes: Taiwan diabetes study. Semin Oncol 2018;45:264-274.
80. Rau HH, Hsu CY, Lin YA, Atique S, Fuad A, Wei LM, et al. Development of a web-based liver cancer prediction model for type II diabetes patients by using an artificial neural network. Comput Methods Programs Biomed 2016;125:58-65.
81. Grecian SM, McLachlan S, Fallowfield JA, Kearns PKA, Hayes PC, Guha NI, et al. Non-invasive risk scores do not reliably identify future cirrhosis or hepatocellular carcinoma in type 2 diabetes: the edinburgh type 2 diabetes study. Liver Int 2020;40:2252-2262.
82. Tateishi R, Matsumura T, Okanoue T, Shima T, Uchino K, Fujiwara N, et al. Hepatocellular carcinoma development in diabetic patients: a nationwide survey in Japan. J Gastroenterol 2021;56:261-273.
83. Luo X, Sui J, Yang W, Sun Q, Ma Y, Simon TG, et al. Type 2 diabetes prevention diet and hepatocellular carcinoma risk in US men and women. Am J Gastroenterol 2019;114:1870-1877.
84. Plaz Torres MC, Jaffe A, Perry R, Marabotto E, Strazzabosco M, Giannini EG. Diabetes medications and risk of HCC. Hepatology 2022;76:1880-1897.
85. Kim KS, Lee BW. Beneficial effect of anti-diabetic drugs for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:430-443.
86. Evans JM, Donnelly LA, Emslie-Smith AM, Alessi DR, Morris AD. Metformin and reduced risk of cancer in diabetic patients. BMJ 2005;330:1304-1305.
87. Home PD, Kahn SE, Jones NP, Noronha D, Beck-Nielsen H, Viberti G, et al. Experience of malignancies with oral glucose-lowering drugs in the randomised controlled ADOPT (a diabetes outcome progression trial) and RECORD (rosiglitazone evaluated for cardiovascular outcomes and regulation of glycaemia in diabetes) clinical trials. Diabetologia 2010;53:1838-1845.
88. Zhang ZJ, Zheng ZJ, Shi R, Su Q, Jiang Q, Kip KE. Metformin for liver cancer prevention in patients with type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2012;97:2347-2353.
89. Zhang H, Gao C, Fang L, Zhao HC, Yao SK. Metformin and reduced risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in diabetic patients: a meta-analysis. Scand J Gastroenterol 2013;48:78-87.
90. Singh S, Singh PP, Singh AG, Murad MH, Sanchez W. Antidiabetic medications and the risk of hepatocellular cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Gastroenterol 2013;108:881-891; quiz 892.
91. Ma S, Zheng Y, Xiao Y, Zhou P, Tan H. Meta-analysis of studies using metformin as a reducer for liver cancer risk in diabetic patients. Medicine (Baltimore) 2017;96:e6888.
92. Li Q, Xu H, Sui C, Zhang H. Impact of metformin use on risk and mortality of hepatocellular carcinoma in diabetes mellitus. Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol 2022;46:101781.
93. Cunha V, Cotrim HP, Rocha R, Carvalho K, Lins-Kusterer L. Metformin in the prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma in diabetic patients: a systematic review. Ann Hepatol 2020;19:232-237.
94. Zhou YY, Zhu GQ, Liu T, Zheng JN, Cheng Z, Zou TT, et al. Systematic review with network meta-analysis: antidiabetic medication and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma. Sci Rep 2016;6:33743.
95. Zhou J, Ke Y, Lei X, Wu T, Li Y, Bao T, et al. Meta-analysis: the efficacy of metformin and other anti-hyperglycemic agents in prolonging the survival of hepatocellular carcinoma patients with type 2 diabetes. Ann Hepatol 2020;19:320-328.
96. Bosetti C, Franchi M, Nicotra F, Asciutto R, Merlino L, La Vecchia C, et al. Insulin and other antidiabetic drugs and hepatocellular carcinoma risk: a nested case-control study based on Italian healthcare utilization databases. Pharmacoepidemiol Drug Saf 2015;24:771-778.
97. Aithal GP, Thomas JA, Kaye PV, Lawson A, Ryder SD, Spendlove I, et al. Randomized, placebo-controlled trial of pioglitazone in nondiabetic subjects with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Gastroenterology 2008;135:1176-1184.
98. Arvind A, Memel ZN, Philpotts LL, Zheng H, Corey KE, Simon TG. Thiazolidinediones, alpha-glucosidase inhibitors, meglitinides, sulfonylureas, and hepatocellular carcinoma risk: a meta-analysis. Metabolism 2021;120:154780.

99. Lee JY, Jang SY, Nam CM, Kang ES. Incident hepatocellular carcinoma risk in patients treated with a sulfonylurea: a nationwide, nested, case-control study. Sci Rep 2019;9:8532.
100. Lee JY, Kim G, Lee YH, Lee BW, Cha BS, Nam CM, et al. Comparison of hepatocellular carcinoma risk between patients treated with glimepiride and gliclazide. Diabetes Metab 2019;45:83-85.
101. Chang CH, Lin JW, Wu LC, Lai MS, Chuang LM. Oral insulin secretagogues, insulin, and cancer risk in type 2 diabetes mellitus. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2012;97:E1170-E1175.
102. Nishina S, Yamauchi A, Kawaguchi T, Kaku K, Goto M, Sasaki K, et al. Dipeptidyl peptidase 4 inhibitors reduce hepatocellular carcinoma by activating lymphocyte chemotaxis in mice. Cell Mol Gastroenterol Hepatol 2018;7:115-134.
103. Armstrong MJ, Gaunt P, Aithal GP, Barton D, Hull D, Parker R, et al. Liraglutide safety and efficacy in patients with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (LEAN): a multicentre, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled phase 2 study. Lancet 2016;387:679-690.
104. Newsome PN, Buchholtz K, Cusi K, Linder M, Okanoue T, Ratziu V, et al. A placebo-controlled trial of subcutaneous semaglutide in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. N Engl J Med 2021;384:1113-1124.
105. Shibuya T, Fushimi N, Kawai M, Yoshida Y, Hachiya H, Ito S, et al. Luseogliflozin improves liver fat deposition compared to metformin in type 2 diabetes patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: a prospective randomized controlled pilot study. Diabetes Obes Metab 2018;20:438-442.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0095

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0032
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:65-76

Review

Hepatocytes infected with hepatitis C virus change immunological features in the liver microenvironment

Soo-Jeung Park[1] and Young S. Hahn[1,2]

[1]Beirne B. Carter Center for Immunology Research, University of Virginia, Charlottesville, VA; [2]Department of Microbiology, Immunology and Cancer Biology, University of Virginia, Charlottesville, VA, USA

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is remarkably efficient in establishing viral persistence, leading to the development of liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Direct-acting antiviral agents (DAAs) are promising HCV therapies to clear the virus. However, recent reports indicate potential increased risk of HCC development among HCV patients with cirrhosis following DAA therapy. $CD8^+$ T-cells participate in controlling HCV infection. However, in chronic hepatitis C patients, severe $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cell dysfunctions have been observed. This suggests that HCV may employ mechanisms to counteract or suppress the host T-cell responses. The primary site of viral replication is within hepatocytes where infection can trigger the expression of costimulatory molecules and the secretion of immunoregulatory cytokines. Numerous studies indicate that HCV infection in hepatocytes impairs antiviral host immunity by modulating the expression of immunoregulatory molecules. Hepatocytes expressing whole HCV proteins upregulate the ligands of programmed cell death protein 1 (PD-1), programmed death-ligand 1 (PD-L1), and transforming growth factor β (TGF-β) synthesis compared to those in hepatocytes in the absence of the HCV genome. Importantly, HCV-infected hepatocytes are capable of inducing regulatory $CD4^+$ T-cells, releasing exosomes displaying TGF-β on exosome surfaces, and generating follicular regulatory T-cells. Recent studies report that the expression profile of exosome microRNAs provides biomarkers of HCV infection and HCV-related chronic liver diseases. A better understanding of the immunoregulatory mechanisms and identification of biomarkers associated with HCV infection will provide insight into designing vaccine against HCV to bypass HCV-induced immune dysregulation and prevent development of HCV-associated chronic liver diseases. **(Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:65-76)**

Keywords: Hepatitis C; Hepatocellular carcinoma; Immunity; Cell communication; Exosomes

INTRODUCTION

The hepatitis C virus (HCV) is a serious and growing worldwide threat to human health, having already infected approximately 3% of the world's population (>180 million people).[1] HCV transmission can often be linked to a blood-borne route, such as intravenous drug use or medical procedures. HCV infection is almost invariably associated with viral persistence, leading to development of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), as well as, autoimmune diseases such as mixed

Corresponding author : Young S. Hahn
Department of Microbiology, Immunology and Cancer Biology, University of Virginia, 345 Crispell Dr, Charlottesville, VA 22908, USA
Tel: +1-434-924-1275, Fax: +1-434-924-1221, E-mail: ysh5e@virginia.edu
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-2698-9844

Editor: Won-Il Jeong, Korea Advanced Institute of Science and Technology, Korea

Received : Feb. 5, 2022 / **Revised :** Jul. 26, 2022 / **Accepted :** Aug. 11, 2022

cryoglobulinemia.[2] Direct-acting antiviral agents (DAAs) are promising HCV therapies to clear the virus. However, recent reports indicate a potential increased risk of HCC development among HCV-infected patients with cirrhosis following DAA therapy.[3,4] Unfortunately, development of a vaccine against HCV infection has failed, and no vaccine is currently available.

Since HCV was identified as the causative agent of non-A, non-B hepatitis, the immune responses to HCV infection have been examined in detail.[5-8] It is notable that immune responses to HCV are significantly impaired. First, the appearance of HCV-specific antibody response is delayed and is detectable on 2–4 months after viral infection.[9] Second, T cell responses to HCV have been demonstrated with multiple antigenic stimulations.[10] Importantly, early and sustained $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cell responses are crucial for controlling HCV infection,[11] but the magnitude of T-cell responses is dramatically decreased in chronic hepatitis C patients compared to that in acute hepatitis C patients. This suggests that HCV may employ mechanisms to evade or possibly suppress host T-cell responses. It is important to understand how chronic HCV infection dampens T-cell responses against HCV infection and develop vaccine against HCV.

Numerous studies have reported that HCV actively suppresses the immune response by altering the differentiation of innate immune cells, resulting in the impairment of subsequent robust antiviral adaptive responses. Moreover, $CD4^+$ $CD25^+$ regulatory T-cells (Tregs) have been consistently shown to be expanded in patients with chronic infection.[6,12,13] $CD4^+CD25^+$ Tregs play a pivotal role in maintaining immune homeostasis and controlling excessive immune responses. The immunoregulatory cytokines, transforming growth factor β (TGF-β) and interleukin (IL)-10, are crucial for the induction and maintenance of Tregs. TGF-β is involved in the generation of inducible Tregs and the maintenance of Treg function.[14] IL-10 is a critical factor for sustaining FoxP3 expression.[15] In addition, these cytokines have been reported to be secreted during HCV infection and have polymorphisms that correlate with HCV clearance.[16]

Molecular biological studies of HCV have shown that it is a positive-stranded RNA virus related to the *Flaviviridae* family.[17] The viral genome encodes a single polyprotein of approximately 3,000 amino acids (aa) processed by host and viral proteases to form non-structural and structural proteins including a nucleocapsid (core) and two envelope proteins. The primary site of HCV replication is in hepatocytes. HCV life cycle involves multiple steps to generate infectious virus and lipid droplet formation is crucial for viral RNA replication (Fig. 1). Viral tropism seems to be determined by initial interaction of HCV glycoproteins with dendritic cell-specific intercellular adhesion molecule-3-grabbing non-integrin (SIGN) and lymph node-SIGN on the surface of liver endothelial cells and antigen-presenting cells. This interaction is followed by binding to CD81, SR-B1, and/or heparin sulfate on the cell surface of hepatocytes.[18] Although there is evidence for HCV replication at extrahepatic sites including B-cells, the vast majority of HCV replication and protein expression occur in hepatocytes.[19] Recently, it has been reported that hepatocytes are capable of exerting immunoregulatory function. Notably, HCV-infected hepatocytes interact with immune cells present in the liver microenvironment and suppress host immune responses. In this review article, we discuss the contribution of HCV-infected hepatocytes to regulate host immune responses during HCV infection and the molecular mechanism for their immunoregulatory function.

IMMUNOLOGICAL FEATURES OF HEPATOCYTES UPON ENCOUNTER WITH VIRAL INFECTION

Hepatocytes are not traditionally regarded as key players in mounting immune response. However, they have the ability to produce a large variety of cytokines and chemokines.

Abbreviations:

AIH, autoimmune hepatitis; ASC, caspase recruitment domain; ATP, adenosine triphosphate; DAA, direct-acting antiviral agent; EVs, extracellular vesicles; GC, germinal center; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; HCV, hepatitis C virus; HSC, hepatic stellate cell; HTA, host-targeting antiviral; IFN, interferon; IL, interleukin; LSEC, liver sinusoidal endothelial cell; MDSC, myeloid-derived suppressor cell; MIP-1α, macrophage inflammatory protein-1 α; miRNA, microRNA; mRNA, messenger RNA; MVs, microvesicles; NAFLD, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; NLRP3, nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-like receptor family pyrin domain containing 3; PAMP, pathogen-associated molecular pattern; Panx1, pannexin 1; PD-1, programmed cell death protein 1; PD-L1, programmed death-ligand 1; RANTES, regulated upon activation, normal T cell expressed and secreted; ROS, reactive oxygen species; RUNX1, runt-related transcription factor1; RUNXOR, RUNX1 overlapping RNA; SIGN, specific intercellular adhesion molecule-3-grabbing non-integrin; Tfr, T follicular regulatory; TGF-β, transforming growth factor β; TLR, toll-like receptor; Treg, regulatory T-cells

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0032

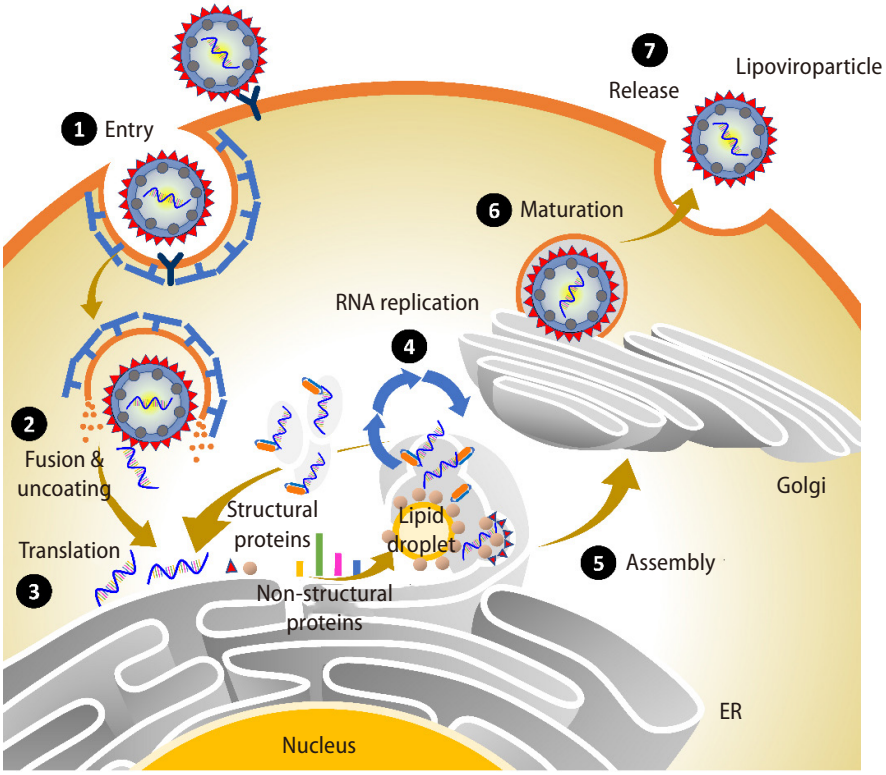


Figure 1. Hepatitis C virus life cycle occurs via 7 steps; entry, fusion & uncoating, translation, replication, assembly, maturation, and release. Formation of lipid droplet is crucial for viral RNA replication. ER, endoplasmic reticulum.

Thus, in the liver microenvironment, the cellular interaction between lymphocytes and hepatocytes might take place due to the fenestrated structure of hepatic sinusoids, combined with the lack of basal membrane and the low blood flow. Current techniques available for the *in vivo* analysis of acute HCV infection are limited because the chimpanzee is the only animal susceptible to a natural HCV infection. The *in vitro* tissue culture of HCV has been used for studying the interaction of infected hepatocytes with immune cells. HCV infection leads to hepatocyte damages that initiate hepatic inflammatory responses by recruiting immune cells (i.e., myeloid and T-cells) at the site of infection.[20] Secretion of immune mediators from infected hepatocytes and immune cells is involved on the activation of hepatic stellate cells (HSCs) and the development of liver fibrosis (Fig. 2).

Immune mediators produced from infected hepatocytes

The HCC cell line, Huh7, is established from HCC and commonly used for *in vitro* studies. Following HCV infection, Huh7 cells are able to produce IL-7, IL-15, and TGF-β, and their expression does not change with IL-1α exposure.[21,22] Other cytokines and chemokines, such as tumor necrosis factor, IL-1β, regulated upon activation, normal T cell expressed and secreted (RANTES), macrophage inflammatory protein-1 α (MIP-1α), and IL-8, are also produced by hepatocytes, and their productions are increased in response to pro-inflammatory IL-1α activation. In addition, HCV infection is associated with the activation of inflammasomes such as nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-like receptor family pyrin domain containing 3 (NLRP3), apoptosis-associated speck-like protein containing a caspase recruitment domain (ASC), caspase-1, and release of IL-1β secretion.[23] Many of these cytokines and chemokines are important to $CD4^+$ T-cell survival and differentiation. For example, RANTES is $CD4^+$ T-cell recruiting cytokine and contributes to development of Th1 response.[24] While IL-15 enhances Th1 cytokine production and promotes development of an effector phenotype,[25] TGF-β has a negative influence on effector T-cell function and is known to be involved in Treg cell and Th17 cell development. Development of HCV replicon (genotype 1a)[26] as

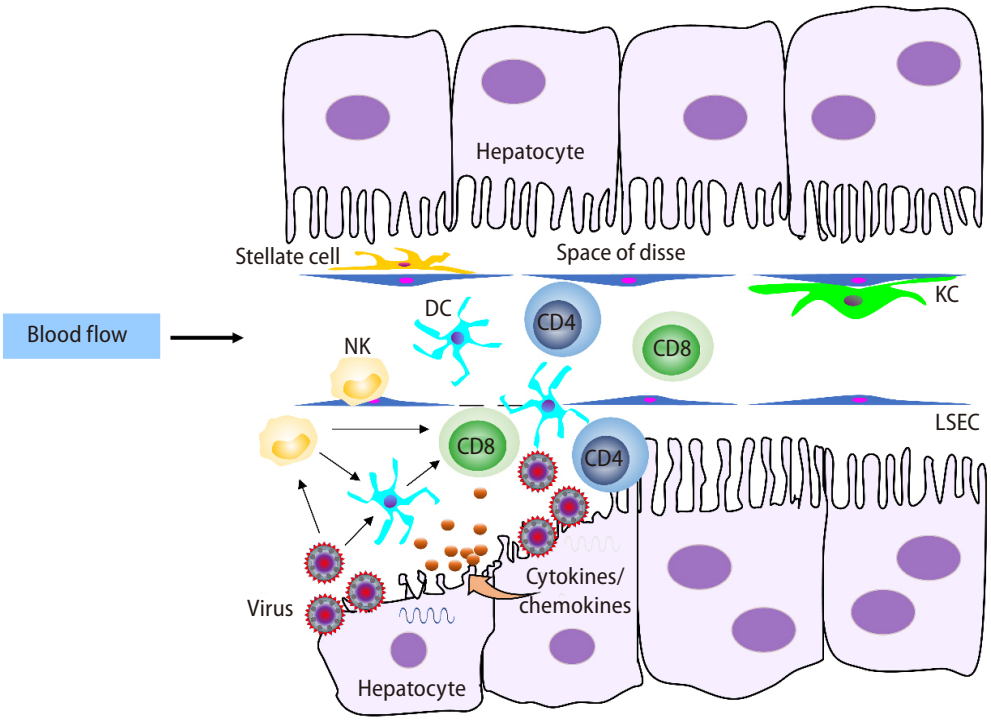


Figure 2. Interaction between virus-infected hepatocyte and immune cells. Hepatitis C virus infection and replication in hepatocytes promote the production of cytokines/chemkines leading to recruit immune cells. The excessive cytokines cause hepatic inflammation in the liver and exacerbate tissue damage and liver disease progression. DC, dendritic cell; KC, Kupffer cell; NK, natural killer cell; LSEC, liver sinusoidal endothelial cell.

well as replicating JFH1 virus (genotype 2a)[27] represent a major advancement for studying the interaction of HCV-infected hepatocytes and the host immune system. Successful replication of the viral genome has been superior in the HCC cell line Huh7.5. Huh7.5 cells were generated from HCV-positive parental cell, Huh7, which was cured of HCV using interferon-α treatment. These cells were subsequently receptive to HCV replication such that HCV RNA and proteins could be detected soon after transfection with HCV replicons.[26] Studies on cytokine analysis using HCC cells have been validated in primary hepatocytes following HCV infection.

Programmed cell death protein 1 (PD-1) and PD-1 ligand expression

PD-1 is a receptor for the programmed death-ligand 1 (PD-L1) and PD-L2, and plays a role in dampening host immune responses. Specifically, T-cells activation increased the level of PD-1 expression and engagement of PD-1 with its ligand inhibits their activation, proliferation, and cytokine secretions.[28-30] Leukocytes, a number of soft tissues, and endothelial cells constitutively express low levels of PD-L1, but induce the expression of PD-L2 under the inflammatory condition.[28] Inflammatory cytokines, including interferon (IFN)-γ, up-regulate PD-L1 and PD-L2 expression on a variety of epithelial cells and leukocytes.[31] The PD-1 pathway is associated with outcome of human disease severity (e.g., autoimmune diseases, cancer). PD-1 ligand expression is seen in a variety of cancers, often correlating with worse cancer outcome. Immuntherapy based on PD-1 blockade has been developed to treat cancer patients.

The pathogenic role of the PD-1 pathway has been demonstrated in the progression of chronic liver diseases by determining the modulation of the inhibitory PD-1 ligands in the liver with chronic inflammation. Chronically damaged livers provide ample opportunity for lymphocyte modulation via PD-1/PD-1 ligand ligation. Indeed primary human hepatocytes as well as Kupffer cells, stellate cells, T-cells, myeloid cells, and liver sinusoidal endothelial cells (LSECs) express PD-L1 and PD-L2.[32] At the messenger RNA (mRNA) level, chronic

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0032

hepatitis C and autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) patients have increased levels of PD-L1 and PD-L2 mRNA compared to those with normal livers. Multiple studies found that blocking PD-1 and PD-L1 interactions on leukocytes from hepatitis B virus (HBV)- or HCV-infected patients restored T-cell function *in vitro*.[33,34]

Cellular location of PD-1 and its ligand expression, has been identified by histologic studies on liver biopsies from chronic hepatitis B, chronic hepatitis C, AIH, and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) patients as well as individuals with normal liver histology. The presence of the normal control group enabled to differentiate baseline tolerogenic features of the liver from those modulated during chronic liver damage. The increased numbers of $CD3^+$ T-cells were detected in chronic hepatitis B, chronic hepatitis C, and AIH livers and significant portions of intrahepatic lymphocytes from these patient groups expressed PD-1. LSECs, Kupffer cells, and intrahepatic leukocytes expressed PD-L1 and PD-L2 while hepatocytes also expressed PD-L1 and PD-L2 under inflammation. These studies confirm that PD-L1 and PD-L2 expression on parenchymal and non-parenchymal cells can deliver a negative signal to T-cells, dampening their responses. Moreover, the necroinflammatory levels associated with chronic hepatitis B, chronic hepatitis C, and AIH were correlated with increased PD-L1 and PD-L2 on leukocytes, Kupffer cells, and LSECs. However, early-stage NAFLD patients did not demonstrate significant increases in $CD3^+$ lymphocyte infiltrates, PD-1 or PD-L1 and PD-L2 expression, suggesting that inflammation rather than liver damage itself leads to the expression of PD-1 and PD-1 ligands.

Induction of Treg driven by TGF-β secreted from HCV-infected hepatocytes

Impaired antiviral $CD8^+$ and $CD4^+$ Th1 T-cell responses are associated with persistence of HCV infection.[35] Although failure of T-cell responses might occur as a result of mutation in viral antigens.[36,37] and upregulation of negative costimulatory PD-1 and CTLA-4 pathways,[38,39] HCV infection generates a direct mechanism to generate $CD4^+CD25^+FoxP3^+$ Tregs to inhibit T-cell responses. Notably, an increase in the number and functionality of Tregs has been detected in chronic HCV patients as compared to those with resolved infection.[6,40,41] The increased frequency of Tregs observed in chronic HCV patients might arise from expansion of thymic-derived natural Tregs or from *de novo* induction from naïve T-cells. The mechanism underlying induction of Tregs during HCV infection remains unclear.

Notably, HCV protein expression within hepatocytes alters the function of $CD4^+$ T-cells and could contribute to development of Tregs.[42] By using an HCV whole protein-expressing hepatoma line (Huh7.5-FL), studies have been conducted to examine contribution of infected hepatocytes on $CD4^+$ T-cell dysfunction. $CD4^+$ T-cell responsiveness, as measured by IFN-γ production, was diminished in co-culture with Huh7.5-FL compared to controls. Importantly, $CD4^+$ T-cells in contact with Huh7.5-FL adopted a Treg phenotype ($CD25^+FoxP3^+$ $CTLA\text{-}4^+LAP^+$) and developed the ability to suppress effector T-cell proliferation. The role of hepatocytes in Treg development was clarified by finding that Huh7.5-FL produced more TGF-β than control hepatocytes. Moreover, intracellular expression of an HCV core is known to enhance TGF-β1 mRNA production by the hepatoma cell line HepG2.[43,44] These provide evidence that the site of HCV infection (i.e., hepatocytes) plays a pivotal role in impairing the antiviral T-cell response by the induction of Tregs via TGF-β production.

CELLULAR CROSSTALK VIA EXOSOMES RELEASED BY HCV-INFECTED HEPATOCYTES

Cells exchange information through release of soluble factors or by direct interaction. Several reports demonstrate that cells can also communicate by circular membrane fragments called extracellular vesicles (EVs).[45] Normal or diseased cells release different types of EVs, including microvesicles (MVs) and exosomes, depending on their cellular origin. Exosomes (40–100 nm) are formed by the fusion between multivesicular bodies and the plasma membrane, while MVs (100–2,000 nm) bud directly from the plasma membrane. Exosomes have been shown to provide a means of intercellular communication as contributing factors in the development of several diseases by the spread of proteins, mRNAs, and microRNAs (miRNAs).[45] During virus infection, exosomes released from virus-infected cells contain viral proteins, viral RNAs, and certain specific miRNAs that are able to spread the infection and alter the cellular response in uninfected target cells during the immune response and pathogenesis.

Exosomes secreted from HCV-infected hepatocytes play a critical role in promoting intercellular crosstalk with liver non-

parenchymal cells.[46,47] HCV infection may directly activate a signaling network in hepatocytes, promoting release of immunoregulatory molecules packaged into exosomes, leading to intercellular communication inducing for activation of fibrotic macrophages and LSEC (Fig. 3). Recently, accumulating evidence demonstrates that exosomes and exosomal miRNAs from HCV-infected hepatocytes lead to polarization and differentiation of macrophages and mediate pro-fibrotic responses in HSC and T follicular regulatory (Tfr) cells expansion.[48-50] This suggests that development of liver disease involves intercellular communication during HCV infection. Interestingly, some studies have reported increased release of specific miRNAs, such as miR-122 in HCV infection.[51] Recently, potential cellular and molecular mechanisms of HCV-mediated secretions of exosome and exosomal miRNAs have been elucidated.[52]

Exosomes containing immunoregulatory molecules

Numerous studies have been conducted to identify contents of exosomes secreted from HCV-infected hepatocytes and define their biological function. Interestingly, HCV exosomes play a role in regulating host immune responses and facilitating development of persistent HCV infections and chronic liver diseases. HCV-dependent elevated reactive oxygen species (ROS) levels and induction of autophagy are related to exosomes derived from the endosomal pathway.[53] Toll-like receptor (TLR) 7 and TLR8 are present in intracellular vesicles from HCV-infected hepatocytes and macrophages.[54] TLR is a type of pattern-recognition receptor in the immune system recognizing pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) and exerts a broad spectrum of innate immunity. Exosomes containing single-strand HCV RNA have been shown to affect differentiation of monocytes to fibrogenic macrophages in a TLR7/8-dependent manner.[48] TLR3 activation was reduced under influence of viral dsRNA contained in exosomes secreted from HCV-positive cells, showing a novel mechanism to evade the host immune response in virus persistence.[55]

Moreover, HCV exosomes isolated from infected hepatocytes contain TGF-β at the surface of exosomes. TGF-β is important for induction and expansion of Tfr cells, a subset of Tregs.[56] Increased Treg responses are a prominent feature in

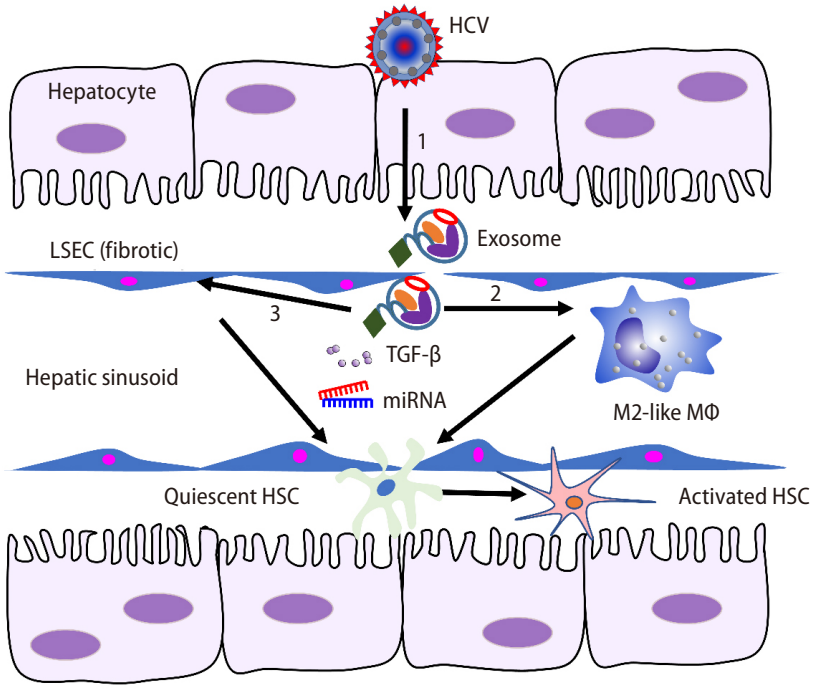


Figure 3. Schematic diagram of HCV exosomes. Exosomes released by HCV-infected hepatocytes promote intercellular crosstalk with Mϕ and LSEC leading to stellate cell activation. HCV, hepatitis C virus; LSEC, liver sinusoidal endothelial cells; TGF-β, transforming growth factor β; miRNA, microRNA; HSC, hepatic stellate cell.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0032

HCV infection such that Tregs are increased in both number and function in chronic hepatitis C patients and are positively correlated with viral load.[6,7] Furthermore, abundant Tregs are found in the livers of chronic hepatitis C patients.[57,58] Recently Tfr cells have been identified for functional regulation of germinal center (GC) responses by limiting Tfh cells and B cells.[59,60] Tfrs are reported to be increased in the circulation of chronic hepatitis C patients.[61] Tfrs are identified by the expression of follicular markers CXCR5 and PD-1 and regulatory markers CD25 and Foxp3. This allows Tfrs to co-migrate with Tfh to control GC responses.[62] Interestingly, lymphoid follicles, containing T- and B-cells, are commonly observed in the livers of HCV-infected patients and exhibit signs of GC-like architecture.[63,64] Recent studies have identified the presence of Tfh within the livers of HCV-infected patients.[65]

Exposure of $CD4^+$ T-cells to TGF-β-containing exosomes from HCV-infected hepatocytes led to a significant increase in Tfrs. This study has been done by culturing exosomes isolated from HCV-infected primary hepatocytes with pre-activated $CD4^+$ T-cells. Moreover, depletion of $CD14^+$ monocytes prior to co-culture of infected hepatocytes with PBMCs did not affect the ability of infected hepatoma cells to drive Tfr expansion but monocytes are not required for expansion of Tfr cells. Importantly, expansion of Tfr cell is accompanied by acquisition of an enhanced regulatory phenotype and leads to the functional suppression of Tfh cells. Increases in Tfr responses are driven by a novel pathway involving the release of TGF-β-containing exosomes from HCV-infected hepatocytes. These findings highlight the accumulation of Tfrs in the livers of HCV-infected patients, potentially inhibiting protective Tfh and B-cell responses at the site of infection, and contributing to viral persistence.

Exosomes containing miRNAs

Several studies report the expression and biological activity of various miRNAs in HCV infection-associated exosomes. In the exosomes of HCC patients, miR-21-5p, miR-10b-5p, miR-221-3p, and miR-223-3p were significantly upregulated compared to the non-HCC individuals.[66] miR-19a and miR-192 from exosomes secreted from HCV-infected hepatocytes were internalized into HSCs and induced HSC activation by triggering STAT3-mediated TGF-β signaling.[50,67] HCV-induced exosomal miR-122/let-7b/miR-206 induced activation of B-cells associated with mixed cryoglobulinemia.[68] A link between the runt-related transcription factor1 (RUNX1)/RUNX1 overlapping RNA (RUNXOR) and the STAT3/miR-124 pathway regulated differentiation of myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) during chronic HCV infection, and expression of miR-124 was negatively correlated with expression of STAT3.[69] In addition, a pilot study on expression profiles of exosomal miRNAs in HCV-infected patients has identified various miRNAs related to other diseases.[70]

Molecular mechanism of exosome release from infected hepatocytes

The exosome plays a critical role in mediating the cellular communication.[50] Syntenin has been reported to be involved on the secretion of E2 via exosomes. E2 is a viral envelope glycoprotein that forms a heterodimer and mediates viral entry.[71] The release of MVs or exosomes can be stimulated by

Table 1. Candidate biomarkers of HCV exosom miRNAs

Biomarker	Responses of each markers in HCV	Reference
miR-21-5p, miR-10b-5p, miR-221-3p, miR-223-3p	Increased	66
miR-19a	Increased	50
miR-192	Increased	81
miR-124	Decreased	69,82
miR-885-5p, miR-365	Increased	70
miR-627-5p, miR-221	Decreased	70
miR-155	Increased	76
miR-122, let-7b, miR-206	Increased	68,77
miR-199a	Increased	77

HCV, hepatitis C virus; miRNA, microRNA.

stress signals, including DNA damage, intracellular calcium, and extracellular adenosine triphosphate (ATP).[72] Exosome release can occur by an ESCRT-dependent or ESCRT-independent pathway. Moreover, exosome release is induced by extracellular ATP that is associated with purinergic receptor activation.

Pannexin 1 (Panx1) is a transmembrane channel that mediates ATP release. Panx1 is activated by the stretch of the plasma membrane during changes in osmolality or mechanical injuries or by proteolysis via caspase-3 and -7 during early apoptosis.[73] The ATP released by Panx1 activation can bind to the purinergic receptor, leading to a calcium influx.[74] Expression of Panx-1 and purinergic receptor was increased in HCV-infected hepatocytes.[75] However, participation of Panx1 pathway-mediated exosome release in viral infection has not been well elucidated. Our studies demonstrate that secretions of exosomes and specific miRNAs are associated with the Panx1/purinergic receptor pathway in HCV-infected hepatocytes.[52] Notably, Panx1 inhibitors prevented release of exosomes from HCV-infected hepatocytes.

DEVELOPMENT OF FUTURE THERAPEUTICS TO TREAT CHRONIC LIVER DISEASE

Therapeutic interventions to develop drugs for halting the liver disease progression and vaccine for preventing HCV infection have met with limited success. It is vital to understand the pathogenesis of HCV infection and the mechanism of virus-induced immune suppression leading to the establishment of persistent infection. The studies described in this review article provide novel and important information on the role of HCV-infected hepatocytes in the pathogenesis of HCV infection and inhibition of T-cell function. Results of these studies contribute to advance the understanding of impaired T-cell responses via interactions between hepatocyte and T-cell. Thus these data should stimulate development of novel vaccine strategies for this important human pathogen.

Furthermore, miRNA-containing exosomes have been reported as biomarkers for diagnosis of HCV. Table 1 summarizes miRNAs identified as biomakers associated with HCV infection. Exosomes containing miR-19a and miR-192 were observed in the serum of HCV patients and presented as a new marker.[50] An increase of exosome miR-885-5p and miR-365 but a decrease of exosome miR-627-5 and miR-221 showed characteristic of HCV-infection among other miRNAs.[70] Expression of exosome miR-155 was reduced after rituximab treatment in HCV patients.[76] In particular, serum miR-122 and miR-199a are potential biomarkers reflecting therapeutic efficacy against HCV infection.[77] Potential mechanisms of HCV anti-viral therapy involve therapeutic agents directly acting on the virus, IFN-dependent/independent therapeutics, and host-targeting antivirals (HTAs). miR-122 increases viral replication by directly binding to two conserved flanking regions of the 5′ UTR of HCV RNA and acts as HTA against HCV replication.[78] Miravisen, miR-122 antisense blocker, has been developed as a latest HTA.[79] In addition, treatment of syntenin, a protein involved in the exosome secretion pathway, has recently been introduced,[80] but like the above-mentioned treatment, there are few reports of its clinical test results yet. Nevertheless, these studies are important for developing therapeutics to target HCV-infected hepatocytes and prevent development of HCV-associated chronic liver diseases.

CONCLUSION

In summary, HCV-infected hepatocytes play a pivotal role in changing immunological features in the liver microenvironment. Through cellular and molecular mechanisms, HCV-infected hepatocytes dampen intrahepatic T-cell responses directly via increased expression of PD-L1 or indirectly by releasing immunoregulatory molecules such as TGF-β. Future studies are needed to develop immune-based therapeutics to treat chronic liver diseases associated with HCV infection. In addition, the markers in the various immunological mechanisms presented in this review can be used in future research on immune-based therapeutics.

Authors' contribution

SJP contributed to manuscript research and writing. YSH contributed to conceptualization of review article and critical review/editing of the manuscript.

Acknowledgements

This paper is dedicated to the memory of Hugo Rosen, MD who has done pioneering studies on chronic liver diseases and liver immunology. This work was supported by the grant from the National Institute of Health (DK122737 to YSH).

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Alter HJ, Conry-Cantilena C, Melpolder J, Tan D, Van Raden M, Herion D, et al. Hepatitis C in asymptomatic blood donors. Hepatology 1997;26(3 Suppl 1):29S-33S.
2. Hoofnagle JH. Hepatitis C: the clinical spectrum of disease. Hepatology 1997;26(3 Suppl 1):15S-20S.
3. Nagata H, Nakagawa M, Asahina Y, Sato A, Asano Y, Tsunoda T, et al. Effect of interferon-based and -free therapy on early occurrence and recurrence of hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic hepatitis C. J Hepatol 2017;67:933-939.
4. Kanwal F, Kramer J, Asch SM, Chayanupatkul M, Cao Y, El-Serag HB. Risk of hepatocellular cancer in HCV patients treated with direct-acting antiviral agents. Gastroenterology 2017;153:996-1005.e1.
5. Bowen DG, Walker CM. Adaptive immune responses in acute and chronic hepatitis C virus infection. Nature 2005;436:946-952.
6. Cabrera R, Tu Z, Xu Y, Firpi RJ, Rosen HR, Liu C, et al. An immunomodulatory role for CD4(+)CD25(+) regulatory T lymphocytes in hepatitis C virus infection. Hepatology 2004;40:1062-1071.
7. Boettler T, Spangenberg HC, Neumann-Haefelin C, Panther E, Urbani S, Ferrari C, et al. T cells with a CD4+CD25+ regulatory phenotype suppress in vitro proliferation of virus-specific CD8+ T cells during chronic hepatitis C virus infection. J Virol 2005;79:7860-7867.
8. Burton JR Jr, Klarquist J, Im K, Smyk-Pearson S, Golden-Mason L, Castelblanco N, et al. Prospective analysis of effector and regulatory CD4+ T cells in chronic HCV patients undergoing combination antiviral therapy. J Hepatol 2008;49:329-338.
9. Chen M, Sallberg M, Sonnerborg A, Weiland O, Mattsson L, Jin L, et al. Limited humoral immunity in hepatitis C virus infection. Gastroenterology 1999;116:135-143.
10. Cerny A, Chisari FV. Pathogenesis of chronic hepatitis C: immunological features of hepatic injury and viral persistence. Hepatology 1999;30:595-601.
11. Rosen HR. Hepatitis C pathogenesis: mechanisms of viral clearance and liver injury. Liver Transpl 2003;9:S35-S43.
12. MacDonald AJ, Duffy M, Brady MT, McKiernan S, Hall W, Hegarty J, et al. CD4 T helper type 1 and regulatory T cells induced against the same epitopes on the core protein in hepatitis C virus-infected persons. J Infect Dis 2002;185:720-727.
13. Sugimoto K, Stadanlick J, Ikeda F, Brensinger C, Furth EE, Alter HJ, et al. Influence of ethnicity in the outcome of hepatitis C virus infection and cellular immune response. Hepatology 2003;37:590-599.
14. Marie JC, Letterio JJ, Gavin M, Rudensky AY. TGF-beta1 maintains suppressor function and Foxp3 expression in CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. J Exp Med 2005;201:1061-1067.
15. Murai M, Turovskaya O, Kim G, Madan R, Karp CL, Cheroutre H, et al. Interleukin 10 acts on regulatory T cells to maintain expression of the transcription factor Foxp3 and suppressive function in mice with colitis. Nat Immunol 2009;10:1178-1184.
16. Kimura T, Saito T, Yoshimura M, Yixuan S, Baba M, Ji G, et al. Association of transforming growth factor-beta 1 functional polymorphisms with natural clearance of hepatitis C virus. J Infect Dis 2006;193:1371-1374.
17. Grakoui A, Wychowski C, Lin C, Feinstone SM, Rice CM. Expression and identification of hepatitis C virus polyprotein cleavage products. J Virol 1993;67:1385-1395.
18. Barth H, Schnober EK, Zhang F, Linhardt RJ, Depla E, Boson B, et al. Viral and cellular determinants of the hepatitis C virus envelope-heparan sulfate interaction. J Virol 2006;80:10579-10590.
19. Crovatto M, Pozzato G, Zorat F, Pussini E, Nascimben F, Baracetti S, et al. Peripheral blood neutrophils from hepatitis C virus-infected patients are replication sites of the virus. Haematologica 2000;85:356-361.
20. Roehlen N, Crouchet E, Baumert TF. Liver fibrosis: mechanistic concepts and therapeutic perspectives. Cells 2020;9:875.
21. Correia MP, Cardoso EM, Pereira CF, Neves R, Uhrberg M, Arosa FA. Hepatocytes and IL-15: a favorable microenvironment for T cell survival and CD8+ T cell differentiation. J Immunol 2009;182:6149-6159.
22. Sun J, Tumurbaatar B, Jia J, Diao H, Bodola F, Lemon SM, et al. Parenchymal expression of CD86/B7.2 contributes to hepatitis C virus-related liver injury. J Virol 2005;79:10730-10739.
23. Chen W, Xu Y, Li H, Tao W, Xiang Y, Huang B, et al. HCV genomic RNA activates the NLRP3 inflammasome in human myeloid cells. PLoS One 2014;9:e84953.
24. Appay V, Rowland-Jones SL. RANTES: a versatile and controversial chemokine. Trends Immunol 2001;22:83-87.
25. Golden-Mason L, Burton JR Jr, Castelblanco N, Klarquist J, Benlloch S, Wang C, et al. Loss of IL-7 receptor alpha-chain (CD127) expression in acute HCV infection associated with viral persistence. Hepatology 2006;44:1098-1109.

26. Blight KJ, McKeating JA, Rice CM. Highly permissive cell lines for subgenomic and genomic hepatitis C virus RNA replication. J Virol 2002;76:13001-13014.
27. Wakita T, Pietschmann T, Kato T, Date T, Miyamoto M, Zhao Z, et al. Production of infectious hepatitis C virus in tissue culture from a cloned viral genome. Nat Med 2005;11:791-796.
28. Latchman Y, Wood CR, Chernova T, Chaudhary D, Borde M, Chernova I, et al. PD-L2 is a second ligand for PD-1 and inhibits T cell activation. Nat Immunol 2001;2:261-268.
29. Barber DL, Wherry EJ, Masopust D, Zhu B, Allison JP, Sharpe AH, et al. Restoring function in exhausted CD8 T cells during chronic viral infection. Nature 2006;439:682-687.
30. Wherry EJ, Ha SJ, Kaech SM, Haining WN, Sarkar S, Kalia V, et al. Molecular signature of CD8+ T cell exhaustion during chronic viral infection. Immunity 2007;27:670-684.
31. Sharpe AH, Freeman GJ. The B7-CD28 superfamily. Nat Rev Immunol 2002;2:116-126.
32. Gehring AJ, Sun D, Kennedy PT, Nolte-'t Hoen E, Lim SG, Wasser S, et al. The level of viral antigen presented by hepatocytes influences CD8 T-cell function. J Virol 2007;81:2940-2949.
33. Golden-Mason L, Palmer B, Klarquist J, Mengshol JA, Castelblanco N, Rosen HR. Upregulation of PD-1 expression on circulating and intrahepatic hepatitis C virus-specific CD8+ T cells associated with reversible immune dysfunction. J Virol 2007;81:9249-9258.
34. Nakamoto N, Kaplan DE, Coleclough J, Li Y, Valiga ME, Kaminski M, et al. Functional restoration of HCV-specific CD8 T cells by PD-1 blockade is defined by PD-1 expression and compartmentalization. Gastroenterology 2008;134:1927-1937, 1937.e1-e2.
35. Missale G, Bertoni R, Lamonaca V, Valli A, Massari M, Mori C, et al. Different clinical behaviors of acute hepatitis C virus infection are associated with different vigor of the anti-viral cell-mediated immune response. J Clin Invest 1996;98:706-714.
36. Erickson AL, Kimura Y, Igarashi S, Eichelberger J, Houghton M, Sidney J, et al. The outcome of hepatitis C virus infection is predicted by escape mutations in epitopes targeted by cytotoxic T lymphocytes. Immunity 2001;15:883-895.
37. Tester I, Smyk-Pearson S, Wang P, Wertheimer A, Yao E, Lewinsohn DM, et al. Immune evasion versus recovery after acute hepatitis C virus infection from a shared source. J Exp Med 2005;201:1725-1731.
38. Urbani S, Amadei B, Tola D, Massari M, Schivazappa S, Missale G, et al. PD-1 expression in acute hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is associated with HCV-specific CD8 exhaustion. J Virol 2006;80:11398-11403.
39. Nakamoto N, Cho H, Shaked A, Olthoff K, Valiga ME, Kaminski M, et al. Synergistic reversal of intrahepatic HCV-specific CD8 T cell exhaustion by combined PD-1/CTLA-4 blockade. PLoS Pathog 2009;5:e1000313.
40. Perrella A, Vitiello L, Atripaldi L, Conti P, Sbreglia C, Altamura S, et al. Elevated CD4+/CD25+ T cell frequency and function during acute hepatitis C presage chronic evolution. Gut 2006;55:1370-1371.
41. Smyk-Pearson S, Golden-Mason L, Klarquist J, Burton JR Jr, Tester IA, Wang CC, et al. Functional suppression by FoxP3+ CD4+CD25(high) regulatory T cells during acute hepatitis C virus infection. J Infect Dis 2008;197:46-57.
42. Hall CH, Kassel R, Tacke RS, Hahn YS. HCV+ hepatocytes induce human regulatory CD4+ T cells through the production of TGF-beta. PLoS One 2010;5:e12154.
43. Taniguchi H, Kato N, Otsuka M, Goto T, Yoshida H, Shiratori Y, et al. Hepatitis C virus core protein upregulates transforming growth factor-beta 1 transcription. J Med Virol 2004;72:52-59.
44. Boudreau HE, Emerson SU, Korzeniowska A, Jendrysik MA, Leto TL. Hepatitis C virus (HCV) proteins induce NADPH oxidase 4 expression in a transforming growth factor beta-dependent manner: a new contributor to HCV-induced oxidative stress. J Virol 2009;83:12934-12946.
45. Valadi H, Ekstrom K, Bossios A, Sjostrand M, Lee JJ, Lotvall JO. Exosome-mediated transfer of mRNAs and microRNAs is a novel mechanism of genetic exchange between cells. Nat Cell Biol 2007;9:654-659.
46. Ibrahim SH, Hirsova P, Tomita K, Bronk SF, Werneburg NW, Harrison SA, et al. Mixed lineage kinase 3 mediates release of C-X-C motif ligand 10-bearing chemotactic extracellular vesicles from lipotoxic hepatocytes. Hepatology 2016;63:731-744.
47. Verma VK, Li H, Wang R, Hirsova P, Mushref M, Liu Y, et al. Alcohol stimulates macrophage activation through caspase-dependent hepatocyte derived release of CD40L containing extracellular vesicles. J Hepatol 2016;64:651-660.
48. Saha B, Kodys K, Adejumo A, Szabo G. Circulating and exosome-packaged hepatitis C single-stranded RNA induce monocyte differentiation via TLR7/8 to polarized macrophages and fibrocytes. J Immunol 2017;198:1974-1984.
49. Cobb DA, Kim OK, Golden-Mason L, Rosen HR, Hahn YS. Hepatocyte-derived exosomes promote T follicular regulatory cell expansion during hepatitis C virus infection. Hepatology 2018;67:71-85.
50. Devhare PB, Sasaki R, Shrivastava S, Di Bisceglie AM, Ray R, Ray RB. Exosome-mediated intercellular communication between

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0032

hepatitis C virus-infected hepatocytes and hepatic stellate cells. J Virol 2017;91:e02225-16.
51. Bukong TN, Momen-Heravi F, Kodys K, Bala S, Szabo G. Exosomes from hepatitis C infected patients transmit HCV infection and contain replication competent viral RNA in complex with Ago2-miR122-HSP90. PLoS Pathog 2014;10:e1004424.
52. Kim OK, Nam DE, Hahn YS. The pannexin 1/purinergic receptor P2X4 pathway controls the secretion of microRNA-containing exosomes by HCV-infected hepatocytes. Hepatology 2021;74:3409-3426.
53. Medvedev R, Hildt E, Ploen D. Look who's talking-the crosstalk between oxidative stress and autophagy supports exosomal-dependent release of HCV particles. Cell Biol Toxicol 2017;33:211-231.
54. Azam S, Jakaria M, Kim IS, Kim J, Haque ME, Choi DK. Regulation of toll-like receptor (TLR) signaling pathway by polyphenols in the treatment of age-linked neurodegenerative diseases: focus on TLR4 signaling. Front Immunol 2019;10:1000.
55. Grünvogel O, Colasanti O, Lee JY, Klöss V, Belouzard S, Reustle A, et al. Secretion of hepatitis C virus replication intermediates reduces activation of toll-like receptor 3 in hepatocytes. Gastroenterology 2018;154:2237-2251.e16.
56. Rubtsov YP, Rudensky AY. TGFbeta signalling in control of T-cell-mediated self-reactivity. Nat Rev Immunol 2007;7:443-453.
57. Ward SM, Fox BC, Brown PJ, Worthington J, Fox SB, Chapman RW, et al. Quantification and localisation of FOXP3+ T lymphocytes and relation to hepatic inflammation during chronic HCV infection. J Hepatol 2007;47:316-324.
58. Claassen MA, de Knegt RJ, Tilanus HW, Janssen HL, Boonstra A. Abundant numbers of regulatory T cells localize to the liver of chronic hepatitis C infected patients and limit the extent of fibrosis. J Hepatol 2010;52:315-321.
59. Linterman MA, Pierson W, Lee SK, Kallies A, Kawamoto S, Rayner TF, et al. Foxp3+ follicular regulatory T cells control the germinal center response. Nat Med 2011;17:975-982.
60. Chung Y, Tanaka S, Chu F, Nurieva RI, Martinez GJ, Rawal S, et al. Follicular regulatory T cells expressing Foxp3 and Bcl-6 suppress germinal center reactions. Nat Med 2011;17:983-988.
61. Wang L, Qiu J, Yu L, Hu X, Zhao P, Jiang Y. Increased numbers of CD5+CD19+CD1dhighIL-10+ Bregs, CD4+Foxp3+ Tregs, CD4+CXCR5+Foxp3+ follicular regulatory T (TFR) cells in CHB or CHC patients. J Transl Med 2014;12:251.
62. Sage PT, Sharpe AH. T follicular regulatory cells in the regulation of B cell responses. Trends Immunol 2015;36:410-418.
63. Mosnier JF, Degott C, Marcellin P, Henin D, Erlinger S, Benhamou JP. The intraportal lymphoid nodule and its environment in chronic active hepatitis C: an immunohistochemical study. Hepatology 1993;17:366-371.
64. Spaan M, Kreefft K, de Graav GN, Brouwer WP, de Knegt RJ, ten Kate FJ, et al. CD4+ CXCR5+ T cells in chronic HCV infection produce less IL-21, yet are efficient at supporting B cell responses. J Hepatol 2015;62:303-310.
65. Raziorrouh B, Sacher K, Tawar RG, Emmerich F, Neumann-Haefelin C, Baumert TF, et al. Virus-specific CD4+ T cells have functional and phenotypic characteristics of follicular T-helper cells in patients with acute and chronic HCV infections. Gastroenterology 2016;150:696-706.e3.
66. Ghosh S, Bhowmik S, Majumdar S, Goswami A, Chakraborty J, Gupta S, et al. The exosome encapsulated microRNAs as circulating diagnostic marker for hepatocellular carcinoma with low alpha-fetoprotein. Int J Cancer 2020;147:2934-2947.
67. Khatun M, Ray RB. Mechanisms underlying hepatitis C virus-associated hepatic Fibrosis. Cells 2019;8:1249.
68. Liao TL, Chen YM, Hsieh SL, Tang KT, Chen DY, Yang YY, et al. Hepatitis C virus-induced exosomal microRNAs and toll-like receptor 7 polymorphism regulate B-cell activating factor. mBio 2021;12:e0276421.
69. Thakuri BKC, Zhang J, Zhao J, Nguyen LN, Nguyen LNT, Schank M, et al. HCV-associated exosomes upregulate RUNXOR and RUNX1 expressions to promote MDSC expansion and suppressive functions through STAT3-miR124 Axis. Cells 2020;9:2715.
70. McGowan K, Simpson KJ, Petrik J. Expression profiles of exosomal microRNAs from HEV- and HCV-infected blood donors and patients: a pilot study. Viruses 2020;12:833.
71. Deng L, Jiang W, Wang X, Merz A, Hiet MS, Chen Y, et al. Syntenin regulates hepatitis C virus sensitivity to neutralizing antibody by promoting E2 secretion through exosomes. J Hepatol 2019;71:52-61.
72. Takenouchi T, Tsukimoto M, Iwamaru Y, Sugama S, Sekiyama K, Sato M, et al. Extracellular ATP induces unconventional release of glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase from microglial cells. Immunol Lett 2015;167:116-124.
73. Sandilos JK, Chiu YH, Chekeni FB, Armstrong AJ, Walk SF, Ravichandran KS, et al. Pannexin 1, an ATP release channel, is activated by caspase cleavage of its pore-associated C-terminal autoinhibitory region. J Biol Chem 2012;287:11303-11311.
74. Woehrle T, Yip L, Elkhal A, Sumi Y, Chen Y, Yao Y, et al. Pannexin-1 hemichannel-mediated ATP release together with P2X1 and P2X4 receptors regulate T-cell activation at the immune synapse. Blood 2010;116:3475-3484.

75. Csak T, Ganz M, Pespisa J, Kodys K, Dolganiuc A, Szabo G. Fatty acid and endotoxin activate inflammasomes in mouse hepatocytes that release danger signals to stimulate immune cells. Hepatology 2011;54:133-144.
76. Liao TL, Hsieh SL, Chen YM, Chen HH, Liu HJ, Lee HC, et al. Rituximab may cause increased hepatitis C virus viremia in rheumatoid arthritis patients through declining exosomal microRNA-155. Arthritis Rheumatol 2018;70:1209-1219.
77. Jiao X, Fan Z, Chen H, He P, Li Y, Zhang Q, et al. Serum and exosomal miR-122 and miR-199a as a biomarker to predict therapeutic efficacy of hepatitis C patients. J Med Virol 2017;89:1597-1605.
78. Bhattacharjee C, Singh M, Das D, Chaudhuri S, Mukhopadhyay A. Current therapeutics against HCV. Virusdisease 2021;32:228-243.
79. Lindow M, Kauppinen S. Discovering the first microRNA-targeted drug. J Cell Biol 2012;199:407-412.
80. Deng L, Jiang W, Wang X, Merz A, Hiet MS, Chen Y, et al. Syntenin regulates hepatitis C virus sensitivity to neutralizing antibody by promoting E2 secretion through exosomes. J Hepatol 2019;7:52-61.
81. Kim JH, Lee CH, Lee SW. Hepatitis C virus infection stimulates transforming growth factor-β1 expression through up-regulating miR-192. J Microbiol 2016;54:520-526.
82. Wang L, Cao D, Wang L, Zhao J, Nguyen LN, Dang X, et al. HCV-associated exosomes promote myeloid-derived suppressor cell expansion via inhibiting miR-124 to regulate T follicular cell differentiation and function. Cell Discov 2018;4:51.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0237
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:77-98

Review

Pathogenesis and treatment of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and its fibrosis

Kuei-Chuan Lee[1,2], Pei-Shan Wu[1,2,3], and Han-Chieh Lin[1,2]

[1]Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Medicine, Taipei Veterans General Hospital, Taipei; [2]Department of Medicine, National Yang Ming Chiao Tung University School of Medicine, Taipei; [3]Endoscopy Center for Diagnosis and Treatment, Taipei Veterans General Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan

The initial presentation of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) is hepatic steatosis. The dysfunction of lipid metabolism within hepatocytes caused by genetic factors, diet, and insulin resistance causes lipid accumulation. Lipotoxicity, oxidative stress, mitochondrial dysfunction, and endoplasmic reticulum stress would further contribute to hepatocyte injury and death, leading to inflammation and immune dysfunction in the liver. During the healing process, the accumulation of an excessive amount of fibrosis might occur while healing. During the development of NASH and liver fibrosis, the gut-liver axis, adipose-liver axis, and renin-angiotensin system (RAS) may be dysregulated and impaired. Translocation of bacteria or its end-products entering the liver could activate hepatocytes, Kupffer cells, and hepatic stellate cells, exacerbating hepatic steatosis, inflammation, and fibrosis. Bile acids regulate glucose and lipid metabolism through Farnesoid X receptors in the liver and intestine. Increased adipose tissue-derived non-esterified fatty acids would aggravate hepatic steatosis. Increased leptin also plays a role in hepatic fibrogenesis, and decreased adiponectin may contribute to hepatic insulin resistance. Moreover, dysregulation of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors in the liver, adipose, and muscle tissues may impair lipid metabolism. In addition, the RAS may contribute to hepatic fatty acid metabolism, inflammation, and fibrosis. The treatment includes lifestyle modification, pharmacological therapy, and non-pharmacological therapy. Currently, weight reduction by lifestyle modification or surgery is the most effective therapy. However, vitamin E, pioglitazone, and obeticholic acid have also been suggested. In this review, we will introduce some new clinical trials and experimental therapies for the treatment of NASH and related fibrosis. **(Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:77-98)**

Keywords: Liver fibrosis; Steatohepatitis; Fatty liver

Corresponding author : Kuei-Chuan Lee
Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Medicine, Taipei Veterans General Hospital, 201, Section 2, Shih-Pai Road, Taipei 11217, Taiwan
Tel: +886 2 2871 2121, Fax: +886 2 2873 9318, E-mail: kclee2@vghtpe.gov.tw
https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4318-5511

Han-Chieh Lin
Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Medicine, Taipei Veterans General Hospital, 201, Section 2, Shih-Pai Road, Taipei 11217, Taiwan
Tel: +886 2 2871 2121, Fax: +886 2 2873 9318, E-mail: hclin@vghtpe.gov.tw
https://orcid.org/0000-0003-3034-2637

Editor: Dae Won Jun, Hanyang University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Aug. 4, 2022 / **Revised :** Oct. 1, 2022 / **Accepted :** Oct. 11, 2022

INTRODUCTION

Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is currently the most prevalent type of liver disease worldwide. NAFLD is a wide hepatic spectrum, ranging from simple steatosis to non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH), which leads to progressive fibrosis, cirrhosis, and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC).[1] Fat accumulation in hepatocytes sensitizes hepatocytes to injury, leading to cell death, inflammatory cells recruitment, and activation of hepatic stellate cells (HSCs).[2] The pathogenesis of NASH and its fibrosis has been broadly investigated for decades, and the development and progression of NASH and liver fibrosis involves complex interplay of numerous determinants. Understanding of the pathogenesis of NASH and liver fibrosis is important for the diagnosis and development of treatment. Although new drugs have been developed to target liver inflammation and fibrosis in NASH, only a minority of patients achieve treatment response.[3] Thus, there is still an urgent need to develop new therapeutic agents for NASH.

PATHOGENESIS OF NASH

Development of hepatic steatosis

Diet

High-fat diet can result in hepatic steatosis in humans. Liver fat increased by 35% in overweight non-diabetic women after a 2-week isocaloric high-fat diet (56% total energy from fat).[4] A 3 days of high-fat, high-energy diet in healthy males resulted in major increases in plasma triglyceride (TG) and non-esterified fatty acid (NEFA) concentrations and hepatic TG.[5] A single energy-dense, high-fat meal induced net lipid accumulation in the liver of healthy subjects.[6] Moreover, palm oil administration in lean, healthy individuals decreased whole-body, hepatic, and adipose tissue insulin sensitivity by 25%, 15%, and 34%, respectively; increased hepatic TG and ATP content by 35% and 16%, respectively; increased hepatic gluconeogenesis by 70%; and decreased glycogenolysis by 20%.[7] In young Finnish adults, serum fatty acid saturation independently predicted the 10-year risk for fatty liver and omega-6 (ω6) fatty acids inversely associated with fatty liver.[8] A long-term hypercaloric diet, rich in saturated fatty acid (SFA), showed a marked increase in liver fat content by 50%, and ω6 polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) decreased fatty liver in overweight humans.[9] However, a lipidomic analysis showed that the n-6:n-3 free fatty acids (FFAs) ratio increased in NASH livers as compared to normal livers.[10] These studies suggested that hypercaloric diet, especially high in fat and sugar, contribute to the development of fatty liver; SFA and fructose are more detrimental, but the role of the ω6/ω3 fat ratio also remains controversial.

Physical inactivity

NAFLD patients have low level of physical activity compared to normal controls. Gerber et al.[11] showed that the average physical activity, counted by an accelerometer of NAFLD subjects, was about 28.7 counts/minute/day. In an Asian group, prolonged sitting time and decreased physical activity level were found to positively associated with the prevalence of NAFLD, and these associations were also observed in subjects with body mass index <23 kg/m^2.[12] However, the detail mechanism of sedentary behavior or low physical activity leading to fatty liver remains unclear. Lower expenditure of energy or lower skeletal muscle mass might explain a possible connection between sedentary behavior

Abbreviations:

ACC, acetyl-coenzyme A carboxylase; AMPK, AMP-activated protein kinase; ANG, angiotensin; ASK1, apoptosis signaling kinase 1; CHOP, C/EBP homologous protein; DGAT2, diacylglycerol O-acyltransferase 2; DJBL, duodenal-Jejunal bypass liner; DMR, duodenal mucosal resurfacing; DNL, *de novo* lipogenesis; ER, endoplasmic reticulum; ESG, endoscopic sleeve gastroplasty; FFA, free fatty acid; FGF, fibroblast growth factor; FMT, fecal microbiota transplantation; FXR, farnesoid X receptor; GCKR, glucokinase regulatory protein; GLP-1, glucagon-like peptide-1; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; Hh, hedgehog; HSC, hepatic stellate cell; HSD17B13, hydroxysteroid 17-beta dehydrogenase 13; HVPG, hepatic venous pressure gradient; IGB, intragastric balloons; IL, interleukin; IRE1, inositol-requiring enzyme 1; IRGM, immunity-related GTPase M; KC, Kupffer cell; LSG, laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy; MBOAT7, membrane-bound O-acyltransferase domain-containing protein 7; miRNA, microRNA; NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; NAS, NAFLD activity score; NASH, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis; NEFA, non-esterified fatty acid; OCA, obeticholic acid; PAI-1, plasminogen activator inhibitor-1; PERK, protein kinase R (double-stranded RNA-activated protein kinase)-like ER kinases; PNPLA3, patatin-like phospholipase domain-containing 3; PPAR, proliferator-activated receptor; PRR, (pro)renin receptor; PUFA, polyunsaturated fatty acid; RAS, renin-angiotensin system; RCT, randomized controlled trial; SCD-1, stearoyl-coenzyme A desaturase 1; SCFA, short-chain fatty acid; SFA, saturated fatty acid; SGLT2, sodium-glucose cotransporter 2; SNP, single nucleotide polymorphism; SREBP1c, sterol receptor binding protein 1-c; TG, triglyceride; TGF, transforming growth factor; THR-β, thyroid hormone receptor-β; TLR, toll-like receptor; TM6SF2, transmembrane 6 superfamily 2; TNF, tumor necrosis factor; TNFR1, TNF receptor 1; UPR, unfolded protein response; VLDL, very-low-density lipoprotein; XBP-1, X-box-binding protein 1; ω6, omega-6

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0237

and NAFLD.

Insulin resistance

NAFLD is strongly associated with reduced whole body insulin sensitivity, as well as increased hepatic and adipose tissue insulin resistance.[13,14] Insulin resistance can lead to hepatic fat accumulation by increasing FFA delivery to the liver, increasing *de novo* lipogenesis (DNL), and decreasing hepatic fatty acid oxidation. A landmark study performed by Donnelly et al.[15] demonstrated that in NAFLD patients, about 59% liver triacylglycerol arose from NEFAs, 26.1% from DNL, and 14.9% from the diet, and that the liver demonstrated reciprocal use of adipose and dietary fatty acids. DNL was elevated in the fasting state without diurnal variation.[15] Insulin resistance can impair the insulin suppression of lipolysis of peripheral adipose tissues, leading to increased delivery of FFAs to the liver.[16] Insulin can stimulate sterol receptor binding protein 1-c (SREBP1c), increasing DNL in the liver.[17,18] Chronic hyperinsulinemia results in the cytoplasmic localization and inactivation of Foxa2 phosphorylation in hepatocytes, thereby promoting lipid accumulation and insulin resistance in the liver.[19]

Genetic factors

There are several gene variants associated with NAFLD and NASH. The first fatty liver gene identified by Romeo et al.[20] is patatin-like phospholipase domain-containing 3 (PNPLA3). The single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) rs738409 causes the missense sequence variation I148M, impairing the phospholipase activity and increasing hepatic fat content.[20] Glucokinase regulatory protein (GCKR) can regulate hepatic glucose uptake and hepatic glucokinase activity, and the intronic SNP rs780094 is associated with hepatic lipid content.[21,22] The SNP rs1260326 (C>T; P446L), GCKRP446L can decrease the inhibition of glucokinase, leading to increased glycolytic flux to hepatocytes, then hepatic steatosis.[23] The rs58542926 (G>A; E167K) variant, transmembrane 6 superfamily 2 (TM6SF2), was associated with increased hepatic TG content.[24] The inhibition of TM6SF2 in hepatocytes reduced the secretion of very-low-density lipoprotein (VLDL), leading to the retention of TGs.[25] In a Taiwanese population, a variant in the immunity-related GTPase M (IRGM) gene (rs10065172 TT genotype) independently increased the odds ratio of NAFLD by 2.04 by altering hepatic lipid metabolism through the autophagy pathway.[26] Similarly, the IRGM rs10065172 variant increased the risk for hepatic steatosis, but not for liver inflammation or fibrosis, in obese Italian children.[27] Recently, the mechanisms underlying metabolic and genetic components of NAFLD were found to be fundamentally different in patients. The metabolic component is characterized by hepatic oversupply of sugars and lipids, while the genetic component is characterized by impaired hepatic mitochondrial function, reducing the liver's ability to metabolize these substrates.[28]

Epigenetic factor

Using an epigenome-wide association study in peripheral blood cells, 22 CpGs were found to be associated with hepatic fat in European participants; 19 CpGs were annotated to 18 unique genes upregulated in the liver, including DHCR24, SLC43A1, CPT1A, SREBF1, SC4MOL, and SLC9A3R1.[29] Some alternations of intrahepatic microRNA (miRNA) have been associated with hepatic steatosis. The serum levels of miR-122 and miR-192 were upregulated in patients with simple steatosis compared to normal controls.[30] The administration of exosomes transfected with obesity-associated miRNA induced hepatic steatosis in lean mice.[31] miR-122 inhibition in normal mice caused increased hepatic fatty acid oxidation.[32] Decreased miR-122-5p in the human liver was associated with impaired fatty acid usage.[33] However, the deletion of mouse miR-122 resulted in hepatosteatosis, inflammation, and the development of tumors.[34] The expression of miR-34 was elevated in NAFLD patients. miR-34a down-regulated autophagy in hepatocytes by targeting ATG4B and Rab-8B and suppressed mitochondrial biogenesis, leading to lipids accumulation in the liver.[35]

Lipotoxicity

Endoplasmic reticulum (ER) stress

The ER is responsible for protein folding, and the accumulation of misfolded or unfolded proteins leads to stress and the activation of the unfolded protein response (UPR).[36] There are three sensor proteins that activate UPR, namely the inositol-requiring enzyme 1 (IRE1), the protein kinase R (double-stranded RNA-activated protein kinase)-like ER kinases (PERK), and the activating transcription factor 6. The UPR can cause inflammation, inflammasome activation, and death of hepatocytes.[37] Patients with NASH have been shown to be specifically associated with failure to generate X-box-binding

protein 1 (XBP-1) protein and activation of JNK.[38] Palmitate can induce the ER stress response, as demonstrated by the increase in C/EBP homologous protein (CHOP) expression, eIF2-alpha phosphorylation, XBP-1 splicing, and JNK activation with increased expression of the BH3-only proteins PUMA and Bim.[39] Perturbation of membrane lipid composition could promote IRE1 and PERK activation, suggesting a lipid-sensing mechanism for ER sensors to activate the UPR.[40] NFATc1 drives hepatocyte damage and inflammation through activation of the PERK-CHOP.[41]

Mitochondrial dysfunction

Increased hepatic fat would increase hepatic fat oxidation with increased mitochondrial respiration;[42,43] however, decreased efficiency of respiratory chain complexes with greater mitochondrial uncoupling and leaking activity was found in patients with NAFLD.[43,44] Chronic mitochondrial dysfunction in the state of lipid overload led to excessive leakage of electrons from mitochondrial respiratory complexes, leading to oxidative stress.[45] Voltage-dependent anion channel acted as an early sensor of lipid toxicity, and its glycogen synthase kinase 3-mediated phosphorylation status controlled outer mitochondrial membrane permeabilization in hepatocytes with fat accumulation.[46] Exposure of hepatocytes to saturated FFAs caused mitochondrial depolarization, cytochrome c release, and increased ROS production.[47] Furthermore, intake of SFAs can affect the composition of mitochondrial membrane and decrease the efficiency of the respiratory transport chain, resulting in increased oxidative stress and chronic liver injury.[48] Peng et al.[49] found that hepatic cardiolipin and ubiquinone accumulated in NAFL and the levels of acylcarnitine increased with NASH, and proposed that increased levels of cardiolipin and ubiquinone may help to preserve mitochondrial function in early NAFLD; however, mitochondrial function eventually fails with the progression of NASH, leading to increased acylcarnitine. Moreover, SFAs increased ceramide synthesis in hepatocytes,[50] which correlated with hepatocyte death via mitochondrial failure.[51,52]

Lysosomal dysfunction

It has been shown that hepatic activity of lysosomal acid lipase and lysosomal acidification, which are markers of lysosomal dysfunction, are decreased in patients with NAFLD.[53,54] Both steatotic- and asparagine-treated hepatocytes showed reduced lysosomal acidity and retention of lysosomal calcium.[55] FFAs resulted in Bax translocation to lysosomes and lysosomal destabilization with the release of cathepsin B into the cytosol, leading to nuclear factor kappa B-dependent tumor necrosis factor alpha expression and apoptosis.[56,57] Lysosomal permeabilization and cathepsin B redistribution into the cytoplasm occurred several hours prior to mitochondrial dysfunction.[47] Furthermore, autophagy could sequester intracellular proteins and organelles in double-membrane vesicles (autophagosomes) to lysosomes for degradation. Autophagy in the regulation of intracellular lipid stores is called macrolipophagy.[58] Toxic fatty acids inhibited autophagic flux with reduction in lipophagy, which could lead to cell injury.[59]

Oxidative stress and apoptosis

The main mechanisms of fatty acid-induced damage are oxidative stress and increased pro-inflammatory cytokines.[2] These insults from the ER stress, mitochondrial dysfunction, and oxidative stress in the hepatocytes after lipid accumulation could cause lipotoxicity, leading to apoptosis, necroptotis, or pyrotosis.[60,61] Saturated FFAs can also induce apoptosis through intrinsic and extrinsic pathways. The oxidative stress and ER stress induced by accumulated fatty acids can activate CHOP and JNK, and then upregulate Bim, Bax, and Bak, leading to the release of cytochrome C and caspase 9-associated apoptosis. In addition, death receptor pathways, including TRAIL/TRAIL receptor, tumor necrosis factor-α (TNFα)/TNF receptor 1 (TNFR1), and Fas ligand/Fas, were noted to be activated by FFAs on hepatocytes.[62]

DEVELOPMENT OF NASH FIBROSIS

Liver fibrosis is the most important risk factor for liver cancer in patients with NAFLD and decompensated cirrhosis.[63] In patients with NAFLD, age and comorbidities, such as hypertension, overweighted, and diabetes mellitus, are risk factors for progression of fibrosis.[64-66]

Lipotoxic damage in hepatocytes would release cytokines and chemokines, and then activate innate and adaptive immune cells, including macrophages, dendritic cells, lymphocytes, and neutrophils, leading to an inflammation cascade.[67] Damaged hepatocytes also release extracellular vesicles containing exosomes, microparticles, and apoptotic bodies. These vesicles, containing signaling proteins, sonic hedgehog (Hh), lipids, mRNAs, non-coding RNAs, and DNA, can in-

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0237

duce inflammation, fibrosis by activating non-parenchymal cells, and recruitment of immune cells.[68,69] Meanwhile, apoptotic bodies can also be engulfed by stellate cells and subsequently induce HSC activation, which increases the expression of α–smooth muscle actin, transforming growth factor β (TGFβ), and collagen type I.[70] Moreover, the Hh pathway was not only activated in hepatocytes, leading to macrophage recruitment and progression of inflammation,[71] but it also induced epithelial-to-mesenchymal transitions in ductular-type progenitors.[72] Cholangiocytes and natural killer T cells also activated Hh-osteopontin pathway and promoted fibrogenic responses of HSCs in NASH.[73,74]

Toxic fatty acids were able to directly affect Kupffer cells (KCs) and HSCs, which may contribute to the activation of inflammation and fibrosis. Palmitic acids activated toll-like receptor (TLR) 2 and TLR4 in macrophages with the induction of inflammatory signaling.[75] KCs exhibited a pro-inflammatory response with elevated levels of TNFα, interleukin (IL)-6, and IL-1β after treatment by palmitic acids.[75] Palmitate induced ER stress and actin stress fiber formation in activated HSCs. Oleate induced the inflammatory signal and decreased cytoskeleton proteins in activated HSCs.[76] Free cholesterol was increased in patients with NAFLD, and the accumulation of free cholesterol in HSCs sensitized these cells to TGFβ-induced activation, leading to exaggerated liver fibrosis in NASH.[10,77]

Insulin exerts profibrogenic activity. Insulin itself induces HSC mitogenesis and collagen synthesis.[78,79] However, insulin enhances the expression of smooth muscle actin-α in quiescent, but not in activated HSC through the PI3K/Akt-p70S6K pathway.[80]

HSCs express PNPLA3 and membrane-bound O-acyltransferase domain-containing protein 7 (MBOAT7).[81,82] Increased PNPLA3 expression reduces lipid droplet content in HSCs.[81] Autophagy promotes loss of lipids in HSCs to provide energy for HSC activation.[83] PNPLA3^{I148M} can interfere with retinol production and release of HSCs by affecting the retinyl-palmitate lipase activity, which may promote fibrosis progression.[81] The MBOAT7 rs641738 T allele was associated with lower protein expression in the liver, and changes in plasma phosphatidylinositol species were consistent with decreased MBOAT7 function.[82] Hepatocyte-specific knockout of *Mboat7* increased hepatic fibrosis with increased total lysophosphatidylinositol levels,[84] which could promote the initiation of HSC activation by stimulating G-protein receptor 55.[85] TM6SF2^{E167K} was associated with higher risk of advanced fibrosis in NAFLD patients.[86] Furthermore, the gene encoding for the hepatic hydroxysteroid 17-beta dehydrogenase 13 (HSD17B13) regulated hepatic phospholipids and chronic liver injury in NAFLD patients.[87-89] The HSD17B13 rs72613567 variant led to the loss of enzyme function, contributing to reduced inflammation and fibrosis in the liver.[88] In addition, the HSD17B13 rs72613567 variant affected retinol metabolism by reducing the activity of retinyl-palmitate lipase, mediating antifibrotic and anti-inflammation effects.[90]

Hypomethylation or hypermethylation of genes involved in the wound-healing process in NAFLD could be used to distinguish between patients with mild fibrosis from those with severe fibrosis in NAFLD. Hypermethylation at specific CpGs within TGFβ1 and PDGF, and hypomethylation at specific CpGs within peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor (PPAR) α and PPARδ in patients with mild fibrosis, were found.[91]

ORGAN-ORGAN INTERACTION LEADING TO PROGRESSION OF NASH AND ITS FIBROSIS

Gut-liver axis

Compared with healthy adults, patients with NAFLD had a higher proportion of Firmicutes in the intestine, and the relative numbers of Bacteroidetes, Enterobacteriaceae, and Ruminococcaceae families were reduced.[92,93] Dysbiosis may disturb gut barriers, and bacteria and its products from the gut, such as endotoxin and cytokines, that promote inflammation, could enter the liver through blood, and activate the immune response in the liver and increase liver inflammation and fibrosis.[94,95] Compared with healthy people, patients with NAFLD had dysbiosis and increased intestinal permeability, and patients with steatohepatitis were observed to have endotoxemia.[96,97] Low-dose endotoxin stimulations were able to produce steatohepatitis in obese mice.[98] Conversely, blocking the signals caused by the immune system to recognize bacteria and its products effectively improved the severity of steatohepatitis.[99,100] Bacterial products and translocated lipopolysaccharide stimulated the hepatic innate immune system through TLR4 signaling, predominantly on HSCs and KCs.[101] TLR4-mediated stimulation of HSCs led to HSC activation and KC activation.[102] In turn, KCs produced TGFβ, stimu-

lating fibrogenesis, and the proinflammatory cytokines, propagating hepatic inflammation. KCs also produced reactive oxygen species, leading to the generation of other reactive nitrogen species and local tissue damage.[102,103] Mice fed with high-fat diet for only 1 week underwent a diet-induced dysbiosis, driving the damage on gut vascular barrier and causing bacterial translocation into the liver.[104] However, only 42.1% of patients with steatohepatitis had elevated endotoxin levels[105] and 39.1% of fatty liver patients had increased intestinal permeability.[106] Therefore, bacterial translocation due to gut barrier impairment may play a partial role in the development and progression of NAFLD and its fibrosis.

Some metabolites in the blood and feces have been found to rely on bacterial synthesis, including choline and choline-related metabolites, bile acids, short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs), and ethanol, which may contribute to the pathogenesis of fatty liver. In animal experiments, the gut microbiota of mice fed with high-fat diet could convert choline into trimethylamine, reduce the bioavailability of choline, and produce a phenomenon similar to choline-deficient diet, leading to decreased excretion of VLDL from liver cells and increased liver fat accumulation.[107] Intestinal dysbiosis would increase the deoxycholic acid:chenodeoxycholic acid ratio, reduce the activation of farnesoid X receptor (FXR) signaling in the liver, reduce insulin sensitivity, increase glycogen and lipogenesis, and reduce fatty acid oxidation in the liver.[108] At the same time, gut dysbiosis also inhibited FXR, reduced the secretion of fibroblast growth factor (FGF) 15/19, leading to fatty liver.[109] SCFAs, such as acetate, propionate, and butyrate, are the products of bacterial fermentation of carbohydrate in the gut.[110] SCFAs in the intestine enter the liver through the portal vein, and acetate and propionate are precursors for fatty acid synthesis and gluconeogenesis, promoting liver fat accumulation.[111] Furthermore, SCFAs bind to G protein-coupled receptors of intestinal neuroendocrine L cells to secrete peptide YY and glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1), which promote nutrient absorption and liver fat generation.[112] Butyrate may activate the AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK) pathway in the liver, leading to the inhibition of oxidative stress and inflammation, upregulation of fatty acid oxidation, downregulation of fat synthesis genes, and reduced hepatosteatosis.[113] Interestingly, patients with NAFLD and severe hepatic fibrosis had more acetate in the stool, while those with milder severity of NAFLD had more SCFAs in butyrate and propionate.[114] Moreover, the concentration of ethanol in the blood of patients with NAFLD increased, and the bacteria *Proteobacteria*, which could produce ethanol, also tended to increase in patients with steatohepatitis. Ethanol destroys the tight binding protein of the intestinal wall, increases the intestinal permeability, and increases the endotoxin entering blood and the liver, leading to liver inflammation.[115]

Adipose tissue-liver axis

Adipose tissues secrete adiponectin, leptin, and some proinflammatory cytokines, such as IL-6 and TNFα, which would influence the liver. Adiponectin binds to adiponectin receptors 1 and 2, respectively activates AMPK and PPAR-alpha pathways in the liver, and stimulate glucose use and fatty acid oxidation.[116,117] Adiponectin also increases carnitine palmitoyltransferase I activity, enhances hepatic fatty acid oxidation, and decreases the activities of acetyl-CoA carboxylase and fatty acid synthase.[118] However, adiponectin produced mainly from white adipose tissue is decreased in NASH patients.[119] When obesity develops, leptin secreted from white fatty tissue is increased to inhibit appetite and increase fatty acid oxidation.[120] However, in obese individuals, leptin resistance develops, and the increased leptin would exert proinflammatory activity. The serum leptin levels are positively associated with the severity of liver inflammation and fibrosis.[121,122] Leptin augments the endothelin-1-induced contraction of HSCs.[123] Adipocytes also secrete TNFα,[124] which can increase insulin resistance and have pro-inflammatory effects.[125] TNFα increased the gene expression of Mcp1, Tgfb1, and Timp1 in hepatocytes, and the Tnf knockout improved glucose tolerance and significantly reduced the prevalence of hepatic steatosis and fibrosis in mice, indicating that TNFα plays a role in the development and progression of NASH.[126] IL-6 can be secreted from adipocytes, which can then increase the macrophage infiltration of adipose tissue.[127] IL-6 infusion induces hepatic insulin resistance through increased adipose tissue lipolysis.[128] These data suggest that IL-6 is involved in the pathogenesis of hepatic insulin resistance.

Renin-angiotensin system (RAS)

Hypertensive patients with biopsy-proven NAFLD on baseline RAS blockers had less advanced hepatic fibrosis.[129] Recently, a large retrospective study showed that angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors/angiotensin receptor blockers

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0237

were associated with lower risk of hepatocellular carcinoma and cirrhotic complications in patients with NAFLD.[130] These data suggested a beneficial effect of RAS blockers in NAFLD. Transgenic hypertensive rats overexpressing the mouse renin gene with elevated levels of tissue angiotensin II developed hepatic steatosis, inflammation, and fibrosis.[131] The mice lacking the renin gene fed with high-fat diet had decreased liver fat.[132] Aliskiren, a direct renin inhibitor, reduced hepatic steatosis in high-fat diet-fed mice and fibrosis in mice fed with methionine-choline-deficient diet.[133,134] When renin or prorenin binds to the (pro)renin receptor (PRR), in addition to increasing the production and role of angiotensin (ANG II dependent pathway), it activates TGFβ, plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1), fibronectin, and collagen I independently from Ang II (ANG II independent pathway).[135-137] Our group found that PRR contributed to liver fibrosis and HSC activation, and its down-regulation attenuated liver fibrosis through inactivation of the ERK/TGFβ1/Smad3 pathway.[138] These results indicate that renin and prorenin can directly activate renin (pro) receptor-related intracellular signaling pathways, including ERK, TGFβ, cyclooxygenease2, fibronectin, collagen I, and PAI-1 independently of angiotensin II to induce fibrosis. Moreover, Ren et al.[139] used N-acetylgalactosamine modified antisense oligonucleotides to suppress PRR expression in hepatocytes of high-fat diet-fed C57BL/6 mice, and found that PRR inhibition reduced acetyl-CoA carboxylase and pyruvate desorption hydrogenase protein expression. This change reprogrammed liver lipid metabolism, resulting in reduced lipid synthesis and increased fatty acid oxidation. As a result, liver PRR suppression attenuated diet-induced obesity and fatty liver.[139] The proposed pathogenesis that is involved from steatosis to fibrosis in patients with NAFLD is shown in Figure 1.

PROGRESSION OF NASH TO HCC

NASH is now the most common risk factor for HCC in the United States.[140] The potential pathways linking NASH to HCC include chronic inflammation of the liver,[141] alternations in

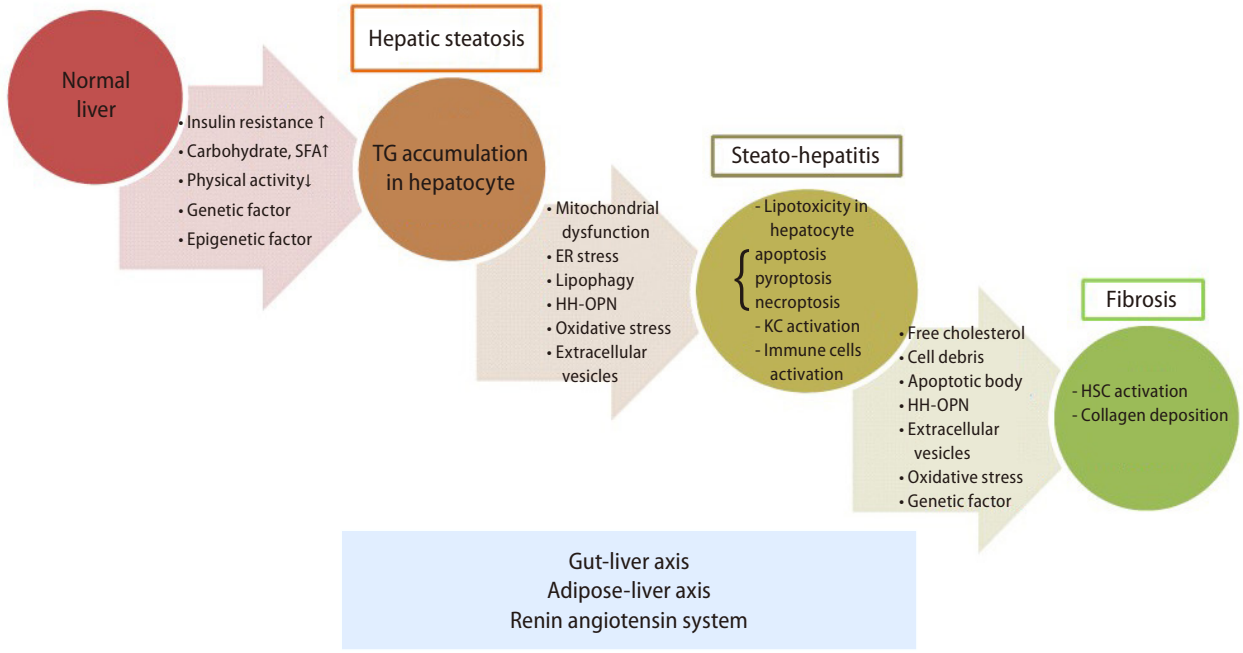


Figure 1. Progression of hepatic steatosis to inflammation and fibrosis in liver. Both metabolic and genetic factors contribute to the formation of hepatic steatosis. Fat accumulation in hepatocytes leads to organelles dysfunction and lipotoxicity. Then, oxidative stress species or signaling molecules are transmitted through extracellular vesicles or diffusion, activating other parenchymal and non-parenchymal cells, which subsequently causes inflammatory cascades, steatohepatitis, and liver fibrosis. On the other hand, gut-derived bacterial end-products, metabolites, gut hormones, adipose tissue-derived cytokines or adipokines, and renin-angiotensin-system all contribute to the progression from steatosis to inflammation and fibrosis. SFA, saturated fatty acid; TG, triglyceride; ER, endoplastic reticulum; HH-OPN, Hedgehog-osteopontin; KC, Kupffer cell; HSC, hepatic stellate cell.

 https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0237

immune response, lipid metabolism and gut microbiome,[142] and genetic factors. Enhanced IL-6 and TNF production during NAFLD cause hepatic inflammation and activation of the oncogenic transcription factor STAT3.[143] ER stress contributes to NASH-driven hepatic tumorigenesis via TNFR1.[144] The hepatic oxidative DNA damage was increased in patients with NASH who developed HCC.[145] The unconventional prefoldin RPB5 interactor-induced DNA damage in hepatocytes triggered inflammation via T helper 17 lymphocytes and interleukin 17A, contributing to NASH and HCC development.[146] Furthermore, NAFLD caused a selective loss of intrahepatic CD4(+) but not CD8(+) T lymphocytes, which led to accelerated hepatocarcinogenesis.[147] Neutrophil infiltration was characterized in NASH-HCC and can exist in both tumor promoting and suppressing states.[148] Fatty acid accumulation increased junctional protein associated with coronary artery disease, leading to the activation of Yes-associated protein 1 and tumor growth.[149] Dysregulated mammalian target of rapamycin stimulated sphingolipid and glycerophospholipid synthesis, leading to steatosis and HCC.[150] In NASH-driven HCC, metabolic reprogramming mediated by the downregulation of carnitine palmitoyltransferase 2 enables HCC cells to escape lipotoxicity and promotes hepatocarcinogenesis.[151] MicroRNA-21 can promote hepatic lipid accumulation and cancer progression by interacting with the sHbp1-p53-Srebp1c pathway.[152] The intestinal dysbiosis, gut permeability changes, and lipopolysaccharides translocation to the liver in NASH may increase secretion of the epiregulin growth factor, which triggers tumor hepatocyte proliferation.[153] Moreover, carriage of the PNPLA3 rs738409 C>G polymorphism is associated with a greater risk of NASH-HCC.[154]

TREATMENT FOR NASH

Non-pharmacological therapy

Lifestyle modification

Lifestyle changes by eating less and exercising more to achieve weight loss remain the cornerstone of clinical care. Hypocaloric diet with a reduction of body weight decreased total body fat, visceral fat, and intrahepatic lipid content.[155] Some existing guidelines suggest restriction of energy by 1,200–1,500 kcal/day or a reduction of 500–1,000 kcal/day to achieve weight loss.[1,156-158] Weight reduction is beneficial for both non-obese (3–10%)[159] and obese patients (≥0%).[160,161] Other dietary compositions that may be beneficial for NAFLD includes omega-3 PUFA and coffee. Omega-3 PUFA has been shown to increase insulin sensitivity[162] and ameliorate steatohepatitis in experimental studies.[163,164] One meta-analysis involving nine studies with 355 patients showed decreased liver fat in patients with PUFA treatment.[165] Coffee is not only associated with a reduced risk of NAFLD but also decreased risk of liver fibrosis among patients with NAFLD.[166,167] Regular exercise helps to enhance the effects of diet modifications. Physical activity with a target at least 150 min/week of moderate-intensity or 75–150 min/week of vigorous-intensity aerobic exercise is suggested.[1,156-158] Both aerobic and resistance exercises reduce the hepatic fat content.[168,169] In addition, the intensity of exercise may be more important than the duration or total volume.[170] In conclusion, lifestyle interventions to promote weight loss, which include both diet and exercise, are proven therapeutic strategies to improve fatty liver disease.

Surgery

Bariatric surgery provides sustained and durable weight loss and improving obesity-related diseases.[171,172] Currently, the most commonly performed bariatric procedures are laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy (LSG) and Roux-en-Y gastric bypass. Two meta-analyses showed that bariatric surgery resulted in a biopsy-confirmed resolution of steatosis (56–66%), inflammation (45–50%), ballooning degeneration (49–76%), and fibrosis (25–40%), as well as reduction of NAFLD activity score (NAS).[173,174] A higher rate of improvement in steatosis and hepatic fibrosis was observed in Asian countries compared to non-Asian countries.[174] In addition, bariatric surgery was associated with decreased progression of NAFLD to cirrhosis[175] and reduced risks of any cancer and obesity-related cancer in NAFLD patients with severe obesity, particularly in cirrhotic patients.[176] However, new or worsening cases of NAFLD were found in 12% of patients after bariatric surgery.[173] Bariatric surgery was associated with a significantly lower risk of incident major adverse liver outcomes (2.3% vs. 9.6% at 10 years) and major adverse cardiovascular events (8.5% vs. 15.7% at 10 years), as compared with non-surgical management.[177]

Endoscopic therapy

Endoscopic bariatric therapies, including intragastric bal-

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0237

loons (IGB), endoscopic sleeve gastroplasty (ESG), duodenal mucosal resurfacing (DMR), and duodenal-Jejunal bypass liner (DJBL), were recently introduced as less invasive modalities to treat obesity and metabolic comorbidities. In a meta-analysis, improvement in steatosis and NAS were seen in 79.2% and 83.5% of patients receiving IGB, respectively.[178] Improvement of fibrosis for 1.5 stage by MR elastography was seen in 50% of patients with NAFLD after IGB placement.[179] ESG reduced the body weight by up to 15% and improved hepatic steatosis and fibrosis at 2 years of follow-up in obese patients with NAFLD.[180] Studies for efficacy and safety of ESG (NCT03426111; NCT04653311) and the comparison of ESG vs. LSG (NCT04060368) in patients with NASH are ongoing. DMR has been shown to reduce alanine aminotransferase, aspartate aminotransferase, and fibrosis-4 scores in patients with diabetes mellitus.[181] Recently, an observational study of 32 obese patients with diabetes mellitus who underwent DJBL showed improved non-invasive markers of steatosis and NASH, but not fibrosis. The role of DJBL on NAFLD needs to be further evaluated.[182]

Fecal microbiota transplantation

Some studies have suggested that fecal transplantation helps ameliorate steatohepatitis.[183,184] A randomized controlled trial (RCT) using allogenic fecal microbiota transplantation (FMT) from lean vegan donors for patients with NAFLD through duodenal infusion found that there was no significant improvement in NAS, steatosis, and fibrosis scores. However, they observed a trend of improving necro-inflammatory scores and beneficial changes in hepatic gene expression and plasma metabolites involved in inflammation and lipid metabolism following allogenic FMT.[185] Another RCT using allogenic FMT via endoscopic duodenal infusion in patients with NAFLD found that FMT did not improve insulin resistance and hepatic steatosis but reduced small intestinal permeability at 6 months of follow-up.[186]

Pharmacological therapy

The pharmacological agents predominantly target the following four mechanisms: 1) hepatic fat accumulation; 2) oxidative stress, inflammation, and apoptosis; 3) gut-liver axis, including bile acids, gut microbiomes, and metabolic endotoxemia; and 4) hepatic fibrosis.[187] The agents targeting different pathways are described below, and those with promising results are summarized in Table 1.

Agents targeting hepatic fat accumulation

Pioglitazone, a PPAR γ agonist, improved hepatic steatosis, inflammation, and hepatocellular ballooning.[188,189] Similar effects were found in Asian NASH patients.[190] In the phase 3 RESOLVE-IT trial, Elafibranor, a dual PPAR α/δ agonist, failed to achieve NASH resolution.[191] Pemafibrate, a selective PPAR α modulator, did not decrease liver fat but caused a significant reduction in fibrosis for 6.2% of magnetic resonance elastography-based liver stiffness.[192] Lanifibranor, a pan-PPAR agonist, significantly decreased the steatosis-activity-fibrosis activity score for at least 2 points in 55% of the patients at 24 weeks.[193]

GLP-1 agonists increase insulin secretion, inhibit glucagon secretion, delay gastric emptying, and decrease appetite. NASH resolution was observed in 39% of patients who received liraglutide for 48 weeks and in 59% of patients who received semaglutide for 72 weeks.[194,195] However, fibrosis improvement was insignificant in both studies.

Sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors increase the urinary excretion of glucose. A meta-analysis of 10 RCTs showed that SGLT2 inhibitors can reduce aminotransferases and hepatic fat.[196]

FGF19 and FGF21 are endocrines that regulate energy homeostasis. Aldafermin, a FGF19 analogue, led to reductions of liver fat content and a trend toward fibrosis improvement.[197] Pegbelfermin and efruxifermin are long-acting, recombinant analogues of human FGF21, and both have shown effects of reducing liver fat.[198,199]

Two phase IIa trials investigated the effects of acetyl-coenzyme A carboxylase (ACC) inhibitor monotherapy (PF-05221304) and combination with a diacylglycerol O-acyltransferase 2 (DGAT2) inhibitor (PF-06865571). Both PF-05221304 monotherapy and co-administration with PF-06865571 reduced liver fat content.[200]

Stearoyl-coenzyme A desaturase 1 (SCD-1) is a key enzyme that catalyzes the biosynthesis of monounsaturated fatty acids. A phase IIb trial (ARREST trial) showed that aramchol (a liver-targeted SCD-1 inhibitor) 600 mg did not cause a significant reduction in liver fat content. Nevertheless, the observed change in liver histology and biochemical improvement suggests a potential role of aramchol in treating NASH and fibrosis.[201]

Thyroid hormone receptor-β (THR-β) is predominantly ex-

Table 1. Promising pharmacological therapies for NAFLD or NASH

Type of drug	Mechanism of action	Drug name	Study design	Study outcome	Reference
PPAR agonist	PPAR-γ: ↑ insulin sensitivity modulates adipose tissue distribution PPAR-α: ↑ fatty acid β-oxidation PPAR-δ: anti-inflammatory	Pioglitazone (PPAR-γ agonist)	RCT; NASH, prediabetes/DM Pioglitazone vs. placebo	↓ ALT/AST ↓ Steatosis, ballooning necrosis, and inflammation Fibrosis not improved	188
			RCT; NASH Pioglitazone vs. placebo	↓ ALT/GGT Histology improvement, including liver injury and fibrosis	189
		Pemafibrate (SPPARMα)	Phase II RCT; NAFLD and ↑ ALT Pemafibrate vs. placebo	↓ ALT ↓ Liver stiffness No significant change of liver fat	192
		Lanifibranor (Pan-PPAR agonist)	Phase IIb RCT; NASH (SAF-A ≥3) Lanifibranor vs. placebo	↓ SAF-A score ≥2 points in lanifibranor 1,200 mg group	193
GLP-1 agonist	↑ Insulin secretion ↓ Glucagon secretion ↓ Gastric emptying ↓ Appetite	Liraglutide	Phase II RCT; NASH, obesity Liraglutide vs. placebo	↑ Resolution of NASH without worsening of fibrosis No difference in fibrosis improvement	194
		Semaglutide	RCT, phase II; NASH (F1–F3 fibrosis) Semaglutide vs. placebo	↑ Resolution of NASH without worsening of fibrosis in semaglutide 0.4 mg group No difference in fibrosis improvement	195
SGLT2 inhibitor	↑ Urinary excretion of glucose	SGLT2 inhibitors	Meta-analysis of 10 RCTs; NAFLD, DM SGLT2 inhibitor vs. other antidiabetic drugs	↓ ALT/AST ↓ Liver fat content, visceral fat, and subcutaneous fat areas	196
FGF-19 analogue	↓ Bile acids synthesis ↓ Hepatic gluconeogenesis ↓ DNL ↑ Fatty acid oxidation	Aldafermin	Phase II RCT; NASH (NAS ≥4, F2–F3 fibrosis, and liver fat content ≥8%) Aldafermin vs. placebo	↓ ALT/AST ↓ Liver fat fraction on MRI-PDFF	197
FGF-21 analogue	↓ Hepatic gluconeogenesis ↑ Insulin sensitivity ↑ Energy expenditure ↑ Mitochondria beta-oxidation in hepatocytes	Pegbelfermin	Phase IIa RCT; NASH (F1–F3 fibrosis, and liver fat content ≥10%), obesity Pegbelfermin vs. placebo	↓ Liver fat fraction on MRI-PDFF	198
		Efruxifermin	Phase IIa RCT; NASH Efruxifermin vs. placebo	↓ Liver fat fraction on MRI-PDFF	199

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0237

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0237

Table 1. Continued

Type of drug	Mechanism of action	Drug name	Study design	Study outcome	Reference
Acetyl-CoA carboxylase inhibitor	↓ DNL ↑ Fatty acid oxidation	PF-05221304	2 phase IIa RCTs; NAFLD/NASH PF-05221304 monotherapy vs. placebo	PF-05221304 monotherapy: ↓Liver fat on MRI-PDFF, but ↑ TG	[200]
Diacylglycerol acyltransferase 2 inhibitor	↓ Synthesis of fatty acids into TGs	PF-06865571	PF-05221304 and PF-06865571 co-administration vs. placebo	Co-administration therapy: ↓ liver fat and mitigated ACC inhibitor-mediated effect on TG	
Stearoyl-CoA desaturase 1 inhibitor	↓ DNL	Aramchol	Phase IIb RCT; NASH Aramchol vs. placebo	↓ Liver fat content in aramchol 600 mg group, but not significant	[201]
Selective thyroid hormone receptor-β agonist	↓ LDL, cholesterol, and TG ↑ Fatty acid oxidation	Resmetirom	Phase II RCT; NASH (F1–F3 fibrosis, and liver fat content ≥10%) Resmetirom vs. placebo	↓ Liver fat on MRI-PDFF	[202]
Anti-oxidant	Anti-oxidative stress	Vitamin E	RCT; NASH, no DM Vitamin E vs. pioglitazone vs. placebo	↓ ALT/AST for both vitamin E and pioglitazone groups NASH improvement in vitamin E group, but not in pioglitazone group Fibrosis not improved in vitamin E and pioglitazone groups	[204]
Bile acid analogue	Anti-inflammation	Berberine ursodeoxycholate	Phase II RCT; NAFLD, DM Berberine ursodeoxycholate vs. placebo	↓ Liver fat content on MRI-PDFF	[206]
	↓ DNL ↑ Fatty acid β-oxidation ↑ Cholesterol excretion	Obeticholic acid (FXR agonist)	Phase III RCT; NASH (NAS ≥4, F2–F3 fibrosis or F1 with ≥1 accompanying comorbidity) Obeticholic acid vs. placebo	↓ Fibrosis No significant resolution of NASH	[209]

NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; NASH, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis; PPAR, proliferator-activated receptor; SPPARMα, selective peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor α modulator; RCT, randomized controlled trial; ALT, alanine aminotransferase; SAF-A, steatosis-activity-fibrosis activity; GLP-1, glucagon-like peptide-1; SGLT2, sodium-glucose cotransporter 2; DM, diabetes mellitus; AST, aspartate aminotransferase; FGF, fibroblast growth factor; DNL, *de novo* lipogenesis; NAS, NAFLD activity score; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging; PDFF, proton density fat fraction; TG, triglyceride; ACC, acetyl-coenzyme A carboxylase; LDL, low density lipoprotein; FXR, farnesoid X receptor.

pressed in the hepatocytes. Resmetirom, a selective THR-β agonist, significantly reduced more than 30% of hepatic fat after 12 and 36 weeks of treatment in patients with NASH in phase II trial.[202]

Agents targeting oxidative stress, inflammation, and apoptosis

Vitamin E, an antioxidative agent, demonstrated benefits on hepatic decompensation and transplant-free survival in patient with NASH.[203] The PIVENS study, which compared the effects of vitamin E, pioglitazone, and placebo in NASH patients without diabetes, showed that vitamin E (800 international units/day), but not pioglitazone, significantly improved NASH.[204]

Apoptosis signaling kinase 1 (ASK1) promotes apoptosis, inflammation, and fibrosis in the liver. However, selonsertib, an ASK1 inhibitor, failed to improve fibrosis in NASH patients with bridging fibrosis or compensated cirrhosis.[205]

Berberine ursodeoxycholate is an ionic salt of berberine and ursodeoxycholic acid. It reduced 4.8% of liver fat and improved glycemic control as well as liver enzymes in patients with NASH and diabetes.[206]

Agents targeting gut-liver axis

In a phase IIb study, obeticholic acid (OCA), a FXR agonist, improved liver histology in 21% of NASH patients.[207] In patients with NASH and diabetes, OCA demonstrated the effects of increasing insulin sensitivity and reducing markers of liver inflammation as well as fibrosis.[208] In the interim analysis of a phase III trial, both 10-mg and 25-mg doses of OCA improved fibrosis (18% and 23%, respectively), but the NASH resolution endpoint was not met.[209] This study is ongoing to assess the clinical outcomes.

Agents targeting liver fibrosis

Caspase is a protease that is associated with apoptosis and inflammation in the liver. However, emricasan, a pan-caspase inhibitor, did not improve fibrosis or resolution of NASH.[210] Besides, for patients with NASH-related cirrhosis and severe portal hypertension, emricasan did not improve hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG) or liver-related outcomes.[211]

In a phase IIb CENTAUR trial, a 2-year study, cenicriviroc, a dual C-C chemokine receptor types 2 and 5 antagonist, achieved ≥1-stage of fibrosis improvement without worsen-

Table 2. Ongoing phase III clinical trials of pharmacological agents in patients with NAFLD or NASH

Agent	Mechanism	Patient	Outcome	Status	ClinicalTrials.gov identifier
Lanifibranor	Pan-PPAR agonist	NASH with stage 2–3 fibrosis without cirrhosis	NASH resolution; fibrosis improvement; liver-related events	Recruiting	NCT04849728
Semaglutide	GLP-1 agonist	NASH with stage 2–3 fibrosis	NASH resolution; fibrosis improvement; liver-related events	Recruiting	NCT04822181
Dapagliflozin	SGLT2 inhibitor	NASH and type 2 DM without cirrhosis	Histology improvement	Recruiting	NCT03723252
Resmetirom	Selective thyroid hormone receptor-β agonist	NASH without cirrhosis	NASH resolution; liver-related events	Recruiting	NCT03900429
Aramchol	Stearoyl-CoA desaturase 1 inhibitor	NASH with stage 2–3 fibrosis without cirrhosis; type 2 DM or prediabetes	NASH resolution; fibrosis improvement	Recruiting	NCT04104321
Belapectin	Galectin-3 inhibitor	NASH cirrhosis without esophageal or gastric varices	Newly developed esophageal varices	Recruiting	NCT04365868
Oltipraz	Liver X receptor alpha-inhibitor	NAFLD without cirrhosis	Liver fat	Recruiting	NCT04142749

NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; NASH, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis; PPAR, proliferator-activated receptor; GLP-1, glucagon-like peptide-1; SGLT2, sodium-glucose cotransporter 2; DM, diabetes mellitus.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0237

ing of NASH after 1 year of treatment compared to placebo (20% vs. 10%).[212] And a great proportion (60%) of the patients who achieved fibrosis response at the first year maintained fibrosis reduction at the second year.[213] The long-term impact of cenicriviroc on fibrosis needs to be further investigated.

Belapectin, a galectin-3 inhibitor, did not significantly reduce HVPG or fibrosis in patients with NASH, cirrhosis, and portal hypertension; however, in a subgroup of patients without esophageal varices, belapectin reduced HVPG as well as the development of esophageal varices.[214]

Information about the ongoing phase III clinical trials of promising drugs on phase II studies are listed in Table 2.

Combination therapy

NAFLD is a multifactorial disease, and combining therapies with different targets may have synergistic effects.[215] Cilofexor (FXR agonist) plus firsocostat (ACC inhibitor) led to improvements in NASH activity compared to placebo, or single agent in patients with bridging fibrosis and cirrhosis.[216] Semaglutide with firsocostat and/or cilofexor showed greater improvements in liver steatosis and liver biochemistry compared to semaglutide alone.[217] Combining ACC inhibitors and DGAT2 inhibitors reduced liver fat content and mitigated the side effect of elevated serum TGs.[200]

PERSPECTIVES

As understanding of mechanisms of NASH and its fibrosis increases, more therapies will be introduced and tested in clinical trials. The pathogenesis of NASH and fibrosis is complex; therefore, it would be difficult to treat the disease using just one therapy. Combination therapy is the focus in the future development of treatment. Furthermore, better care of extra-hepatic complications of NASH, novel biomarkers for diagnosis, risk stratification and treatment responses, and more clinical trials in Asian groups should also be well researched and developed.

Authors' contribution

KC Lee and PS Wu drafted the manuscript and HC Lin revised the manuscript. All the authors read and approved the final version.

Acknowledgements

This study was supported in part by the grants from the Ministry of Science and Technology (110-2628-B-075-016; 111-2314-B-075-051-MY3) Taiwan.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Chalasani N, Younossi Z, Lavine JE, Charlton M, Cusi K, Rinella M, et al. The diagnosis and management of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: practice guidance from the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Hepatology 2018;67:328-357.
2. Browning JD, Horton JD. Molecular mediators of hepatic steatosis and liver injury. J Clin Invest 2004;114:147-152.
3. Lemoinne S, Friedman SL. New and emerging anti-fibrotic therapeutics entering or already in clinical trials in chronic liver diseases. Curr Opin Pharmacol 2019;49:60-70.
4. Westerbacka J, Lammi K, Häkkinen AM, Rissanen A, Salminen I, Aro A, et al. Dietary fat content modifies liver fat in overweight nondiabetic subjects. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2005;90:2804-2809.
5. van der Meer RW, Hammer S, Lamb HJ, Frölich M, Diamant M, Rijzewijk LJ, et al. Effects of short-term high-fat, high-energy diet on hepatic and myocardial triglyceride content in healthy men. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2008;93:2702-2708.
6. Lindeboom L, Nabuurs CI, Hesselink MK, Wildberger JE, Schrauwen P, Schrauwen-Hinderling VB. Proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy reveals increased hepatic lipid content after a single high-fat meal with no additional modulation by added protein. Am J Clin Nutr 2015;101:65-71.
7. Hernández EA, Kahl S, Seelig A, Begovatz P, Irmler M, Kupriyanova Y, et al. Acute dietary fat intake initiates alterations in energy metabolism and insulin resistance. J Clin Invest 2017;127:695-708.
8. Kaikkonen JE, Würtz P, Suomela E, Lehtovirta M, Kangas AJ, Jula A, et al. Metabolic profiling of fatty liver in young and middle-aged adults: cross-sectional and prospective analyses of the young finns study. Hepatology 2017;65:491-500.
9. Rosqvist F, Kullberg J, Ståhlman M, Cedernaes J, Heurling K, Johansson HE, et al. Overeating saturated fat promotes fatty liver and ceramides compared with polyunsaturated fat: a randomized trial. J Clini Endocrinol Metab 2019;104:6207-6219.

10. Puri P, Baillie RA, Wiest MM, Mirshahi F, Choudhury J, Cheung O, et al. A lipidomic analysis of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology 2007;46:1081-1090.
11. Gerber L, Otgonsuren M, Mishra A, Escheik C, Birerdinc A, Stepanova M, et al. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is associated with low level of physical activity: a population-based study. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2012;36:772-781.
12. Ryu S, Chang Y, Jung HS, Yun KE, Kwon MJ, Choi Y, et al. Relationship of sitting time and physical activity with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. J Hepatology 2015;63:1229-1237.
13. Marchesini G, Brizi M, Bianchi G, Tomassetti S, Bugianesi E, Lenzi M, et al. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a feature of the metabolic syndrome. Diabetes 2001;50:1844-1850.
14. Bugianesi E, Gastaldelli A, Vanni E, Gambino R, Cassader M, Baldi S, et al. Insulin resistance in non-diabetic patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: sites and mechanisms. Diabetologia 2005;48:634-642.
15. Donnelly KL, Smith CI, Schwarzenberg SJ, Jessurun J, Boldt MD, Parks EJ. Sources of fatty acids stored in liver and secreted via lipoproteins in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. J Clin Invest 2005;115:1343-1351.
16. Utzschneider KM, Kahn SE. Review: the role of insulin resistance in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2006;91:4753-4761.
17. Shimano H, Horton JD, Shimomura I, Hammer RE, Brown MS, Goldstein JL. Isoform 1c of sterol regulatory element binding protein is less active than isoform 1a in livers of transgenic mice and in cultured cells. J Clin Invest 1997;99:846-854.
18. Tamura S, Shimomura I. Contribution of adipose tissue and de novo lipogenesis to nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. J Clin Invest 2005;115:1139-1142.
19. Wolfrum C, Asilmaz E, Luca E, Friedman JM, Stoffel M. Foxa2 regulates lipid metabolism and ketogenesis in the liver during fasting and in diabetes. Nature 2004;432:1027-1032.
20. Romeo S, Kozlitina J, Xing C, Pertsemlidis A, Cox D, Pennacchio LA, et al. Genetic variation in PNPLA3 confers susceptibility to nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Nat Genet 2008;40:1461-1465.
21. Speliotes EK, Yerges-Armstrong LM, Wu J, Hernaez R, Kim LJ, Palmer CD, et al. Genome-wide association analysis identifies variants associated with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease that have distinct effects on metabolic traits. PLoS Genet 2011;7:e1001324.
22. Chambers JC, Zhang W, Sehmi J, Li X, Wass MN, Van der Harst P, et al. Genome-wide association study identifies loci influencing concentrations of liver enzymes in plasma. Nat Genet 2011;43:1131-1138.
23. Beer NL, Tribble ND, McCulloch LJ, Roos C, Johnson PR, Orho-Melander M, et al. The P446L variant in GCKR associated with fasting plasma glucose and triglyceride levels exerts its effect through increased glucokinase activity in liver. Hum Mol Genet 2009;18:4081-4088.
24. Kozlitina J, Smagris E, Stender S, Nordestgaard BG, Zhou HH, Tybjaerg-Hansen A, et al. Exome-wide association study identifies a TM6SF2 variant that confers susceptibility to nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Nat Genet 2014;46:352-356.
25. Mahdessian H, Taxiarchis A, Popov S, Silveira A, Franco-Cereceda A, Hamsten A, et al. TM6SF2 is a regulator of liver fat metabolism influencing triglyceride secretion and hepatic lipid droplet content. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2014;111:8913-8918.
26. Lin YC, Chang PF, Lin HF, Liu K, Chang MH, Ni YH. Variants in the autophagy-related gene IRGM confer susceptibility to non-alcoholic fatty liver disease by modulating lipophagy. J Hepatol 2016;65:1209-1216.
27. Bellini G, Miraglia Del Giudice E, Nobili V, Rossi F. The IRGM rs10065172 variant increases the risk for steatosis but not for liver damage progression in Italian obese children. J Hepatol 2017;67:653-655.
28. Luukkonen PK, Qadri S, Ahlholm N, Porthan K, Mannisto V, Sammalkorpi H, et al. Distinct contributions of metabolic dysfunction and genetic risk factors in the pathogenesis of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. J Hepatol 2022;76:526-535.
29. Ma J, Nano J, Ding J, Zheng Y, Hennein R, Liu C, et al. A peripheral blood DNA methylation signature of hepatic fat reveals a potential causal pathway for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Diabetes 2019;68:1073-1083.
30. Pirola CJ, Fernandez Gianotti T, Castano GO, Mallardi P, San Martino J, Mora Gonzalez Lopez Ledesma M, et al. Circulating microRNA signature in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: from serum non-coding RNAs to liver histology and disease pathogenesis. Gut 2015;64:800-812.
31. Castano C, Kalko S, Novials A, Parrizas M. Obesity-associated exosomal miRNAs modulate glucose and lipid metabolism in mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2018;115:12158-12163.
32. Esau C, Davis S, Murray SF, Yu XX, Pandey SK, Pear M, et al. miR-122 regulation of lipid metabolism revealed by in vivo antisense targeting. Cell Metab 2006;3:87-98.
33. Latorre J, Moreno-Navarrete JM, Mercader JM, Sabater M, Rovira O, Girones J, et al. Decreased lipid metabolism but increased FA biosynthesis are coupled with changes in liver

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0237

microRNAs in obese subjects with NAFLD. Int J Obes (Lond) 2017;41:620-630.
34. Hsu SH, Wang B, Kota J, Yu J, Costinean S, Kutay H, et al. Essential metabolic, anti-inflammatory, and anti-tumorigenic functions of miR-122 in liver. J Clin Invest 2012;122:2871-2883.
35. Kim YS, Nam HJ, Han CY, Joo MS, Jang K, Jun DW, et al. Liver X receptor alpha activation inhibits autophagy and lipophagy in hepatocytes by dysregulating autophagy-related 4B cysteine peptidase and Rab-8B, reducing mitochondrial fuel oxidation. Hepatology 2021;73:1307-1326.
36. Wang M, Kaufman RJ. Protein misfolding in the endoplasmic reticulum as a conduit to human disease. Nature 2016;529:326-335.
37. Lebeaupin C, Vallee D, Hazari Y, Hetz C, Chevet E, Bailly-Maitre B. Endoplasmic reticulum stress signalling and the pathogenesis of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. J Hepatol 2018;69:927-947.
38. Puri P, Mirshahi F, Cheung O, Natarajan R, Maher JW, Kellum JM, et al. Activation and dysregulation of the unfolded protein response in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Gastroenterology 2008;134:568-576.
39. Akazawa Y, Cazanave S, Mott JL, Elmi N, Bronk SF, Kohno S, et al. Palmitoleate attenuates palmitate-induced Bim and PUMA up-regulation and hepatocyte lipoapoptosis. J Hepatol 2010;52:586-593.
40. Volmer R, van der Ploeg K, Ron D. Membrane lipid saturation activates endoplasmic reticulum unfolded protein response transducers through their transmembrane domains. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2013;110:4628-4633.
41. Latif MU, Schmidt GE, Mercan S, Rahman R, Gibhardt CS, Stejerean-Todoran I, et al. NFATc1 signaling drives chronic ER stress responses to promote NAFLD progression. Gut 2022;71:2561-2573.
42. Sunny NE, Parks EJ, Browning JD, Burgess SC. Excessive hepatic mitochondrial TCA cycle and gluconeogenesis in humans with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Cell Metab 2011;14:804-810.
43. Koliaki C, Szendroedi J, Kaul K, Jelenik T, Nowotny P, Jankowiak F, et al. Adaptation of hepatic mitochondrial function in humans with non-alcoholic fatty liver is lost in steatohepatitis. Cell Metab 2015;21:739-746.
44. Perez-Carreras M, Del Hoyo P, Martin MA, Rubio JC, Martin A, Castellano G, et al. Defective hepatic mitochondrial respiratory chain in patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Hepatology 2003;38:999-1007.
45. Satapati S, Kucejova B, Duarte JA, Fletcher JA, Reynolds L, Sunny NE, et al. Mitochondrial metabolism mediates oxidative stress and inflammation in fatty liver. J Clin Invest 2015;125:4447-4462.
46. Martel C, Allouche M, Esposti DD, Fanelli E, Boursier C, Henry C, et al. Glycogen synthase kinase 3-mediated voltage-dependent anion channel phosphorylation controls outer mitochondrial membrane permeability during lipid accumulation. Hepatology 2013;57:93-102.
47. Li Z, Berk M, McIntyre TM, Gores GJ, Feldstein AE. The lysosomal-mitochondrial axis in free fatty acid-induced hepatic lipotoxicity. Hepatology 2008;47:1495-1503.
48. Meex RCR, Blaak EE. Mitochondrial dysfunction is a key pathway that links saturated fat intake to the development and progression of NAFLD. Mol Nutr Food Res 2021;65:e1900942.
49. Peng KY, Watt MJ, Rensen S, Greve JW, Huynh K, Jayawardana KS, et al. Mitochondrial dysfunction-related lipid changes occur in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease progression. J Lipid Res 2018;59:1977-1986.
50. Chocian G, Chabowski A, Zendzian-Piotrowska M, Harasim E, Lukaszuk B, Gorski J. High fat diet induces ceramide and sphingomyelin formation in rat's liver nuclei. Mol Cell Biochem 2010;340:125-131.
51. Chavez JA, Summers SA. A ceramide-centric view of insulin resistance. Cell Metab 2012;15:585-594.
52. Arora AS, Jones BJ, Patel TC, Bronk SF, Gores GJ. Ceramide induces hepatocyte cell death through disruption of mitochondrial function in the rat. Hepatology 1997;25:958-963.
53. Tovoli F, Napoli L, Negrini G, D'Addato S, Tozzi G, D'Amico J, et al. A relative deficiency of lysosomal acid lypase activity characterizes non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Int J mol Sci 2017;18:1134.
54. Baratta F, Pastori D, Del Ben M, Polimeni L, Labbadia G, Di Santo S, et al. Reduced lysosomal acid lipase activity in adult patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. EBioMedicine 2015;2:750-754.
55. Wang X, Zhang X, Chu ESH, Chen X, Kang W, Wu F, et al. Defective lysosomal clearance of autophagosomes and its clinical implications in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. FASEB J 2018;32:37-51.
56. Feldstein AE, Werneburg NW, Canbay A, Guicciardi ME, Bronk SF, Rydzewski R, et al. Free fatty acids promote hepatic lipotoxicity by stimulating TNF-alpha expression via a lysosomal pathway. Hepatology 2004;40:185-194.
57. Hirsova P, Ibrabim SH, Gores GJ, Malhi H. Lipotoxic lethal and sublethal stress signaling in hepatocytes: relevance to NASH

pathogenesis. J Lipid Res 2016;57:1758-1770.
58. Singh R, Kaushik S, Wang Y, Xiang Y, Novak I, Komatsu M, et al. Autophagy regulates lipid metabolism. Nature 2009;458:1131-1135.
59. Li S, Dou X, Ning H, Song Q, Wei W, Zhang X, et al. Sirtuin 3 acts as a negative regulator of autophagy dictating hepatocyte susceptibility to lipotoxicity. Hepatology 2017;66:936-952.
60. Geng Y, Faber KN, de Meijer VE, Blokzijl H, Moshage H. How does hepatic lipid accumulation lead to lipotoxicity in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease? Hepatol Int 2021;15:21-35.
61. Cao L, Quan XB, Zeng WJ, Yang XO, Wang MJ. Mechanism of hepatocyte apoptosis. J Cell Death 2016;9:19-29.
62. Rada P, Gonzalez-Rodriguez A, Garcia-Monzon C, Valverde AM. Understanding lipotoxicity in NAFLD pathogenesis: is CD36 a key driver? Cell Death Dis 2020;11:802.
63. Sanyal AJ, Van Natta ML, Clark J, Neuschwander-Tetri BA, Diehl A, Dasarathy S, et al. Prospective study of outcomes in adults with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. N Engl J Med 2021;385:1559-1569.
64. Kim Y, Chang Y, Cho YK, Ahn J, Shin H, Ryu S. Obesity and weight gain are associated with progression of fibrosis in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2019;17:543-550.e2.
65. Singh S, Allen AM, Wang Z, Prokop LJ, Murad MH, Loomba R. Fibrosis progression in nonalcoholic fatty liver vs nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis of paired-biopsy studies. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2015;13:643-654.e1-e9.
66. Argo CK, Northup PG, Al-Osaimi AM, Caldwell SH. Systematic review of risk factors for fibrosis progression in non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. J Hepatol 2009;51:371-379.
67. Parthasarathy G, Revelo X, Malhi H. Pathogenesis of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis: an overview. Hepatol Commun 2020;4:478-492.
68. Marra F, Svegliati-Baroni G. Lipotoxicity and the gut-liver axis in NASH pathogenesis. J Hepatol 2018;68:280-295.
69. Hirsova P, Ibrahim SH, Krishnan A, Verma VK, Bronk SF, Werneburg NW, et al. Lipid-induced signaling causes release of inflammatory extracellular vesicles from hepatocytes. Gastroenterology 2016;150:956-967.
70. Canbay A, Taimr P, Torok N, Higuchi H, Friedman S, Gores GJ. Apoptotic body engulfment by a human stellate cell line is profibrogenic. Lab Invest 2003;83:655-663.
71. Kwon H, Song K, Han C, Chen W, Wang Y, Dash S, et al. Inhibition of hedgehog signaling ameliorates hepatic inflammation in mice with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology 2016;63:1155-1169.
72. Syn WK, Jung Y, Omenetti A, Abdelmalek M, Guy CD, Yang L, et al. Hedgehog-mediated epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition and fibrogenic repair in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Gastroenterology 2009;137:1478-1488.e8.
73. Syn WK, Choi SS, Liaskou E, Karaca GF, Agboola KM, Oo YH, et al. Osteopontin is induced by hedgehog pathway activation and promotes fibrosis progression in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Hepatology 2011;53:106-115.
74. Syn WK, Agboola KM, Swiderska M, Michelotti GA, Liaskou E, Pang H, et al. NKT-associated hedgehog and osteopontin drive fibrogenesis in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Gut 2012;61:1323-1329.
75. Shi H, Kokoeva MV, Inouye K, Tzameli I, Yin H, Flier JS. TLR4 links innate immunity and fatty acid-induced insulin resistance. J Clin Invest 2006;116:3015-3025.
76. Hetherington AM, Sawyez CG, Zilberman E, Stoianov AM, Robson DL, Borradaile NM. Differential lipotoxic effects of palmitate and oleate in activated human hepatic stellate cells and epithelial hepatoma cells. Cell Physiol Biochem 2016;39:1648-1662.
77. Tomita K, Teratani T, Suzuki T, Shimizu M, Sato H, Narimatsu K, et al. Free cholesterol accumulation in hepatic stellate cells: mechanism of liver fibrosis aggravation in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis in mice. Hepatology 2014;59:154-169.
78. Paradis V, Perlemuter G, Bonvoust F, Dargere D, Parfait B, Vidaud M, et al. High glucose and hyperinsulinemia stimulate connective tissue growth factor expression: a potential mechanism involved in progression to fibrosis in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Hepatology 2001;34:738-744.
79. Svegliati-Baroni G, Ridolfi F, Di Sario A, Casini A, Marucci L, Gaggiotti G, et al. Insulin and insulin-like growth factor-1 stimulate proliferation and type I collagen accumulation by human hepatic stellate cells: differential effects on signal transduction pathways. Hepatology 1999;29:1743-1751.
80. Cai CX, Buddha H, Castelino-Prabhu S, Zhang Z, Britton RS, Bacon BR, et al. Activation of insulin-PI3K/akt-p70S6K pathway in hepatic stellate cells contributes to fibrosis in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Dig Dis Sci 2017;62:968-978.
81. Pirazzi C, Valenti L, Motta BM, Pingitore P, Hedfalk K, Mancina RM, et al. PNPLA3 has retinyl-palmitate lipase activity in human hepatic stellate cells. Hum Mol Genet 2014;23:4077-4085.
82. Mancina RM, Dongiovanni P, Petta S, Pingitore P, Meroni M, Rametta R, et al. The MBOAT7-TMC4 variant rs641738 increases

risk of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in individuals of European descent. Gastroenterology 2016;150:1219-1230.e6.
83. Hernandez-Gea V, Ghiassi-Nejad Z, Rozenfeld R, Gordon R, Fiel MI, Yue Z, et al. Autophagy releases lipid that promotes fibrogenesis by activated hepatic stellate cells in mice and in human tissues. Gastroenterology 2012;142:938-946.
84. Thangapandi VR, Knittelfelder O, Brosch M, Patsenker E, Vvedenskaya O, Buch S, et al. Loss of hepatic Mboat7 leads to liver fibrosis. Gut 2021;70:940-950.
85. Fondevila MF, Fernandez U, Gonzalez-Rellan MJ, Da Silva Lima N, Buque X, Gonzalez-Rodriguez A, et al. The L-α-lysophosphatidylinositol/G protein-coupled receptor 55 system induces the development of nonalcoholic steatosis and steatohepatitis. Hepatology 2021;73:606-624.
86. Liu YL, Reeves HL, Burt AD, Tiniakos D, McPherson S, Leathart JB, et al. TM6SF2 rs58542926 influences hepatic fibrosis progression in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Nat Commun 2014;5:4309.
87. Abul-Husn NS, Cheng X, Li AH, Xin Y, Schurmann C, Stevis P, et al. A protein-truncating HSD17B13 variant and protection from chronic liver disease. N Engl J Med 2018;378:1096-1106.
88. Pirola CJ, Garaycoechea M, Flichman D, Arrese M, San Martino J, Gazzi C, et al. Splice variant rs72613567 prevents worst histologic outcomes in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. J Lipid Res 2019;60:176-185.
89. Luukkonen PK, Tukiainen T, Juuti A, Sammalkorpi H, Haridas PAN, Niemela O, et al. Hydroxysteroid 17-β dehydrogenase 13 variant increases phospholipids and protects against fibrosis in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. JCI Insight 2020;5:e132158.
90. Ma Y, Belyaeva OV, Brown PM, Fujita K, Valles K, Karki S, et al. 17-beta hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase 13 is a hepatic retinol dehydrogenase associated with histological features of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology 2019;69:1504-1519.
91. Zeybel M, Hardy T, Robinson SM, Fox C, Anstee QM, Ness T, et al. Differential DNA methylation of genes involved in fibrosis progression in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and alcoholic liver disease. Clin Epigenetics 2015;7:25.
92. Raman M, Ahmed I, Gillevet PM, Probert CS, Ratcliffe NM, Smith S, et al. Fecal microbiome and volatile organic compound metabolome in obese humans with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2013;11:868-875.e1-e3.
93. Mouzaki M, Comelli EM, Arendt BM, Bonengel J, Fung SK, Fischer SE, et al. Intestinal microbiota in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology 2013;58:120-127.
94. Mao JW, Tang HY, Zhao T, Tan XY, Bi J, Wang BY, et al. Intestinal mucosal barrier dysfunction participates in the progress of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Int J Clin Exp Pathol 2015;8:3648-3658.
95. Mencin A, Kluwe J, Schwabe RF. Toll-like receptors as targets in chronic liver diseases. Gut 2009;58:704-720.
96. Henao-Mejia J, Elinav E, Jin C, Hao L, Mehal WZ, Strowig T, et al. Inflammasome-mediated dysbiosis regulates progression of NAFLD and obesity. Nature 2012;482:179-185.
97. Farhadi A, Gundlapalli S, Shaikh M, Frantzides C, Harrell L, Kwasny MM, et al. Susceptibility to gut leakiness: a possible mechanism for endotoxaemia in non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. Liver Int 2008;28:1026-1033.
98. Yang SQ, Lin HZ, Lane MD, Clemens M, Diehl AM. Obesity increases sensitivity to endotoxin liver injury: implications for the pathogenesis of steatohepatitis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1997;94:2557-2562.
99. Rivera CA, Adegboyega P, van Rooijen N, Tagalicud A, Allman M, Wallace M. Toll-like receptor-4 signaling and Kupffer cells play pivotal roles in the pathogenesis of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. J Hepatol 2007;47:571-579.
100. Miura K, Kodama Y, Inokuchi S, Schnabl B, Aoyama T, Ohnishi H, et al. Toll-like receptor 9 promotes steatohepatitis by induction of interleukin-1beta in mice. Gastroenterology 2010;139:323-334 e327.
101. Hsieh YC, Lee KC, Wu PS, Huo TI, Huang YH, Hou MC, et al. Eritoran attenuates hepatic inflammation and fibrosis in mice with chronic liver injury. Cells 2021;10:1562.
102. Seki E, De Minicis S, Osterreicher CH, Kluwe J, Osawa Y, Brenner DA, et al. TLR4 enhances TGF-beta signaling and hepatic fibrosis. Nat Med 2007;13:1324-1332.
103. Mehta G, Gustot T, Mookerjee RP, Garcia-Pagan JC, Fallon MB, Shah VH, et al. Inflammation and portal hypertension - the undiscovered country. J Hepatology 2014;61:155-163.
104. Mouries J, Brescia P, Silvestri A, Spadoni I, Sorribas M, Wiest R, et al. Microbiota-driven gut vascular barrier disruption is a prerequisite for non-alcoholic steatohepatitis development. J Hepatol 2019;71:1216-1228.
105. Yuan J, Baker SS, Liu W, Alkhouri R, Baker RD, Xie J, et al. Endotoxemia unrequired in the pathogenesis of pediatric nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2014;29:1292-1298.
106. Luther J, Garber JJ, Khalili H, Dave M, Bale SS, Jindal R, et al. Hepatic injury in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis contributes to altered intestinal permeability. Cell Mol Gastroenterol Hepatol

2015;1:222-232.
107. Dumas ME, Barton RH, Toye A, Cloarec O, Blancher C, Rothwell A, et al. Metabolic profiling reveals a contribution of gut microbiota to fatty liver phenotype in insulin-resistant mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2006;103:12511-12516.
108. Zhang Y, Lee FY, Barrera G, Lee H, Vales C, Gonzalez FJ, et al. Activation of the nuclear receptor FXR improves hyperglycemia and hyperlipidemia in diabetic mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2006;103:1006-1011.
109. Holt JA, Luo G, Billin AN, Bisi J, McNeill YY, Kozarsky KF, et al. Definition of a novel growth factor-dependent signal cascade for the suppression of bile acid biosynthesis. Genes Dev 2003;17:1581-1591.
110. Yajima M, Karaki SI, Tsuruta T, Kimura S, Nio-Kobayashi J, Kuwahara A, et al. Diversity of the intestinal microbiota differently affects non-neuronal and atropine-sensitive ileal contractile responses to short-chain fatty acids in mice. Biomed Res 2016;37:319-328.
111. den Besten G, Lange K, Havinga R, van Dijk TH, Gerding A, van Eunen K, et al. Gut-derived short-chain fatty acids are vividly assimilated into host carbohydrates and lipids. Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol 2013;305:G900-G910.
112. Samuel BS, Shaito A, Motoike T, Rey FE, Backhed F, Manchester JK, et al. Effects of the gut microbiota on host adiposity are modulated by the short-chain fatty-acid binding G protein-coupled receptor, Gpr41. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2008;105:16767-16772.
113. Gao Z, Yin J, Zhang J, Ward RE, Martin RJ, Lefevre M, et al. Butyrate improves insulin sensitivity and increases energy expenditure in mice. Diabetes 2009;58:1509-1517.
114. Loomba R, Seguritan V, Li W, Long T, Klitgord N, Bhatt A, et al. Gut microbiome-based metagenomic signature for non-invasive detection of advanced fibrosis in human nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Cell Metab 2017;25:1054-1062.e5.
115. Zhu L, Baker SS, Gill C, Liu W, Alkhouri R, Baker RD, et al. Characterization of gut microbiomes in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) patients: a connection between endogenous alcohol and NASH. Hepatology 2013;57:601-609.
116. Passos MC, Goncalves MC. Regulation of insulin sensitivity by adiponectin and its receptors in response to physical exercise. Horm Metab Res 2014;46:603-608.
117. Yamauchi T, Kamon J, Minokoshi Y, Ito Y, Waki H, Uchida S, et al. Adiponectin stimulates glucose utilization and fatty-acid oxidation by activating AMP-activated protein kinase. Nat Med 2002;8:1288-1295.
118. Xu A, Wang Y, Keshaw H, Xu LY, Lam KS, Cooper GJ. The fat-derived hormone adiponectin alleviates alcoholic and nonalcoholic fatty liver diseases in mice. J Clin Invest 2003;112:91-100.
119. Hui JM, Hodge A, Farrell GC, Kench JG, Kriketos A, George J. Beyond insulin resistance in NASH: TNF-alpha or adiponectin? Hepatology 2004;40:46-54.
120. Yadav A, Kataria MA, Saini V, Yadav A. Role of leptin and adiponectin in insulin resistance. Clin Chim Acta 2013;417:80-84.
121. Polyzos SA, Kountouras J, Anastasilakis AD, Geladari EV, Mantzoros CS. Irisin in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Metabolism 2014;63:207-217.
122. Polyzos SA, Aronis KN, Kountouras J, Raptis DD, Vasiloglou MF, Mantzoros CS. Circulating leptin in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Diabetologia 2016;59:30-43.
123. Yang YY, Tsai TH, Huang YT, Lee TY, Chan CC, Lee KC, et al. Hepatic endothelin-1 and endocannabinoids-dependent effects of hyperleptinemia in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis-cirrhotic rats. Hepatology 2012;55:1540-1550.
124. Shoelson SE, Lee J, Goldfine AB. Inflammation and insulin resistance. J Clin Invest 2006;116:1793-1801.
125. Tilg H. The role of cytokines in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Dig Dis 2010;28:179-185.
126. Kakino S, Ohki T, Nakayama H, Yuan X, Otabe S, Hashinaga T, et al. Pivotal role of TNF-α in the development and progression of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in a murine model. Horm Metab Res 2018;50:80-87.
127. Han MS, White A, Perry RJ, Camporez JP, Hidalgo J, Shulman GI, et al. Regulation of adipose tissue inflammation by interleukin 6. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2020;117:2751-2760.
128. Perry RJ, Camporez JG, Kursawe R, Titchenell PM, Zhang D, Perry CJ, et al. Hepatic acetyl CoA links adipose tissue inflammation to hepatic insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes. Cell 2015;160:745-758.
129. Goh GB, Pagadala MR, Dasarathy J, Unalp-Arida A, Sargent R, Hawkins C, et al. Renin-angiotensin system and fibrosis in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Liver Int 2015;35:979-985.
130. Zhang X, Wong GL, Yip TC, Tse YK, Liang LY, Hui VW, et al. Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors prevent liver-related events in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology 2021;76:469-482.
131. Wei Y, Clark SE, Morris EM, Thyfault JP, Uptergrove GM, Whaley-Connell AT, et al. Angiotensin II-induced non-alcoholic fatty liver disease is mediated by oxidative stress in transgenic

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0237

TG(mRen2)27(Ren2) rats. J Hepatol 2008;49:417-428.
132. Takahashi N, Li F, Hua K, Deng J, Wang CH, Bowers RR, et al. Increased energy expenditure, dietary fat wasting, and resistance to diet-induced obesity in mice lacking renin. Cell Metab 2007;6:506-512.
133. Lee KC, Chan CC, Yang YY, Hsieh YC, Huang YH, Lin HC. Aliskiren attenuates steatohepatitis and increases turnover of hepatic fat in mice fed with a methionine and choline deficient diet. PLoS One 2013;8:e77817.
134. Lee KC, Hsieh YC, Yang YY, Chan CC, Huang YH, Lin HC. Aliskiren reduces hepatic steatosis and epididymal fat mass and increases skeletal muscle insulin sensitivity in high-fat diet-fed mice. Sci Rep 2016;6:18899.
135. Nguyen G, Delarue F, Burckle C, Bouzhir L, Giller T, Sraer JD. Pivotal role of the renin/prorenin receptor in angiotensin II production and cellular responses to renin. J Clin Invest 2002;109:1417-1427.
136. Oliver JA. Receptor-mediated actions of renin and prorenin. Kidney Int 2006;69:13-15.
137. Huang Y, Wongamorntham S, Kasting J, McQuillan D, Owens RT, Yu L, et al. Renin increases mesangial cell transforming growth factor-beta1 and matrix proteins through receptor-mediated, angiotensin II-independent mechanisms. Kidney Int 2006;69:105-113.
138. Hsieh YC, Lee KC, Lei HJ, Lan KH, Huo TI, Lin YT, et al. (Pro)renin receptor knockdown attenuates liver fibrosis through inactivation of ERK/TGF-β1/SMAD3 pathway. Cell Mol Gastroenterol Hepatol 2021;12:813-838.
139. Ren L, Sun Y, Lu H, Ye D, Han L, Wang N, et al. (Pro)renin receptor inhibition reprograms hepatic lipid metabolism and protects mice from diet-induced obesity and hepatosteatosis. Circ Res 2018;122:730-741.
140. Estes C, Razavi H, Loomba R, Younossi Z, Sanyal AJ. Modeling the epidemic of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease demonstrates an exponential increase in burden of disease. Hepatology 2018;67:123-133.
141. Anstee QM, Reeves HL, Kotsiliti E, Govaere O, Heikenwalder M. From NASH to HCC: current concepts and future challenges. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2019;16:411-428.
142. Schwabe RF, Greten TF. Gut microbiome in HCC - mechanisms, diagnosis and therapy. J Hepatol 2020;72:230-238.
143. Park EJ, Lee JH, Yu GY, He G, Ali SR, Holzer RG, et al. Dietary and genetic obesity promote liver inflammation and tumorigenesis by enhancing IL-6 and TNF expression. Cell 2010;140:197-208.
144. Nakagawa H, Umemura A, Taniguchi K, Font-Burgada J, Dhar D, Ogata H, et al. ER stress cooperates with hypernutrition to trigger TNF-dependent spontaneous HCC development. Cancer Cell 2014;26:331-343.
145. Tanaka S, Miyanishi K, Kobune M, Kawano Y, Hoki T, Kubo T, et al. Increased hepatic oxidative DNA damage in patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis who develop hepatocellular carcinoma. J Gastroenterol 2013;48:1249-1258.
146. Gomes AL, Teijeiro A, Burén S, Tummala KS, Yilmaz M, Waisman A, et al. Metabolic inflammation-associated IL-17A causes non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and hepatocellular carcinoma. Cancer Cell 2016;30:161-175.
147. Ma C, Kesarwala AH, Eggert T, Medina-Echeverz J, Kleiner DE, Jin P, et al. NAFLD causes selective CD4(+) T lymphocyte loss and promotes hepatocarcinogenesis. Nature 2016;531:253-257.
148. Leslie J, Mackey JBG, Jamieson T, Ramon-Gil E, Drake TM, Fercoq F, et al. CXCR2 inhibition enables NASH-HCC Immunotherapy. Gut 2022;71:2093-2106.
149. Ye J, Li TS, Xu G, Zhao YM, Zhang NP, Fan J, et al. JCAD promotes progression of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis to liver cancer by inhibiting LATS2 kinase activity. Cancer Res 2017;77:5287-5300.
150. Guri Y, Colombi M, Dazert E, Hindupur SK, Roszik J, Moes S, et al. mTORC2 promotes tumorigenesis via lipid synthesis. Cancer Cell 2017;32:807-823.e12.
151. Fujiwara N, Nakagawa H, Enooku K, Kudo Y, Hayata Y, Nakatsuka T, et al. CPT2 downregulation adapts HCC to lipid-rich environment and promotes carcinogenesis via acylcarnitine accumulation in obesity. Gut 2018;67:1493-1504.
152. Wu H, Ng R, Chen X, Steer CJ, Song G. MicroRNA-21 is a potential link between non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and hepatocellular carcinoma via modulation of the HBP1-p53-Srebp1c pathway. Gut 2016;65:1850-1860.
153. Dapito DH, Mencin A, Gwak GY, Pradere JP, Jang MK, Mederacke I, et al. Promotion of hepatocellular carcinoma by the intestinal microbiota and TLR4. Cancer Cell 2012;21:504-516.
154. Liu YL, Patman GL, Leathart JB, Piguet AC, Burt AD, Dufour JF, et al. Carriage of the PNPLA3 rs738409 C >G polymorphism confers an increased risk of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease associated hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol 2014;61:75-81.
155. Haufe S, Engeli S, Kast P, Böhnke J, Utz W, Haas V, et al. Randomized comparison of reduced fat and reduced carbohydrate hypocaloric diets on intrahepatic fat in overweight and obese human subjects. Hepatology 2011;53:1504-1514.
156. European Association for the Study of the Liver, European As-

sociation for the Study of Diabetes, European Association for the Study of Obesity. EASL-EASD-EASO clinical practice guidelines for the management of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. J Hepatol 2016;64:1388-1402.
157. Eslam M, Sarin SK, Wong VW, Fan JG, Kawaguchi T, Ahn SH, et al. The Asian Pacific Association for the Study of the Liver clinical practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of metabolic associated fatty liver disease. Hepatol Int 2020;14:889-919.
158. Younossi ZM, Corey KE, Lim JK. AGA clinical practice update on lifestyle modification using diet and exercise to achieve weight loss in the management of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: expert review. Gastroenterology 2021;160:912-918.
159. Wong VW, Wong GL, Chan RS, Shu SS, Cheung BH, Li LS, et al. Beneficial effects of lifestyle intervention in non-obese patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. J Hepatol 2018;69:1349-1356.
160. Wong VW, Chan RS, Wong GL, Cheung BH, Chu WC, Yeung DK, et al. Community-based lifestyle modification programme for non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: a randomized controlled trial. J Hepatol 2013;59:536-542.
161. Vilar-Gomez E, Martinez-Perez Y, Calzadilla-Bertot L, Torres-Gonzalez A, Gra-Oramas B, Gonzalez-Fabian L, et al. Weight loss through lifestyle modification significantly reduces features of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Gastroenterology 2015;149:367-378.e5.
162. Storlien LH, Kraegen EW, Chisholm DJ, Ford GL, Bruce DG, Pascoe WS. Fish oil prevents insulin resistance induced by high-fat feeding in rats. Science 1987;237:885-888.
163. Sekiya M, Yahagi N, Matsuzaka T, Najima Y, Nakakuki M, Nagai R, et al. Polyunsaturated fatty acids ameliorate hepatic steatosis in obese mice by SREBP-1 suppression. Hepatology 2003;38:1529-1539.
164. Levy JR, Clore JN, Stevens W. Dietary n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids decrease hepatic triglycerides in Fischer 344 rats. Hepatology 2004;39:608-616.
165. Parker HM, Johnson NA, Burdon CA, Cohn JS, O'Connor HT, George J. Omega-3 supplementation and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Hepatol 2012;56:944-951.
166. Molloy JW, Calcagno CJ, Williams CD, Jones FJ, Torres DM, Harrison SA. Association of coffee and caffeine consumption with fatty liver disease, nonalcoholic steatohepatitis, and degree of hepatic fibrosis. Hepatology 2012;55:429-436.
167. Wijarnpreecha K, Thongprayoon C, Ungprasert P. Coffee consumption and risk of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2017;29:e8-e12.
168. Hashida R, Kawaguchi T, Bekki M, Omoto M, Matsuse H, Nago T, et al. Aerobic vs. resistance exercise in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: a systematic review. J Hepatol 2017;66:142-152.
169. Sullivan S, Kirk EP, Mittendorfer B, Patterson BW, Klein S. Randomized trial of exercise effect on intrahepatic triglyceride content and lipid kinetics in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology 2012;55:1738-1745.
170. Kistler KD, Brunt EM, Clark JM, Diehl AM, Sallis JF, Schwimmer JB. Physical activity recommendations, exercise intensity, and histological severity of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Am J Gastroenterol 2011;106:460-468.
171. Puzziferri N, Roshek TB 3rd, Mayo HG, Gallagher R, Belle SH, Livingston EH. Long-term follow-up after bariatric surgery: a systematic review. JAMA 2014;312:934-942.
172. O'Brien PE, Hindle A, Brennan L, Skinner S, Burton P, Smith A, et al. Long-term outcomes after bariatric surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis of weight loss at 10 or more years for all bariatric procedures and a single-centre review of 20-year outcomes after adjustable gastric banding. Obes Surg 2019;29:3-14.
173. Lee Y, Doumouras AG, Yu J, Brar K, Banfield L, Gmora S, et al. Complete resolution of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease after bariatric surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2019;17:1040-1060.e11.
174. Zhou H, Luo P, Li P, Wang G, Yi X, Fu Z, et al. Bariatric surgery improves nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: systematic review and meta-analysis. Obes Surg 2022;32:1872-1883.
175. Wirth KM, Sheka AC, Kizy S, Irey R, Benner A, Sieger G, et al. Bariatric surgery is associated with decreased progression of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease to cirrhosis: a retrospective cohort analysis. Ann Surg 2020;272:32-39.
176. Rustgi VK, Li Y, Gupta K, Minacapelli CD, Bhurwal A, Catalano C, et al. Bariatric surgery reduces cancer risk in adults with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and severe obesity. Gastroenterology 2021;161:171-184.e10.
177. Aminian A, Al-Kurd A, Wilson R, Bena J, Fayazzadeh H, Singh T, et al. Association of bariatric surgery with major adverse liver and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with biopsy-proven nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. JAMA 2021;326:2031-2042.
178. Chandan S, Mohan BP, Khan SR, Facciorusso A, Ramai D, Kassab LL, et al. Efficacy and safety of intragastric balloon (IGB) in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD): a comprehensive

review and meta-analysis. Obes Surg 2021;31:1271-1279.
179. Bazerbachi F, Vargas EJ, Rizk M, Maselli DB, Mounajjed T, Venkatesh SK, et al. Intragastric balloon placement induces significant metabolic and histologic improvement in patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2021;19:146-154.e4.
180. Hajifathalian K, Mehta A, Ang B, Skaf D, Shah SL, Saumoy M, et al. Improvement in insulin resistance and estimated hepatic steatosis and fibrosis after endoscopic sleeve gastroplasty. Gastrointest Endosc 2021;93:1110-1118.
181. van Baar ACG, Beuers U, Wong K, Haidry R, Costamagna G, Hafedi A, et al. Endoscopic duodenal mucosal resurfacing improves glycaemic and hepatic indices in type 2 diabetes: 6-month multicentre results. JHEP Rep 2019;1:429-437.
182. Karlas T, Petroff D, Feisthammel J, Beer S, Blüher M, Schütz T, et al. Endoscopic bariatric treatment with duodenal-jejunal bypass liner improves non-invasive markers of non-alcoholic Steatohepatitis. Obes Surg 2022;32:2495-2503.
183. Zhou D, Pan Q, Shen F, Cao HX, Ding WJ, Chen YW, et al. Total fecal microbiota transplantation alleviates high-fat diet-induced steatohepatitis in mice via beneficial regulation of gut microbiota. Sci Rep 2017;7:1529.
184. Mocanu V, Zhang Z, Deehan EC, Kao DH, Hotte N, Karmali S, et al. Fecal microbial transplantation and fiber supplementation in patients with severe obesity and metabolic syndrome: a randomized double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 2 trial. Nat Med 2021;27:1272-1279.
185. Witjes JJ, Smits LP, Pekmez CT, Prodan A, Meijnikman AS, Troelstra MA, et al. Donor fecal microbiota transplantation alters gut microbiota and metabolites in obese individuals with steatohepatitis. Hepatol Commun 2020;4:1578-1590.
186. Craven L, Rahman A, Nair Parvathy S, Beaton M, Silverman J, Qumosani K, et al. Allogenic fecal microbiota transplantation in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease improves abnormal small intestinal permeability: a randomized control trial. Am J Gastroenterol 2020;115:1055-1065.
187. Sumida Y, Yoneda M. Current and future pharmacological therapies for NAFLD/NASH. J Gastroenterol 2018;53:362-376.
188. Belfort R, Harrison SA, Brown K, Darland C, Finch J, Hardies J, et al. A placebo-controlled trial of pioglitazone in subjects with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. N Engl J Med 2006;355:2297-2307.
189. Aithal GP, Thomas JA, Kaye PV, Lawson A, Ryder SD, Spendlove I, et al. Randomized, placebo-controlled trial of pioglitazone in nondiabetic subjects with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Gastroenterology 2008;135:1176-1184.
190. Huang JF, Dai CY, Huang CF, Tsai PC, Yeh ML, Hsu PY, et al. First-in-Asian double-blind randomized trial to assess the efficacy and safety of insulin sensitizer in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis patients. Hepatol Int 2021;15:1136-1147.
191. Harrison SA, Ratziu V, Bedossa P, Dufour JF, Kruger F, Schattenberg JM, et al. RESOLVE-IT phase 3 trial of elafibranor in NASH: final results of the week 72 interim surrogate efficacy analysis; 2020 Nov 13 - Nov 16. Virginia: AASLD The Liver Meeting; 2020 Nov. 23 p.
192. Nakajima A, Eguchi Y, Yoneda M, Imajo K, Tamaki N, Suganami H, et al. Randomised clinical trial: pemafibrate, a novel selective peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor α modulator (SPPARMα), versus placebo in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2021;54:1263-1277.
193. Francque SM, Bedossa P, Ratziu V, Anstee QM, Bugianesi E, Sanyal AJ, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of the pan-PPAR agonist lanifibranor in NASH. N Engl J Med 2021;385:1547-1558.
194. Armstrong MJ, Gaunt P, Aithal GP, Barton D, Hull D, Parker R, et al. Liraglutide safety and efficacy in patients with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (LEAN): a multicentre, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled phase 2 study. Lancet 2016;387:679-690.
195. Newsome PN, Buchholtz K, Cusi K, Linder M, Okanoue T, Ratziu V, et al. A placebo-controlled trial of subcutaneous semaglutide in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. N Engl J Med 2021;384:1113-1124.
196. Wei Q, Xu X, Guo L, Li J, Li L. Effect of SGLT2 inhibitors on type 2 diabetes mellitus with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Front Endocrinol (Lausanne) 2021;12:635556.
197. Harrison SA, Neff G, Guy CD, Bashir MR, Paredes AH, Frias JP, et al. Efficacy and safety of aldafermin, an engineered FGF19 analog, in a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Gastroenterology 2021;160:219-231.e1.
198. Sanyal A, Charles ED, Neuschwander-Tetri BA, Loomba R, Harrison SA, Abdelmalek MF, et al. Pegbelfermin (BMS-986036), a PEGylated fibroblast growth factor 21 analogue, in patients with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 2a trial. Lancet 2019;392:2705-2717.
199. Harrison SA, Ruane PJ, Freilich BL, Neff G, Patil R, Behling CA, et al. Efruxifermin in non-alcoholic steatohepatitis: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 2a trial. Nat

Med 2021;27:1262-1271.
200. Calle RA, Amin NB, Carvajal-Gonzalez S, Ross TT, Bergman A, Aggarwal S, et al. ACC inhibitor alone or co-administered with a DGAT2 inhibitor in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: two parallel, placebo-controlled, randomized phase 2a trials. Nat Med 2021;27:1836-1848.
201. Ratziu V, de Guevara L, Safadi R, Poordad F, Fuster F, Flores-Figueroa J, et al. Aramchol in patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 2b trial. Nat Med 2021;27:1825-1835.
202. Harrison SA, Bashir MR, Guy CD, Zhou R, Moylan CA, Frias JP, et al. Resmetirom (MGL-3196) for the treatment of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis: a multicentre, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 2 trial. Lancet 2019;394:2012-2024.
203. Vilar-Gomez E, Vuppalanchi R, Gawrieh S, Ghabril M, Saxena R, Cummings OW, et al. Vitamin E improves transplant-free survival and hepatic decompensation among patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis and advanced fibrosis. Hepatology 2020;71:495-509.
204. Sanyal AJ, Chalasani N, Kowdley KV, McCullough A, Diehl AM, Bass NM, et al. Pioglitazone, vitamin E, or placebo for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. N Engl J Med 2010;362:1675-1685.
205. Harrison SA, Wong VW, Okanoue T, Bzowej N, Vuppalanchi R, Younes Z, et al. Selonsertib for patients with bridging fibrosis or compensated cirrhosis due to NASH: results from randomized phase III STELLAR trials. J Hepatol 2020;73:26-39.
206. Harrison SA, Gunn N, Neff GW, Kohli A, Liu L, Flyer A, et al. A phase 2, proof of concept, randomised controlled trial of berberine ursodeoxycholate in patients with presumed non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and type 2 diabetes. Nat Commun 2021;12:5503.
207. Neuschwander-Tetri BA, Loomba R, Sanyal AJ, Lavine JE, Van Natta ML, Abdelmalek MF, et al. Farnesoid X nuclear receptor ligand obeticholic acid for non-cirrhotic, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (FLINT): a multicentre, randomised, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 2015;385:956-965.
208. Mudaliar S, Henry RR, Sanyal AJ, Morrow L, Marschall HU, Kipnes M, et al. Efficacy and safety of the farnesoid X receptor agonist obeticholic acid in patients with type 2 diabetes and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Gastroenterology 2013;145:574-582.e1.
209. Younossi ZM, Ratziu V, Loomba R, Rinella M, Anstee QM, Goodman Z, et al. Obeticholic acid for the treatment of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis: interim analysis from a multicentre, randomised, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial. Lancet 2019;394:2184-2196.
210. Harrison SA, Goodman Z, Jabbar A, Vemulapalli R, Younes ZH, Freilich B, et al. A randomized, placebo-controlled trial of emricasan in patients with NASH and F1-F3 fibrosis. J Hepatol 2020;72:816-827.
211. Garcia-Tsao G, Bosch J, Kayali Z, Harrison SA, Abdelmalek MF, Lawitz E, et al. Randomized placebo-controlled trial of emricasan for non-alcoholic steatohepatitis-related cirrhosis with severe portal hypertension. J Hepatol 2020;72:885-895.
212. Friedman SL, Ratziu V, Harrison SA, Abdelmalek MF, Aithal GP, Caballeria J, et al. A randomized, placebo-controlled trial of cenicriviroc for treatment of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis with fibrosis. Hepatology 2018;67:1754-1767.
213. Ratziu V, Sanyal A, Harrison SA, Wong VW, Francque S, Goodman Z, et al. Cenicriviroc treatment for adults with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis and fibrosis: final analysis of the phase 2b CENTAUR study. Hepatology 2020;72:892-905.
214. Chalasani N, Abdelmalek MF, Garcia-Tsao G, Vuppalanchi R, Alkhouri N, Rinella M, et al. Effects of belapectin, an inhibitor of galectin-3, in patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis with cirrhosis and portal hypertension. Gastroenterology 2020;158:1334-1345.e5.
215. Dufour JF, Caussy C, Loomba R. Combination therapy for non-alcoholic steatohepatitis: rationale, opportunities and challenges. Gut 2020;69:1877-1884.
216. Loomba R, Noureddin M, Kowdley KV, Kohli A, Sheikh A, Neff G, et al. Combination therapies including cilofexor and firsocostat for bridging fibrosis and cirrhosis attributable to NASH. Hepatology 2021;73:625-643.
217. Alkhouri N, Herring R, Kabler H, Kayali Z, Hassanein T, Kohli A, et al. Safety and efficacy of combination therapy with semaglutide, cilofexor and firsocostat in patients with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis: a randomised, open-label phase II trial. J Hepatol 2022;77:607-618.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0237

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0321
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:99-101

Editorial

The emerging age-pattern changes of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma in Korea

Yuri Cho, Bo Hyun Kim, and Joong-Won Park

Center for Liver and Pancreatobiliary Cancer, National Cancer Center, Goyang, Korea

Keywords: Hepatocellular carcinoma; Aged; Epidemiology; Elderly

See Article on Page 120

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the third leading cause of cancer-related deaths worldwide and the second leading cause of cancer-related death in Korea.[1] Previous studies have reported that the incidence rate of HCC in Asia is more than 10-fold than that in Western countries.[2] The highest age-adjusted incidence rates (>13.7–17.8 per 100,000) are recorded in East Asia (Korea, China, Mongolia, and Vietnam) and sub-Saharan Africa in 2020, which accounts for approximately 80% of liver cancer worldwide.[2] Hepatitis B virus (HBV) is still the predominant etiology of HCC in Korea, China, and Taiwan, accounting for approximately 60–70% of HCCs.[3] The prevalence of chronic hepatitis B (CHB) ranged from 8% to 10% in the general population in the 1980s and early 1990s in Korea. However, owing to the universal vaccination program launched in 1983, the prevalence of CHB has significantly decreased. The Korea Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices also implemented the Hepatitis B Perinatal Transmission Prevention Program in July 2002. This program aimed to screen all pregnant women for CHB infection, provide prophylactic hepatitis B immunoglobulin to all infants born to hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)-positive mothers, and vaccinate all infants against HBV. The HBsAg-positivity rates in the 10–18 years group markedly declined to 2.2% in 1998, 1.9% in 2001, 1.9% in 2007, and 0.3% in the Korea National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey 2016.[4] Moreover, the use of potent nucleos(t)ide analogs significantly reduced the development of cirrhosis, leading to improved overall survival of patients with CHB.[5] All of these effective strategies have changed the incidence patterns of HCC over time in Korea.

Chon et al.[6] reported trends in HCC incidence in South Korea over 10 years (2008–2018) from the Korean National Health Insurance Service database (127,426 individuals) and predicted the incidence for the year 2028. From 2008 to 2018, the number and age-standardized incidence rates (ASRs; from 21.9 to 14.3 per 100,000 person-years) of HCC significantly decreased, except in older adults. Among individuals aged ≥80 years, the ASR significantly increased by 0.96% per year and the crude incidence rate of HCC also increased. From 2008 to 2018, the ASRs for individuals aged ≥80 years increased from 70.0 to 160.2 per 100,000 person-years.

Corresponding author : Joong-Won Park
Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine, Center for Liver and Pancreatobiliary Cancer, National Cancer Center, 323 Ilsan-ro, Ilsandong-gu, Goyang 10408, Korea
Tel: +82-31-920-1605, Fax: +82-31-920-1520, E-mail: jwpark@ncc.re.kr
https://orcid.org/0000-0001-9972-0494

Editor: Sung Won Lee, The Catholic University of Korea, Korea

Received : Oct. 19, 2022 / **Revised :** Oct. 24, 2022 / **Accepted :** Oct. 25, 2022

Interestingly, Chon et al.[6] also reported that the proportion of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD)-related HCC steadily increased from 2008 to 2018 (average annual percentage change, 2.7%; $P<0.001$), with a rapid increase from 2011 to 2018 at an average of 5.6% per year. NAFLD-related hepatocarcinogenesis is indeed characterized by a long-lasting and insidious development.[7-9] Patients with NAFLD-related HCC were generally older than those with virus-related HCC.[10] HCC risk is higher individuals with obesity[11] and diabetes,[12] as these conditions are two major risk factors for NAFLD. The pathogenesis of HCC in NAFLD is also independent of cirrhosis, and HCC in NAFLD might arise in the absence of fibrosis and histologically detectable inflammation. Obesity and excessive adipose tissue contribute to a chronic general low-grade inflammatory response, called lipotoxicity, and play an important role in hepatocarcinogenesis.[13] The alteration of gut microbiota in patients with NAFLD also leads to hepatocarcinogenesis,[14] which is affected by aging. Since Korea is a rapidly aging society, these factors might consistently increase the proportions of NAFLD-related HCC and older HCC patients.

The definition of "elderly" has become more difficult to agree. Generally, a chronological age of 65 years has been accepted as a threshold to define an "elderly" individual. In the scientific literature on HCC, the most commonly used threshold is 70 years.[15] More recently, clinical studies adopting thresholds of 75 or 80 years have been published.[16] The increasing age of patients with HCC brings some drawbacks to choosing treatment modality due to the occurrence of comorbidities, which can be associated with reduced tolerability and an increased risk of serious adverse events. The Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group performance status, which quantizes constitutional syndrome due to tumor burden, is one of the key factors that determine disease stage, consequently influencing the choice of treatment modality. Another problem frequently encountered in elderly patients with HCC is that they are relatively reluctant to undergo surgical resection or systemic therapies, erroneously considered too risky for older patients. Clinical trials specifically designed to compare HCC outcomes in older patients aged >75 years are lacking. IMbrave150 trial also included subjects with aged ≤71 years.[17] The available data on HCC outcomes in older patients with HCC are mainly from retrospective observational studies. Long-term survival in elderly patients with HCC is mainly dependent on their expected shorter life span than younger patients and the occurrence of comorbidities. Kim et al.[18] reported a retrospective Korean HCC cohort study showing that non-liver-related mortality was significantly higher in older patients (≥70 years) than in younger patients, although the overall survival was similar to that found in patients aged <70 years. Therefore, the allocation of treatment modalities should be determined according to HCC stage, liver function, and performance status,[19] rather than chronological age. Chronological age ≥75–80 years is not an absolute contraindication for surgical resection or systemic therapy. Older patients with resectable tumors and well-preserved liver function may benefit from surgical resection. Systemic therapy may also be a viable option for treating advanced HCC in older patients. Clinicians should carefully evaluate concomitant comorbidities, particularly cardiovascular diseases. Previous studies reported that tyrosine kinase inhibitors, including sorafenib and lenvatinib, were also effective and tolerable for older patients with HCC aged >70–75 years with more vigilant monitoring.[15,16] A recent multicenter analysis from Japan (n=317) also reported the safety and efficacy of atezolizumab plus bevacizumab in older patients with HCC aged ≥75 years. In a subgroup analysis of older patients aged 75–79, 80–84, and ≥85 years, w no significant differences were found in cumulative overall or progression-free survival and treatment-related adverse events among these age groups.[20] However, a recent multicenter retrospective observational study from Japan showed poorer tolerability to lenvatinib in older patients aged ≥80 years than in patients aged <80 years. Therefore, meticulous management[21] of adverse events is crucial for the adherence and maintenance of systemic therapies in older patients with HCC.

Changes in the epidemiology of chronic liver disease have led to changes in the age at HCC diagnosis in Korea. The proportion of older patients with HCC is gradually increasing. Additionally, Chon et al.[6] reported that by 2028, the number of patients with HCC aged ≥80 years will be greater than the number of HCC patients in 2008. It is not appropriate to re-

Abbreviations:

ASR, age-standardized incidence rate; CHB, chronic hepatitis B; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; NAFLD, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0321

strict the upper age limit for the HCC surveillance. Allocation of treatment modality should be determined according to HCC stage, liver function, and performance status, rather than chronological age.

Authors' contribution

Study conceptualization: YC and JWP; Drafting of the manuscript: YC; Critical revision of the manuscript: BHK, YC, and JWP

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Chon YE, Jeong SW, Jun DW. Hepatocellular carcinoma statistics in South Korea. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:512-514.
2. Zhu RX, Seto WK, Lai CL, Yuen MF. Epidemiology of hepatocellular carcinoma in the Asia-Pacific region. Gut Liver 2016;10:332-339.
3. Kim BH, Park JW. Epidemiology of liver cancer in South Korea. Clin Mol Hepatol 2018;24:1-9.
4. Korea Disease Control and Prevention Agency (KDCA). National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (KNHANES) 2016. KDCA web site, <https://knhanes.kdca.go.kr/knhanes/main.do>. Accessed 26 Oct 2022.
5. Kim SW, Yoon JS, Lee M, Cho Y. Toward a complete cure for chronic hepatitis B: novel therapeutic targets for hepatitis B virus. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:17-30.
6. Chon YE, Park SY, Hong HP, Son D, Lee J, Yoon E, et al. Hepatocellular carcinoma incidence is decreasing in Korea but increasing in the very elderly. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:120-134.
7. Kumar R, Goh BG, Kam JW, Chang PE, Tan CK. Comparisons between non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and alcohol-related hepatocellular carcinoma. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:196-208.
8. Shim JH. Should you advocate for hepatocellular carcinoma surveillance in patients with alcohol-related liver disease or non-alcoholic fatty liver disease? Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:183-184.
9. Kim HY, Dufour JF. Intricate interpretation of etiology-specific outcome comparison in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:238-239.
10. Ascha MS, Hanouneh IA, Lopez R, Tamimi TAR, Feldstein AF, Zein NN. The incidence and risk factors of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Hepatology 2010;51:1972-1978.
11. Nishida N. Metabolic disease as a risk of hepatocellular carcinoma. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:87-90.
12. Nakatsuka T, Tateishi R. Development and prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with diabetes. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:51-64.
13. Stickel F, Hellerbrand C. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease as a risk factor for hepatocellular carcinoma: mechanisms and implications. Gut 2010;59:1303-1307.
14. Zhao L. The gut microbiota and obesity: from correlation to causality. Nat Rev Microbiol 2013;11:639-647.
15. Wong H, Tang YF, Yao TJ, Chiu J, Leung R, Chan P, et al. The outcomes and safety of single-agent sorafenib in the treatment of elderly patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Oncologist 2011;16:1721-1728.
16. Tada T, Kumada T, Hiraoka A, Michitaka K, Atsukawa M, Hirooka M, et al. Safety and efficacy of lenvatinib in elderly patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: a multicenter analysis with propensity score matching. Hepatol Res 2020;50:75-83.
17. Finn RS, Qin S, Ikeda M, Galle PR, Ducreux M, Kim TY, et al. Atezolizumab plus bevacizumab in unresectable hepatocellular Carcinoma. N Engl J Med 2020;382:1894-1905.
18. Kim YJ, Jang BK, Kim ES, Chung WJ, Park KS, Cho KB, et al. Hepatocellular carcinoma in the elderly: clinical characteristics, treatment, survival analysis in Korean patients older than 70 years. J Korean Med Sci 2012;27:1147-1154.
19. Torimura T, Iwamoto H. Optimizing the management of intermediate-stage hepatocellular carcinoma: current trends and prospects. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:236-245.
20. Tada T, Kumada T, Hiraoka A, Hirooka M, Kariyama K, Tani J, et al. Safety and efficacy of atezolizumab plus bevacizumab in elderly patients with hepatocellular carcinoma: a multicenter analysis. Cancer Med 2022;11:3796-3808.
21. Shimose S, Koya S, Kawaguchi T, Hirota K, Yoshio S, Niizeki T, et al. Impact of branched-chain amino acids and frailty on the management of lenvatinib-related fatigue in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:616-619.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0353
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:102-104

Editorial

The rise of non-invasive tools in the diagnosis of portal hypertension: Validation of the Baveno VII consensus

Jeong-Ju Yoo and Sang Gyune Kim

Department of Internal Medicine, Soonchunhyang University School of Medicine, Bucheon, Korea

Keywords: Hypertension, portal; Liver cirrhosis; Baveno concensus

See Article on Page 135

Since its inception in 1986 by professor Robert deFranchis, the Baveno consensus is published every 5 years and has become the world's most-cited diagnostic guideline for portal hypertension.[1] Significant changes were made in the Baveno VII consensus released in 2021 compared to the 2015 Baveno VI consensus.[2,3] Table 1 is the comparison of the Baveno VI and VII criteria showing the unique features of the Baveno VII. Conditions like compensated advanced chronic liver disease (cACLD) and clinically significant portal hypertension (CSPH) are emphasized in both Baveno VI and VII. However, in Baveno VII, i) hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG) measurement and clinical importance were further underscored, ii) usefulness of transient elastography (TE) as a non-invasive test was highlighted, and iii) a cut-off for spleen stiffness to estimate CSPH was presented.[2]

The Baveno consensus is based on the results of recent research such as ANTICIPATE study and PREDESCI study.[4,5] However, the criteria of cACLD or CSPH based on a non-invasive test need to be validated in a large cohort to verify the clinical utility of the cut-offs for real-word applications.[6,7] Recently, a study was conducted to validate the recompensation criteria of the Baveno VII,[8] but few studies thus far have validated the CSPH criteria based on a non-invasive assessment. At an opportune time, Wong et al.[9] conducted a large-scale multinational study to validate the CSPH criteria based on TE and platelet count in cACLD patients (TE value ≥10 kPa). In this study, CSPH was classified into four groups. First two groups were: i) definite CSPH, TE >25 kPa; ii) excluded CSPH, TE <15 kPa and platelet count ≥150×10^9/L. If patients do not meet either of the first two criteria, they were classified as grey zone while patients in the grey zone were categorized into two groups; iii) high probability of CSPH, TE value between 20–25 kPa and platelet count <150×10^9/L, or TE value between 15–20 kPa and platelet count <110×10^9/L; and iv) low probability of CSPH (remainder of the patients within the grey zone who do not meet the high probability of CSPH condition).

Wong et al.[9] showed that the definite CSPH (TE >25 kPa) criterion can effectively predict liver decompensation and

Corresponding author : Sang Gyune Kim
Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Digestive Research Center and Liver clinic, Soonchunhyang University Bucheon Hospital, 170 Jomaru-ro, Bucheon 14584, Korea
Tel: +82-32-621-5215, Fax: +82-32-621-6079, E-mail: mcnulty@schmc.ac.kr
https://orcid.org/0000-0001-8694-777X

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Oct. 31, 2022 / **Revised :** Oct. 31, 2022 / **Accepted :** Nov. 1, 2022

Table 1. Comparison of the Baveno VI and VII criteria for cACLD and CSPH

	Baveno VI	Baveno VII
Exclude cACLD	TE value <10 kPa	TE value <10 kPa in the absence of other known clinical/imaging signs
Suggestive of cACLD (grey area)	TE value 10–15 kPa	TE value 10–15 kPa
Assume cACLD	TE value >15 kPa	TE value >15 kPa
Exclude CSPH in patients with cACLD	Not stated	TE value ≤15 kPa and platelet count ≥150×10^9/L
Assume CSPH in patients with cACLD	TE value ≥20–25 kPa, alone or combined to platelets and spleen size	TE value ≥25 kPa, alone (not applicable to obese [BMI >30 kg/m^2] patients with NASH cirrhosis)
Need for screening endoscopy	TE value ≥20 kPa or platelet count ≤150×10^9/L	TE value ≥20 kPa or platelet count ≤ 150×10^9/L
Spleen stiffness	Not stated	Can be used in cACLD due to viral hepatitis to rule out (SSM <21 kPa) and rule in (SSM >50 kPa) CSPH

cACLD, compensated advanced chronic liver disease; CSPH, clinically significant portal hypertension; TE, transient elastography; BMI, body mass index; NASH, nonalcoholic steatohepatitis; SSM, spleen stiffness measurement.

liver-related events. In particular, the fact that any patient with the excluded CSPH condition did not experience decompensation augments the reliability of the exclusion criteria. It is worth noting that the condition of high probability of CSPH was associated with multiple patterns of CSPH-related symptoms depending on etiology. In the grey zone, patients with viral etiology rarely experienced hepatic decompensation, whereas patients with non-viral etiology had a relatively increased risk of hepatic decompensation. This interpretation is based on the fact that all of the viral etiology patients enrolled in the study of Wong et al.[9] were in the state of viral suppression by antiviral treatment. On the other hand, the increased risk of non-viral etiology despite the exclusion of all patients with significant alcohol consumption in the study suggests that the risk of hepatic decompensation in the grey zone may be markedly higher in real clinical practice dealing with cases of active alcoholic cirrhosis. Regarding the grey zone, more empirical research is needed to examine the feasibility of a fine-tuned scheme of CSPH cut-off for each etiology.[10] For a more accurate prognosis of the CSPH among the patients within the grey zone, the spleen stiffness (SS) can be jointly considered in line with the proposition of the recent studies.[11,12] The use of SS was recommended for the first time in the Baveno VII, and SS can be used in viral hepatitis cACLD patients to rule out (SS <21 kPa) and rule in (SS >50 kPa) CSPH. Therefore, if SS values are used in combination with TE and platelet counts, the gray zone condition can be further subdivided. In particular, the results of SS would be promising because the current criteria for CSPH (TE >5 kPa) cannot be used for obese (body mass index >30 kg/m^2) patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH)-associated cirrhosis. The costly process of measuring SS in a large number of cACLD patients remains a challenge, though.

The criteria for recommending the non-selective beta-blockers (NSBBs) in the Baveno VII were not clearly defined. In this study, decision curve analysis demonstrated that an overall net benefit of using NSBB in cACLD patients is largest when treating only CSPH (HVPG ≥10 mmHg) rather than treating all varix or the probable CSPH group.[9] Similarly, NSBB was used only in the compensated cirrhosis with CSPH (HVPG ≥10 mmHg) patients in the PREDESCI study.[4] To identify the patient group in which the NSBB is clinically helpful, more studies are needed to further refine the cut-offs.[13]

The most notable limitation of this study is that four cohorts with high heterogenicity were pooled.[9] Specifically, the distribution of etiology markedly different across the four countries (i.e., Italy, hepatitis C only; Singapore, hepatitis C dominant; India and China, hepatitis B dominant) is likely to be a confounding factor. Also, patients with active viral hepatitis and active alcohol drinking were excluded and few

Abbreviations:

cACLD, compensated advanced chronic liver disease; CSPH, clinically significant portal hypertension; HVPG, hepatic venous pressure gradient; NASH, nonalcoholic steatohepatitis; NSBB, non-selective beta-blocker; SS, spleen stiffness; TE, transient elastography

obese NASH patients were included in the study, potentially limiting the generalizability of the cut-offs for CSPH in a broad range of patients.

The Baveno VII consensus and this study demonstrate the expanding application of TE to the prediction of cACLD, CSPH, and determination of NSBB appropriateness. In medical fields, there are trends of gradually decreasing use of invasive methods such as HVPG and endoscopy, and increasing use of non-invasive approaches.[13] In the future, it is expected that various cut-offs for portal hypertension would be developed in consideration of shear wave elastography and spleen stiffness measurement as well as TE. Although endoscopy is a useful tool for variceal surveillance, it is recommended to patients only when it is inevitable. Compared to other Western countries, endoscopy is easier to access and relatively inexpensive in South Korea due to its unique health care system. That being said, some potential adverse effects of endoscopy such as emission of greenhouse gases[14] can be mitigated by the use of endoscopy for sensibly targeted patients only.

Authors' contribution

Jeong-Ju Yoo contributed to write the manuscript. Sang Gyune Kim contributed to study concept and writing.

Acknowledgement

This study was supported by the Soonchunhyang University Research Fund.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. de Franchis R, Pascal JP, Ancona E, Burroughs AK, Henderson M, Fleig W, et al. Definitions, methodology and therapeutic strategies in portal hypertension. A consensus development workshop, Baveno, Lake Maggiore, Italy, April 5 and 6, 1990. J Hepatol 1992;15:256-261.
2. de Franchis R, Bosch J, Garcia-Tsao G, Reiberger T, Ripoll C; Baveno VII Faculty. Baveno VII - renewing consensus in portal hypertension. J Hepatol 2022;76:959-974.
3. de Franchis R; Baveno VI Faculty. Expanding consensus in portal hypertension: report of the Baveno VI consensus workshop: stratifying risk and individualizing care for portal hypertension. J Hepatol 2015;63:743-752.
4. Villanueva C, Albillos A, Genesca J, Garcia-Pagan JC, Calleja JL, Aracil C, et al. β blockers to prevent decompensation of cirrhosis in patients with clinically significant portal hypertension (PREDESCI): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre trial. Lancet 2019;393:1597-1608.
5. Abraldes JG, Bureau C, Stefanescu H, Augustin S, Ney M, Blasco H, et al. Noninvasive tools and risk of clinically significant portal hypertension and varices in compensated cirrhosis: the "ANTICIPATE" study. Hepatology 2016;64:2173-2184.
6. Kim BK. The cutoff of transient elastography for the evaluation of portal hypertension should be different according to the etiology? Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:91-93.
7. Ryu SR, Yoo JJ, Kang SH, Jeong SW, Kim MY, Cho YK, et al. The cut-off value of transient elastography to the value of hepatic venous pressure gradient in alcoholic cirrhosis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:197-206.
8. Wang Q, Zhao H, Deng Y, Zheng H, Xiang H, Nan Y, et al. Validation of Baveno VII criteria for recompensation in entecavir-treated patients with hepatitis B-related decompensated cirrhosis. J Hepatol 2022;77:1564-1572.
9. Wong YJ, Zhaojin C, Tosetti G, Degasperi E, Sharma S, Agarwal S, et al. Baveno-VII criteria to predict decompensation and initiate non-selective beta-blocker in compensated advanced chronic liver disease patients. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:135-145.
10. Yoon EL. A need for patient-centered care in managing patients with liver cirrhosis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:270-272.
11. Reiberger T. The value of liver and spleen stiffness for evaluation of portal hypertension in compensated cirrhosis. Hepatol Commun 2022;6:950-964.
12. Hu X, Huang X, Hou J, Ding L, Su C, Meng F. Diagnostic accuracy of spleen stiffness to evaluate portal hypertension and esophageal varices in chronic liver disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur Radiol 2021;31:2392-2404.
13. Korean Association for the Study of the Liver. KASL clinical practice guidelines for liver cirrhosis: varices, hepatic encephalopathy, and related complications. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:83-127.
14. Rodriguez de Santiago E, Dinis-Ribeiro M, Pohl H, Agrawal D, Arvanitakis M, Baddeley R, et al. Reducing the environmental footprint of gastrointestinal endoscopy: European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ESGE) and European Society of Gastroenterology and Endoscopy Nurses and Associates (ESGENA) position statement. Endoscopy 2022;54:797-826.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0361
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:105-109

Editorial

Non-invasive tests-based risk stratification: Baveno VII and beyond

Georg Semmler[1,2], Mathias Jachs[1,2], and Mattias Mandorfer[1,2]

[1]Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Internal Medicine III, Medical University of Vienna, Vienna; [2]Vienna Hepatic Hemodynamic Lab, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Internal Medicine III, Medical University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Keywords: Hypertension; Portal elasticity imaging techniques; Liver cirrhosis

See Article on Page 135

Portal hypertension is the main driver of complications in compensated advanced chronic liver disease (cACLD). Particularly, the presence of clinically significant portal hypertension (CSPH) identifies those at risk for hepatic decompensation.[1]

The recommendation of the recent Baveno VII consensus to treat CSPH upon diagnosis (i.e., prevention of hepatic decompensation), instead of waiting for (high-risk) varices to develop to initiate primary bleeding prophylaxis, marked a paradigm shift in clinical hepatology.[2] Specifically, endoscopies to screen for high-risk varices or performance of endoscopic band ligation have been a cornerstone in the management of cACLD patients (i.e., primary prophylaxis of variceal bleeding) until recently.[3,4] Following Baveno VII,[2] the presence of CSPH should be investigated by non-invasive tests (NIT)[5] or, where available, hepatic venous pressure gradient-measurement[6] upon the diagnosis of cACLD, to facilitate timely treatment initiation with non-selective betablockers (NSBB; preferably carvedilol) for preventing first hepatic decompensation[1,7,8] - most commonly, the occurrence of ascites.[2]

In a recent issue of Clinical and Molecular Hepatology, Wong and colleagues[9] set out to validate the performance of NIT to exclude CSPH (liver stiffness measurement [LSM] <15 kPa and platelet count [PLT] ≥150×10^9/L), rule-in CSPH (LSM ≥25 kPa), and to identify those at high probability for CSPH (LSM 20–25 kPa and PLT <150×10^9/L, or LSM 15–20 kPa and PLT <110×10^9/L) for the prediction of first hepatic decompensation in a multicentre cohort, including 1,159 'cACLD' patients from Italy, India, China, and Singapore. Notably, this multi-ethnic cohort included predominantly cured hepatitis C virus (HCV) (56%) or suppressed hepatitis B virus (HBV) (21%) patients; the median LSM was approximately 24 kPa at study inclusion, and the patients were followed for 40 months.

The authors report on several important aspects: patients in whom CSPH could be ruled-in (LSM ≥25 kPa; 37% of the

Corresponding author : Georg Semmler
Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Internal Medicine III, Medical University of Vienna, Waehringer Guertel 18-20, Vienna 1090, Austria
Tel: +43 1 40400 47440, Fax: +43 1 40400 47350, E-mail: georg.semmler@meduniwien.ac.at
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-0411-166X

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 1, 2022 / **Received :** Nov. 17, 2022 / **Accepted :** Nov. 17, 2022

study population) had a substantially increased risk of first hepatic decompensation within the follow-up period across all aetiologies (14% at 3 years). At the same time, patients in whom CSPH could be excluded (LSM <15 kPa and PLT ≥150×10^9/L) did not develop any hepatic decompensation during follow-up, yet a considerable proportion developed hepatocellular carcinoma. However, patients within the diagnostic/prognostic 'grey-zone' (i.e., not falling into one of these categories; 51% in this study) still had a relevant risk to develop first hepatic decompensation, especially in non-viral aetiologies. Also, using the selected criteria for a 'high probability of CSPH' within this grey-zone did not introduce any granularity, and was, therefore, insufficient for prognostication.

These data clearly support the utility of NIT-based criteria to rule-in or exclude CSPH and stratify the risk of its clinical sequalae in everyday practice, as they identify subsets of patients with profoundly different risks of first hepatic decompensation. However, a large proportion of patients (>50%) fall into neither category, leaving them unclassified. Here, recent approaches have introduced spleen stiffness measurement (SSM)[10] or the ratio of von Willebrand factor (VWF) and PLT (VITRO score)[11] to close this diagnostic gap (Fig. 1; 1st scenario).[12,13] Specifically, combining Baveno VII criteria (as outlined above) with SSM ≤40 kPa/>40 kPa,[12] or sequentially applying Baveno VII criteria and a VITRO-score ≤1.5 or ≥2.5 reallocated up to 75% of previously unclassified patients into the ruled-out/in category while maintaining a high diagnostic accuracy, thereby reducing the grey-zone for CSPH to only 10–15% of all cACLD patients.[12,13] Most importantly, both SSM- and VITRO-based approached were also able to discriminate between patients at risk vs. those not at risk for first hepatic decompensation.[12,13] The sequential application might especially be important to identify 'at-risk' patients with CSPH who are otherwise missed by LSM alone. While the ≥25 kPa cut-off is generally endorsed across all etiologies, the optimal cut-off for CSPH might vary across etiologies,[14-16] prompting other NIT, such as SSM/VWF/VITRO, that

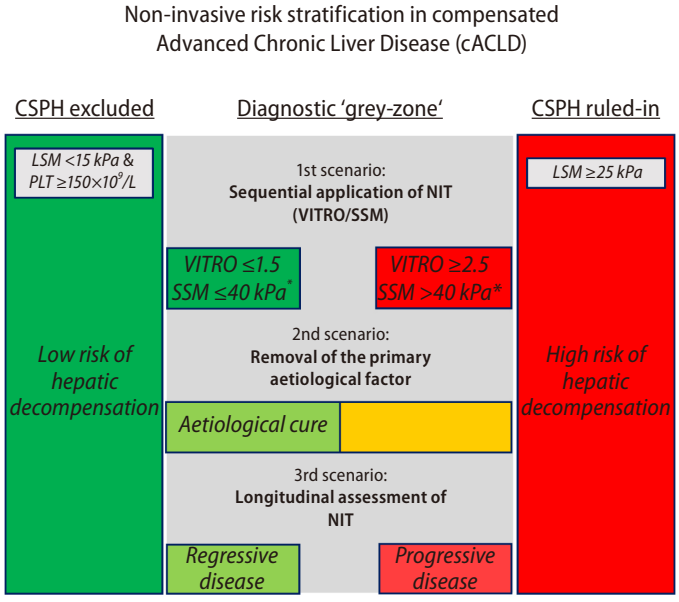


Figure 1. Three different approaches (i.e., scenarios) to improve risk stratification in the diagnostic grey-zone of clinically significant portal hypertension (CSPH). LSM, liver stiffness measurement; PLT, platelet count; NIT, non-invasive tests; VITRO, ratio of von Willebrand factor and platelet count; SSM, spleen stiffness measurement. *Modified from Dajti et al. (2022) requesting 2 of 3 criteria to exclude CSPH (LSM <15 kPa and PLT ≥150×10^9/L or SSM ≤40 kPa) and 2 of 3 to rule-in CSPH (LSM ≥25 kPa and PLT <150×10^9/L or SSM >40 kPa).

Abbreviations:

ALD, alcoholic liver disease; cACLD, compensated advanced chronic liver disease; CSPH, clinically significant portal hypertension; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCV, hepatitis C virus; LSM, liver stiffness measurement; NIT, non-invasive tests; NNT, number-needed-to-treat; NSBB, non-selective beta blocker; PLT, platelet count; SSM, spleen stiffness measurement; VITRO, ratio of von Willebrand factor and platelet count; VWF, von Willebrand factor

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0361

better reflect the dynamic component of portal hypertension.[17]

In general, the inclusion of 'cACLD' patients in whom the primary aetiological factor has been removed (i.e., HCV, 56%; alcoholic liver disease [ALD], 9%, patients with reported ongoing abuse were excluded) or suppressed (HBV, 21%) as done by Wong and colleagues[9] might indeed be reflective of todays 'real-world' practice, yet it introduces heterogeneity in the underlying risk for first hepatic decompensation. Here, numerous studies have shown that the risk of first hepatic decompensation is considerably lower after HCV-cure,[18] and that specific risk stratification algorithms for CSPH[19] but also first hepatic decompensation (e.g., by combining LSM and VITRO) are required[20,21] while the overall accuracy of NIT for CSPH is generally comparable.[22] To account for these peculiarities, the term 'cACLD' as currently defined by Baveno VII even explicitly excludes patients after removal of the primary aetiological factor ('the term cACLD had been proposed to reflect the continuum of severe fibrosis and cirrhosis in patients with ongoing chronic liver disease'[2])–which was not accounted for in this study.

Most interestingly, non-viral aetiology (which basically reflects the absence of 'removal of the primary aetiological factor') had a stronger impact on first hepatic decompensation risk as compared to having a high probability of CSPH (i.e., the disease stage) at baseline (subdistribution hazard ratio, 3.25 vs. 2.48). This underscores the profound change in underlying risk achieved by aetiological cure, as it already provides a glimpse into the likely future of the patient (i.e., progressive vs. regressive disease). At the same time, this strongly argues for the incorporation of the concept of 'aetiology'/'removal of the primary aetiological factor' into risk stratification models (Fig. 1; 2nd scenario). Alternatively, NITs offer the unique opportunity to longitudinally monitor disease dynamics (progression vs. regression), and therefore, repeated re-staging (Fig. 1; 3rd scenario). Here, it remains to be shown whether the underlying risk may be even better captured by repeating NITs (i.e., NIT trajectories) and whether the consideration of these trajectories outperforms concepts of 'aetiology'/'removal of the primary aetiological factor' alone.

Importantly, patients with NSBB treatment at baseline were excluded from this study. However, this may underestimate the risk of first hepatic decompensation among CSPH ruled-in patients encountered (but not scoped) in recent clinical practice, as patients with high-risk varices (and thus, most severe portal hypertension/highest decompensation risk) were underrepresented by design. Also, patients were not censored at the time of the initiation of prophylactic treatment (in particular, NSBB therapy), which may also have decreased the first hepatic decompensation risk.

Compared to the "PREDESCI" study, and as discussed by the authors, the risk of first hepatic decompensation was considerably lower in the study by Wong and colleagues[9] (24% in the placebo group of the "PREDESCI" study vs. 13.3% of CSPH ruled-in patients from this study).[23] While this can be explained by differences in the underlying patient population (patients with CSPH vs. CSPH ruled-in by NIT; only active HCV infection in the PREDESCI trial vs. only cured HCV patients in the present study), it also influences the number-needed-to-treat (NNT) for NSBB, which might be even lower than in the study by Wong and colleagues[9] (proposed NNT of 27–50). This calls for a 'non-invasive' PREDESCI trial to re-ensure our current clinical practice using contemporary patients.

Finally, it remains unclear how regional differences in healthcare might have confounded the results of our study, as aetiologies showed profound geographical clustering: 59%/27% of all HCV patients were treated in Italy/Singapore; 57% of all HBV patients were treated in China, 86% of all ALD patients were treated in India; and 68% of all NASH-patients were treated in India. Since including patients from around the globe does not guarantee the generalizability of the findings to a specific region, evaluating geographical regions/aetiologies independently might be another important task for future studies.

All things considered, the study by Wong et al.[9] is an important proof-of-concept, indicating that non-invasive risk stratification for CSPH is valid across different aetiologies, ethnicities, and countries, as it identifies patients at risk for first hepatic decompensation who may benefit from NSBB treatment (CSPH ruled-in), and those at negligible risk of hepatic decompensation (CSPH excluded). More granular information is required to optimize risk stratification/treatment allocation in the broad diagnostic grey-zone of the Baveno VII recommendations; however, specifically designed NIT-based approaches (SSM[12] and VITRO[13]) have already been added to our armamentarium. Finally, a randomized controlled trial would be desirable to provide a definite proof for the Baveno VII approach to use NSBB treatment to prevent first hepatic

decompensation in patients in whom CSPH has been ruled-in non-invasively.

Authors' contribution

Drafting of the manuscript (G.S., M.J., M.M.), critical revision of the manuscript for important intellectual content (G.S., M.J., M.M.).

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Mandorfer M, Simbrunner B. Prevention of first decompensation in advanced chronic liver disease. Clin Liver Dis 2021;25:291-310.
2. de Franchis R, Bosch J, Garcia-Tsao G, Reiberger T, Ripoll C; Baveno VII Faculty. Baveno VII - renewing consensus in portal hypertension. J Hepatol 2022;76:959-974.
3. de Franchis R; Baveno VI Faculty. Expanding consensus in portal hypertension: report of the Baveno VI consensus workshop: stratifying risk and individualizing care for portal hypertension. J Hepatol 2015;63:743-752.
4. Lesmana CRA, Raharjo M, Gani RA. Managing liver cirrhotic complications: overview of esophageal and gastric varices. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:444-460.
5. Mandorfer M, Hernández-Gea V, García-Pagán JC, Reiberger T. Noninvasive diagnostics for portal hypertension: a comprehensive review. Semin Liver Dis 2020;40:240-255.
6. Reiberger T, Schwabl P, Trauner M, Peck-Radosavljevic M, Mandorfer M. Measurement of the hepatic venous pressure gradient and transjugular liver biopsy. J Vis Exp 2020;160:e58819.
7. Yoon KT, Liu H, Lee SS. β-blockers in advanced cirrhosis: more friend than enemy. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:425-436.
8. Jachs M, Reiberger T. Prevention of variceal bleeding and rebleeding by nonselective beta-blockers: a tailored approach. Clin Liver Dis 2021;25:311-326.
9. Wong YJ, Zhaojin C, Tosetti G, Degasperi E, Sharma S, Agarwal S, et al. Baveno-VII criteria to predict decompensation and initiate non-selective beta-blocker in compensated advanced chronic liver disease patients. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:135-145.
10. Reiberger T. The value of liver and spleen stiffness for evaluation of portal hypertension in compensated cirrhosis. Hepatol Commun 2022;6:950-964.
11. Schwarzer R, Reiberger T, Mandorfer M, Kivaranovic D, Hametner S, Hametner S, et al. The von Willebrand factor antigen to platelet ratio (VITRO) score predicts hepatic decompensation and mortality in cirrhosis. J Gastroenterol 2020;55:533-542.
12. Dajti E, Ravaioli F, Marasco G, Alemanni LV, Colecchia L, Ferrarese A, et al. A combined Baveno VII and spleen stiffness algorithm to improve the noninvasive diagnosis of clinically significant portal hypertension in patients with compensated advanced chronic liver disease. Am J Gastroenterol 2022;117:1825-1833.
13. Jachs M, Hartl L, Simbrunner B, Bauer D, Paternostro R, Scheiner B, et al. The sequential application of Baveno VII criteria and VITRO score improves diagnosis of clinically significant portal hypertension. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2022 Oct 14. doi: 10.1016/j.cgh.2022.09.032.
14. Kim G, Kim MY, Baik SK. Transient elastography versus hepatic venous pressure gradient for diagnosing portal hypertension: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2017;23:34-41.
15. Ryu SR, Yoo JJ, Kang SH, Jeong SW, Kim MY, Cho YK, et al. The cut-off value of transient elastography to the value of hepatic venous pressure gradient in alcoholic cirrhosis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:197-206.
16. Kim BK. The cutoff of transient elastography for the evaluation of portal hypertension should be different according to the etiology? Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:91-93.
17. Königshofer P, Hofer BS, Brusilovskaya K, Simbrunner B, Petrenko O, Wöran K, et al. Distinct structural and dynamic components of portal hypertension in different animal models and human liver disease etiologies. Hepatology 2022;75:610-622.
18. Nahon P, Bourcier V, Layese R, Audureau E, Cagnot C, Marcellin P, et al. Eradication of hepatitis C virus infection in patients with cirrhosis reduces risk of liver and non-liver complications. Gastroenterology 2017;152:142-156.e2.
19. Mandorfer M, Kozbial K, Schwabl P, Chromy D, Semmler G, Stättermayer AF, et al. Changes in hepatic venous pressure gradient predict hepatic decompensation in patients who achieved sustained virologic response to interferon-free therapy. Hepatology 2020;71:1023-1036.
20. Semmler G, Binter T, Kozbial K, Schwabl P, Hametner-Schreil S, Zanetto A, et al. Noninvasive risk stratification after HCV eradication in patients with advanced chronic liver disease. Hepatology 2021;73:1275-1289.
21. Pons M, Rodríguez-Tajes S, Esteban JI, Mariño Z, Vargas V, Lens S, et al. Non-invasive prediction of liver-related events in patients with HCV-associated compensated advanced chronic liver dis-

ease after oral antivirals. J Hepatol 2020;72:472-480.
22. Semmler G, Lens S, Meyer EL, Baiges A, Alvardo-Tapias E, Llop E, et al. Non-invasive tests for clinically significant portal hypertension after HCV cure. J Hepatol 2022;77:1573-1585.
23. Villanueva C, Albillos A, Genescà J, Garcia-Pagan JC, Calleja JL, Aracil C, et al. β blockers to prevent decompensation of cirrhosis in patients with clinically significant portal hypertension (PREDESCI): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre trial. Lancet 2019;393:1597-1608.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0414
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:110-112

Editorial

Baveno VII criteria to predict decompensation in compensated advanced chronic liver disease: Still some shades of grey

Susana G. Rodrigues

Department of Visceral Surgery and Medicine, Inselspital, Bern University Hospital, University of Bern, Bern, Switzerland

Keywords: Portal hypertension; Cirrhosis; Portal pressure; Risk assessment; Elastography

See Article on Page 135

For over six decades, hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG) has been the established method to assess accurately portal pressure in patients with cirrhosis[1-3] and the best predictor of decompensation in compensated patients.[4] Given its invasive nature and reduced accessibility in most centers, HVPG is limited in its widespread applicability. The appearance of noninvasive tests (NITs), most notably, transient elastography,[5] catapulted these methods from diagnostic and staging tools to prognostic markers for the evaluation of portal hypertension. In the previous Baveno VI, NIT criteria were defined to stratify patients with high-risk varices, sparing endoscopies.[6] The most recent Baveno VII took the role of NITs in patients with clinically significant portal hypertension (CSPH) one step further by defining cut-offs for the presence of CSPH and prognosis, risk stratification and indication for start of beta-blocker therapy.[7]

In a recent issue of *Clinical and Molecular Hepatology*, Wong et al.[8] reported, in a retrospective cohort study, that one-third of compensated advanced chronic liver disease (cACLD) patients fulfilled the non-invasive criteria of CSPH defined in the Baveno VII Consensus Workshop.[7] These criteria had yet to be evaluated to predict the risk of decompensation, making this a very timely study. The authors found that, although the noninvasive assessment of CSPH predicts first liver decompensation (variceal bleeding, clinically overt ascites and overt hepatic encephalopathy), and the need for non-selective beta-blocker (NSBB) in cACLD patients, for patients in the category "probable CSPH" these criteria were suboptimal to predict decompensation in cACLD patients. Over three-fourths of the patients included in this multicentre study had treated hepatitis B or C-associated cACLD. In this study, the Baveno VII criteria to define CSPH (liver stiffness measurement [LSM] ≥25 kPa) and exclude it (LSM <15 kPa and platelet count [PLT] ≥150×10^9/L) were used.[7] Grey zones were classified into two groups: (high – LSM between 20–25 kPa and PLT <150×10^9/L, or LSM between 15–20 kPa and PLT <110×10^9/L, or low – defined as the remaining patients within the grey zone).[7] Within a median follow-up of 40 months (30–52), among the 1,159 cACLD patients, 7.2% developed a first decompensation (ascites, variceal bleeding or hepatic encephalopathy), 5.8% hepatocellular carcinoma and 4.4%

Corresponding author : **Susana G. Rodrigues**
Department of Visceral Surgery and Medicine, Inselspital, Bern University Hospital, University of Bern, Freiburgstrasse 18, Bern 3010, Switzerland
Tel: +41-31 632 59 00, Fax: +41-31 632 59 99, E-mail: Susana.GomesRodrigues@insel.ch
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-3261-2795

Editor: Han Ah Lee, Korea University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 23, 2022 / **Revised :** Dec. 4, 2022 / **Accepted :** Dec. 6, 2022

died. Decision curve analysis to assess various screening strategies to stratify patients for NSBB to prevent decompensation showed treating definite CSPH (LSM ≥25 kPa) as a superior strategy was to "treating probable CSPH" and "treating any varices" to initiate NSBB. The number needed to treat was 27 and 50, at treatment thresholds of 5% and 10%, respectively.[8]

The Baveno VII consensus cut-offs were based on previous studies, such as the ANTICIPATE study which showed that using NITs, namely LSM combined with PLT showed an excellent discriminative value (AUC, 0.85) in patients with Child-Pugh A compensated cirrhosis.[9] A subsequent study including more patients with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) demonstrated that a LSM ≥25 kPa is sufficient to rule in CSPH in most aetiologies, including nonobese patients with NASH, but not in obese patients with NASH.[10] The "rule of five" for LSM, at 5–10–15–20–25 kPa, is a tool to stratify the risk of liver-related events, and LSM alone or in combination with PLT, was presented at the recent Baveno VII meeting, and can be used to rule-in and rule-out cACLD and CSPH, as well as to rule-out high-risk varices.[7] During the preparation for the Baveno VII consensus, an individual patient data meta-analysis was performed in patients with cACLD after hepatitis C virus (HCV) eradication, with paired HVPG and LSM, and recently published.[11] Regarding the association between NITs and HVPG, a stronger correlation between LSM and HVPG was observed after HCV cure than in patients with active HCV infection, and similar for PLT and HVPG.[11] Furthermore, LSM/PLT ratio for CSPH was comparable or tended to be even better after HCV cure compared to pre-treatment (AUC 0.753 vs. 0.800 for PLT, 0.831 vs. 0.837 for LSM, and 0.871 vs. 0.884 for both).[11] The authors applied these criteria for LSM and PLT to predict decompensation in a validation cohort of cACLD patients. The 3-year decompensation risk was 0% in patients who met the LSM <12 kPa and PLT >150 g/L criteria. In patients with LSM ≥25 kPa, the 3-year decompensation risk was 9.6%. Among the 40.7% between these cut-offs, only 1.3% developed a decompensation.[11]

There are several limitations of the study by Wong et al.[8] Among these, are the variability in patients' characteristics and clinical practices across the different institutions, the retrospective nature of the study introduces particularly information bias, not accounting for missing information in patients' records. As the authors mentioned over 75% of the patients included had treated viral cACLD, the applicability of these criteria for patients with other aetiologies remains unclear. In this study, the non-viral aetiology, such as alcohol- or metabolic-related, was identified as one driving factor of liver decompensation, which is unsurprising. The study leaves questions regarding the role "active versus treated disease", regarding the applicability of the Baveno VII criteria.

The study by Wong et al.[8] has highlighted the need to better stratify the 40–50% of cACLD patients that belong to the "grey zone" of LSM 15–25 kPa for CSPH according to the Baveno VII criteria. In fact, pilot data from a recent retrospective study, using an algorithm combining spleen stiffness measurement (cut-off >/<40 kPa) with the latest rule in and rule out CSPH criteria (LSM ≤15 kPa + PLT ≥150 g/L to rule out CSPH and LSM >25 kPa to rule in CSPH), reduced the grey zone from 40–60% to 7–15%. All first decompensation events occurred in the "rule-in" zone of the model including spleen stiffness measurement.[12] Besides combining with other tools to refine the patients at risk, these criteria require validation in patients with nonviral causes for cACLD, particularly in obese NASH patients, where LSM is not as accurate.[10] Additionally, the role cofactors, such as obesity and diabetes, play in disease progression and LSMs values is a matter of further investigation. Apart from expanding NITs in different aetiologies,[13] there is a need for further validate NITs other than transient elastography in cACLD. Another point to explore is the validation of the use of deltas of LSM alone or in combination with other NITs, such as Fibrosis-4 index, and which reduction in stiffness, constitutes an improvement with clinical significance. Recent data has shown that a percentage drop in stiffness, 10% or 20%, can help predict liver-related events.[14,15] Until date, very few studies have analysed the use of NITs alone or in combination with other markers, to evaluate response to beta-blocker therapy.[16,17] Despite the grey areas that remain, the recent Baveno VII criteria have sent the ball rolling to expand the role of NITs in the clinical management of patients, solidifying their crucial role in patients with cACLD.

Abbreviations:

cACLD, compensated advanced chronic liver disease; CSPH, clinically significant portal hypertension; HCV, hepatitis C virus; HVPG, hepatic venous pressure gradient; LSM, liver stiffness measurement; NASH, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis; NIT, noninvasive test; NSBB, non-selective beta-blocker; PLT, platelet count

Conflicts of Interest

The author has no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Myers JD, Taylor WJ. Occlusive hepatic venous catheterization in the study of the normal liver, cirrhosis of the liver and noncirrhotic portal hypertension. Circulation 1956;13:368-380.
2. Thalheimer U, Leandro G, Samonakis DN, Triantos CK, Patch D, Burroughs AK. Assessment of the agreement between wedge hepatic vein pressure and portal vein pressure in cirrhotic patients. Dig Liver Dis 2005;37:601-608.
3. Viallet A, Joly JG, Marleau D, Lavoie P. Comparison of free portal venous pressure and wedged hepatic venous pressure in patients with cirrhosis of the liver. Gastroenterology 1970;59:372-375.
4. Ripoll C, Groszmann R, Garcia-Tsao G, Grace N, Burroughs A, Planas R, et al. Hepatic venous pressure gradient predicts clinical decompensation in patients with compensated cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 2007;133:481-488.
5. Sandrin L, Fourquet B, Hasquenoph JM, Yon S, Fournier C, Mal F, et al. Transient elastography: a new noninvasive method for assessment of hepatic fibrosis. Ultrasound Med Biol 2003;29:1705-1713.
6. de Franchis R; Baveno VI Faculty. Expanding consensus in portal hypertension: report of the Baveno VI consensus workshop: stratifying risk and individualizing care for portal hypertension. J Hepatol 2015;63:743-752.
7. de Franchis R, Bosch J, Garcia-Tsao G, Reiberger T, Ripoll C; Baveno VII Faculty. Baveno VII - renewing consensus in portal hypertension. J Hepatol 2022;76:959-974.
8. Wong YJ, Zhaojin C, Tosetti G, Degasperi E, Sharma S, Agarwal S, et al. Baveno-VII criteria to predict decompensation and initiate non-selective beta-blocker in compensated advanced chronic liver disease patients. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:135-145.
9. Abraldes JG, Bureau C, Stefanescu H, Augustin S, Ney M, Blasco H, et al. Noninvasive tools and risk of clinically significant portal hypertension and varices in compensated cirrhosis: the "ANTICIPATE" study. Hepatology 2016;64:2173-2184.
10. Pons M, Augustin S, Scheiner B, Guillaume M, Rosselli M, Rodrigues SG, et al. Noninvasive diagnosis of portal hypertension in patients with compensated advanced chronic liver disease. Am J Gastroenterol 2021;116:723-732.
11. Semmler G, Lens S, Meyer EL, Baiges A, Alvardo-Tapias E, Llop E, et al. Non-invasive tests for clinically significant portal hypertension after HCV cure. J Hepatol 2022;77:1573-1585.
12. Dajti E, Ravaioli F, Marasco G, Alemanni LV, Colecchia L, Ferrarese A, et al. A combined Baveno VII and spleen stiffness algorithm to improve the noninvasive diagnosis of clinically significant portal hypertension in patients with compensated advanced chronic liver disease. Am J Gastroenterol 2022;117:1825-1833.
13. Kim BK. The cutoff of transient elastography for the evaluation of portal hypertension should be different according to the etiology? Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:91-93.
14. Pons M, Simón-Talero M, Millán L, Ventura-Cots M, Santos B, Augustin S, et al. Basal values and changes of liver stiffness predict the risk of disease progression in compensated advanced chronic liver disease. Dig Liver Dis 2016;48:1214-1219.
15. Hagström H, Talbäck M, Andreasson A, Walldius G, Hammar N. Repeated FIB-4 measurements can help identify individuals at risk of severe liver disease. J Hepatol 2020;73:1023-1029.
16. Kim HY, So YH, Kim W, Ahn DW, Jung YJ, Woo H, et al. Noninvasive response prediction in prophylactic carvedilol therapy for cirrhotic patients with esophageal varices. J Hepatol 2019;70:412-422.
17. Marasco G, Dajti E, Ravaioli F, Alemanni LV, Capuano F, Gjini K, et al. Spleen stiffness measurement for assessing the response to β-blockers therapy for high-risk esophageal varices patients. Hepatol Int 2020;14:850-857.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0333
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:113-117

Editorial

Moving toward hepatitis B virus functional cure - the impact of on-treatment kinetics of serum viral markers

Lilian Yan Liang[1,2], Vincent Wai-Sun Wong[1,2], Grace Lai-Hung Wong[1,2], and Terry Cheuk-Fung Yip[1,2]

[1]Medical Data Analytics Center, Department of Medicine and Therapeutics, The Chinese University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong; [2]State Key Laboratory of Digestive Disease, Institute of Digestive Disease, The Chinese University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong

Keywords: Hepatitis B virus; Hepatitis B; Antiviral agents

See Article on Page 146

BACKGROUND

Functional cure of chronic hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection, which is currently set as the treatment goal of new HBV therapies, is serologically defined as the clearance of hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), with or without anti-HBs seroconversion, and undetectable serum HBV DNA.[1] A handful of studies have shown that patients with chronic hepatitis B (CHB) who achieve functional cure generally have a favorable clinical course – namely much reduced risk of hepatic events and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC).[2] Nonetheless, there is still a low yet definite risk of HCC occurrence, especially in male patients who achieve functional cure after 50 years of age.[3] While the current antiviral treatment with oral nucleos(t)ide analogues (NAs) are potent and safe, they generally lead to very low rates of functional cure; hence, novel HBV therapeutic regimens are eagerly wanted for improving the functional cure rate.[4,5]

Before achieving functional cure, the holy grail of treatment goals, favourable HBsAg response (FHR) is a reasonable intermediate step towards HBV cure. FHR was defined as HBsAg seroclearance or HBsAg ≤100 IU/mL at the end of follow-up (EOFU). Such a low HBsAg cutoff is often adopted for stopping NA therapy in hepatitis B e antigen (HBeAg)-negative patients, as their relapse rate would be low.[6] End-of-treatment HBsAg <100 IU/mL is also one of the few virologic predictors of functional cure.[1] Several studies have investigated the functional cure rate after stopping NA in HBeAg-negative patients, with variable rates of success ranging from 2.7–16.7%/year in Caucasian patients and 0–3.8%/year among Asian patients; the most consistent predictor of functional cure is a low HBsAg level at the time of NA withdrawal.[1]

KEY FINDINGS

Overview of study methodology

Mak and colleagues[7] examined the serum hepatitis B core-

Corresponding author : Terry Cheuk-Fung Yip
Department of Medicine and Therapeutics, Prince of Wales Hospital, 5/F, Clinical Sciences Building, 30-32 Ngan Shing Street, Shatin, Hong Kong
Tel: +852-35053125, Fax: +852-26373852, E-mail: tcfyip@cuhk.edu.hk
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-1819-2464

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Oct. 24, 2022 / **Revised :** Oct. 26, 2022 / **Accepted :** Oct. 26, 2022

related antigen (HBcrAg) and HBV pre-genomic RNA (pgRNA) in the first 48 weeks of NA treatment in 64 CHB patients. Analyses were performed separately in 28 HBeAg-positive and 36 HBeAg-negative patients. These patients had participated in previous phase III trials, during which they received lamivudine, adefovir dipivoxil, telbivudine, clevudine, or entecavir with serum samples collected at weeks 0, 4, 12, 24, 36, and 48 of treatment and paired liver biopsies at weeks 0 and 48. HBcrAg was measured with a lower limit of detection (LLOD) of 2 log U/mL and a reliable quantification at >3 log U/mL. HBV RNA was measured using an investigational assay with a LLOD of 1 log copies/mL. Patients with undetectable serum HBV pgRNA or HBcrAg at week 0 were excluded from the analysis of early on-treatment changes of viral markers. Due to censoring and the difference in follow-up durations between patients with and without FHR at the EOFU, time-dependent area under receiver operating curve was utilized to assess the discriminatory ability of HBcrAg and HBV pg RNA.

Clinical meaning of HBV pgRNA decline

At a median follow-up duration of 17 years, 22/64 patients achieved FHR, including eight cases of HBsAg seroclearance. At the start of NA therapy, HBeAg-positive patients had higher HBV pgRNA compared to HBeAg-negative patients (4.9 vs. 3.3 log copies/mL). The median HBV pgRNA reduced to the LLOD at week 48 and week 12 for HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative patients, respectively. The difference in median reduction of HBV pgRNA between FHR and non-FHR patients was prominent among HBeAg-positive patients, with over 1 log difference sustained between week 4 and week 48. Patients with FHR had a higher HBV pgRNA in the first 12 weeks than those without FHR, while the level was comparable after week 24. The decline of HBV pgRNA at weeks 4 and 48 were the most discriminative of FHR. In contrast, among HBeAg-negative patients, the HBV pgRNA level and its reduction did not significantly differ throughout the first 48 weeks between patients with and without FHR.

Serum HBV RNA is a novel biomarker that can measure the circulating HBV pgRNA present in virus-like particles.[8,9] Serum HBV RNA is a mixture of intact, pre-genomic and subgenomic, spliced, truncated, and polyA-free species,[10] which reflects the transcriptional activity of intrahepatic covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA).[11] HBV RNA level at NA treatment cessation also correlates with post-treatment viral relapse.[11] Notably, while there was a significant reduction of HBV pgRNA, no significant differences in the reduction of intrahepatic total HBV DNA and cccDNA level were observed at week 48 between HBeAg-positive patients with and without FHR.[7] One may speculate that cccDNA transcriptional activity is more predictive of FHR than its absolute amount. Nevertheless, the difference in the role of pgRNA in HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative patients remain unclear. Also, assays for serum HBV RNA should be standardized and validated to better define its clinical utility.[11]

Clinical meaning of HBcrAg decline

Mak and colleagues[7] also demonstrated the importance of early decline in serum HBcrAg at week 4 during antiviral treatment, which was associated with FHR in HBeAg-negative patients. HBcrAg is a novel biomarker in CHB patients and consists of the hepatitis B core antigen, HBeAg, and the 22-kDa precore protein.[12] It gradually decreased after antiviral therapy. Patients with severe alanine transaminase flares had increased HBcrAg levels after antiviral therapy cessation, and the concentration declined after recommencing antiviral therapy.[13]

The decline of HBcrAg during antiviral therapy reflects intrahepatic cccDNA reduction and suppression of viral replication activity. HBcrAg decline was positively correlated with HBsAg reduction or HBeAg seroconversion.[14] While the HBeAg expression outnumbers the HBcrAg expression in HBeAg-positive patients, the predictive performance of HBcrAg on FHR may be affected. After antiviral treatment cessation, patients with lower HBcrAg levels are more likely to have HBsAg loss (Table 1).[15] It may be appropriate to monitor HBcrAg to assess clinical outcomes and treatment effects. HBcrAg would be a substitute marker for predicting the

Abbreviations:

cccDNA, covalently closed circular DNA; CHB, chronic hepatitis B; EOFU, end of follow-up; FHR, favourable HBsAg response; HBcrAg, hepatitis B core-related antigen; HBeAg, hepatitis B e antigen; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; LLOD, lower limit of detection; NAs, nucleos(t)ide analogues; pgRNA, pre-genomic RNA

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0333

Table 1. Correlation between HBcrAg and important clinical outcomes in CHB patients

Clinical outcome	Finding	HBcrAg level
HBeAg loss	HBcrAg decline correlated with HBeAg loss	2.3 log U/mL reduction
HBsAg loss	Lower HBcrAg correlated with higher incidence of HBsAg loss	<2 log U/mL
HCC	Higher HBcrAg correlated with higher HCC risk in treatment-naïve patients	>2.9 log U/mL
	Higher HBcrAg correlated with higher HCC risk in antiviral-treated patients	≥4.9 log U/mL for HBeAg-positive patients ≥4.4 log U/mL for HBeAg-negative patients
	Higher HBcrAg correlated with higher post-treatment HCC recurrence	≥4.8 log U/mL

HBcrAg, hepatitis B core-related antigen; CHB, chronic hepatitis B; HBeAg, hepatitis B e antigen; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma.

course of the disease.

HBcrAg and HCC

In addition to being a useful biomarker for monitoring viral replication activity and cccDNA, HBcrAg is of high value in predicting the development of HCC in CHB patients. For treatment-naïve CHB patients, high serum HBcrAg level was associated with the development of HCC.[16] Patients with decreased HBcrAg had lower HCC risk than those with persistently high HBcrAg levels.[17] Serum HBcrAg also had a superior prediction value for predicting the HCC risk than other HBV markers, such as HBV DNA level (Table 1).

HCC risk was not eliminated in antiviral-treated HBeAg-negative patients with high HBcrAg levels. For antiviral-treated CHB patients, among whom HBV DNA and HBsAg levels may not perform well in HCC risk prediction, HBcrAg can predict the incidence of HCC accurately in HBeAg-negative patients with high sensitivity and negative predictive value.[4] It also works in cirrhotic CHB patients. Consistently high on-treatment serum HBcrAg level was associated with a higher HCC incidence, despite prolonged antiviral treatment, in both HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative CHB patients (Table 1).[17] The predictive value for post-treatment HCC recurrence of HBcrAg was also demonstrated. Further studies are needed to explore the underlying mechanism of correlation between high HBcrAg and HCC.

UNANSWERED QUESTIONS

As with all important studies, the study by Mak and colleagues[7] raises a number of interesting questions. For historical reasons, the majority of patients in this study received older generations of NAs, namely lamivudine, adefovir dipivoxil, and telbivudine. The development of drug-resistant mutants and changes in antiviral drugs during follow-up would have affected the association between early changes in viral markers and long-term disease control. Future studies in patients receiving current first-line treatments (entecavir and tenofovir) are needed.

Moreover, we also need to understand the meaning of FHR in this study. A low serum HBsAg level was associated with a lower risk of HCC in patients with low HBV DNA,[18] and the risk was even lower after HBsAg seroclearance.[2] Although a serum HBsAg level of <100 IU/mL correlated with a lower risk of virological relapse after NA cessation, the prediction was imperfect.[6] It would be interesting to determine the role of early pgRNA and HBcrAg response in predicting the off-treatment response and prognostication.

Notably, the field of hepatology is currently working towards functional cure of CHB (i.e., HBsAg seroclearance and sustained off-treatment HBV DNA suppression).[1,19] Since HBsAg seroclearance is rare with the current oral NAs, the current oral NA treatment is unlikely the area where the new virological markers will be applied. Rather, the roles of HBV RNA, HBcrAg, and HBsAg levels in predicting the response to novel direct-acting antivirals and immunological treatments in HBV cure programs are some of the hottest research areas in hepatology.

In summary, the study by Mak and colleagues was exceptional in exploring the meaning of early changes in novel virological markers in a cohort with very long follow-up. With concerted effort using novel treatments and biomarkers, we are hopeful that the "holy grail" of functional cure for CHB will be achievable in the future.

Authors' contribution

All the authors were responsible for the interpretation of findings, the drafting, and critical revision of the editorial for important intellectual content. All authors approved the final version of the article.

Conflicts of Interest

Lilian Liang declared that she has no competing interests.

Vincent Wong has served as a consultant or advisory committee member for AbbVie, Boehringer Ingelheim, Echosens, Intercept, Inventiva, Novo Nordisk, Pfizer, and TARGET PharmaSolutions; and a speaker for Abbott, AbbVie, Gilead Sciences, and Novo Nordisk. He has received a research grant from Gilead Sciences, and is a cofounder of Illuminatio Medical Technology Limited.

Grace Wong has served as an advisory committee member for Gilead Sciences and Janssen, and as a speaker for Abbott, AbbVie, Ascletis, Bristol-Myers Squibb, Echosens, Gilead Sciences, Janssen, and Roche. She has also received a research grant from Gilead Sciences.

Terry Yip has served as an advisory committee member and a speaker for Gilead Sciences.

REFERENCES

1. Wong GLH, Gane E, Lok ASF. How to achieve functional cure of HBV: stopping NUCs, adding interferon or new drug development? J Hepatol 2022;76:1249-1262.
2. Yip TCF, Wong GLH, Chan HLY, Tse YK, Lam KLY, Lui GCY, et al. HBsAg seroclearance further reduces hepatocellular carcinoma risk after complete viral suppression with nucleos(t)ide analogues. J Hepatol 2019;70:361-370.
3. Yip TC, Wong VW, Tse YK, Chan HL, Wong GL. Hepatitis B surface antigen seroclearance in a cohort of 154,740 patients with chronic hepatitis B: a 15-year follow-up study. Hepatol Int 2017;11(Suppl 1):S75.
4. Liang LY, Wong VWS, Toyoda H, Tse YK, Yip TCF, Yuen BWY, et al. Serum hepatitis B core-related antigen predicts hepatocellular carcinoma in hepatitis B e antigen-negative patients. J Gastroenterol 2020;55:899-908.
5. Kim SW, Yoon JS, Lee M, Cho Y. Toward a complete cure for chronic hepatitis B: novel therapeutic targets for hepatitis B virus. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:17-30.
6. Chan HLY, Wong GLH, Chim AML, Chan HY, Chu SHT, Wong VWS. Prediction of off-treatment response to lamivudine by serum hepatitis B surface antigen quantification in hepatitis B e antigen-negative patients. Antivir Ther 2011;16:1249-1257.
7. Mak LY, Wong D, Kuchta A, Hilfiker M, Hamilton A, Chow N, et al. Moving toward hepatitis B virus functional cure - the impact of on-treatment kinetics of serum viral markers. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:146-162.
8. Wang J, Shen T, Huang X, Kumar GR, Chen X, Zeng Z, et al. Serum hepatitis B virus RNA is encapsidated pregenome RNA that may be associated with persistence of viral infection and rebound. J Hepatol 2016;65:700-710.
9. Inoue T, Tanaka Y. Novel biomarkers for the management of chronic hepatitis B. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:261-279.
10. Liu Y, Jiang M, Xue J, Yan H, Liang X. Serum HBV RNA quantification: useful for monitoring natural history of chronic hepatitis B infection. BMC Gastroenterol 2019;19:53.
11. Cornberg M, Lok AS, Terrault NA, Zoulim F; 2019 EASL-AASLD HBV Treatment Endpoints Conference Faculty. Guidance for design and endpoints of clinical trials in chronic hepatitis B - Report from the 2019 EASL-AASLD HBV Treatment Endpoints Conference‡. J Hepatol 2020;72:539-557.
12. Wu JW, Kao JH, Tseng TC. Three heads are better than two: hepatitis B core-related antigen as a new predictor of hepatitis B virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:524-534.
13. Carey I, Gersch J, Wang B, Moigboi C, Kuhns M, Cloherty G, et al. Pregenomic HBV RNA and hepatitis B core-related antigen predict outcomes in hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B patients suppressed on nucleos(t)ide analogue therapy. Hepatology 2020;72:42-57.
14. Li J, Wu Z, Wang GQ, Zhao H. Hepatitis B core-related antigen reflects viral replication and protein production in chronic hepatitis B patients. Chin Med J (Engl) 2021;134:1160-1167.
15. Sonneveld MJ, Chiu SM, Park JY, Brakenhoff SM, Kaewdech A, Seto WK, et al. Probability of HBsAg loss after nucleo(s)tide analogue withdrawal depends on HBV genotype and viral antigen levels. J Hepatol 2022;76:1042-1050.
16. Tada T, Kumada T, Toyoda H, Kiriyama S, Tanikawa M, Hisanaga Y,

et al. HBcrAg predicts hepatocellular carcinoma development: an analysis using time-dependent receiver operating characteristics. J Hepatol 2016;65:48-56.
17. Hosaka T, Suzuki F, Kobayashi M, Fujiyama S, Kawamura Y, Sezaki H, et al. Impact of hepatitis B core-related antigen on the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients treated with nucleos(t)ide analogues. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2019;49:457-471.
18. Tseng TC, Liu CJ, Yang HC, Su TH, Wang CC, Chen CL, et al. High levels of hepatitis B surface antigen increase risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with low HBV load. Gastroenterology 2012;142:1140-1149.
19. Yip TCF, Lok ASF. How do we determine whether a functional cure for HBV infection has been achieved? Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2020;18:548-550.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0413
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:118-119

Editorial

New biomarkers of hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection: HBV RNA and HBV core-related antigen, new kids on the block?

Young-Suk Lim

Department of Gastroenterology, Liver Center, Asan Medical Center, University of Ulsan College of Medicine, Seoul, Korea

Keywords: Hepatitis B virus RNA; Hepatitis B virus core-related antigen; Hepatitis B; Biomarkers

See Article on Page 146

Through long-term treatment with nucleos(t)ide analogues (NUC), the prevention of disease progression to end-stage liver disease and reduction in the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is achievable in most patients with chronic hepatitis B (CHB). However, functional cure (hepatitis B surface antigen [HBsAg] seroclearance) is very rarely achievable even with long-term NUC treatment, and the optimal timing of treatment initiation and discontinuation remains debatable.

With recent advances in molecular analysis, several new biomarkers of the hepatitis B virus (HBV) have been identified, including quantification of HBsAg (qHBsAg), HBV RNA, and HBV core-related antigen (HBcrAg).[1,2] Integration of these biomarkers with the conventional ones, such as the hepatitis B e antigen (HBeAg) test and HBV DNA quantitation, may improve our understanding of the natural history of CHB and its response to antiviral therapy. All of qHBsAg, HBV RNA, and HBcrAg have been proposed as surrogate markers of HBV covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA) activity. Studies have shown the potential utility of these novel biomarkers in a range of clinical settings, such as monitoring response to anti-viral therapy, predicting relapse after treatment cessation or estimating the risk of HCC.[3,4] However, HBsAg may be produced from both cccDNA and integrated viral genomes and its correlation with intrahepatic cccDNA is particularly weak in the HBeAg-negative patients. Therefore, attention has shifted to other serum biomarkers such as HBV RNA and core re-lated antigen.

In this issue of Mak et al.,[5] a new role of HBV pre-genomic (pg) RNA and HBcrAg in predicting favourable HBsAg response (FHR; <100 IU/mL or HBsAg seroclearance) during median 17 years of NUC treatment. For HBeAg-positive patients, serum HBV pgRNA decline at week 4 was significantly greater for patients with FHR compared to non-FHR patients (5.49 vs. 4.32 log copies/mL, respectively). For HBeAg-negative patients, instead of increase in serum HBcrAg from baseline in non-FHR patients, FHR patients had median reduction in HBcrAg at week 4 (increment of 1.75 vs. reduction of 2.98 log U/mL). This may have a significance as a new study that

Corresponding author : Young-Suk Lim
Department of Gastroenterology, Asan Medical Center, University of Ulsan College of Medicine, 88 Olympic-ro 43-gil, Songpa-gu, Seoul 05505, Korea
Tel: +82-2-3010-5933, Fax: +82-2-485-5782, E-mail: limys@amc.seoul.kr
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-1544-577X

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 20, 2022 / **Received :** Nov. 22, 2022 / **Accepted :** Nov. 23, 2022

showed the usefulness of HBV pgRNA and HBcrAg in predicting FHR during NUC treatment. However, its clinical implication is limited because this study cannot address whether early biomarker response can help to predict successful off-NA virological control. Nonetheless, the results of this study could be used as companion diagnostic tests in the clinical trials to develop new novel drugs to induce CHB functional cure.

It is noteworthy that the HBV RNA and HBcrAg were significantly lower in all time points among HBeAg-negative patients compared to HBeAg-positive patients, a finding that is consistent with previous reports. This is especially true for HBcrAg due to the poor detectability in HBeAg-negative patients because HBeAg is part of HBcrAg (which consists of HBcAg, HBeAg and p22cr). Therefore, the analyses were performed in HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative patients separately.

Overall, the use of novel biomarkers for HBV infection carries enormous potential, and it is possible that new biomarker-based models, used in combination with traditional ones, will become an integral part of our daily practice in near future as well as in the development of new drugs. The addition of HBV RNA and HBcrAg to our armamentarium as new biomarkers should be embraced and will be beneficial in our efforts to eliminate HBV. However, before using these biomarkers, the assays for these biomarkers should be standardized with their improvement in the detection sensitivity and also availability.

Conflicts of Interest

YS Lim is an advisory board member of Gilead Sciences and receives research funding from Gilead Sciences. No other disclosures are reported.

REFERENCES

1. Wu JW, Kao JH, Tseng TC. Three heads are better than two: hepatitis B core-related antigen as a new predictor of hepatitis B virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:524-534.
2. Inoue T, Tanaka Y. Novel biomarkers for the management of chronic hepatitis B. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:261-279.
3. Lok J, Dusheiko G, Carey I, Agarwal K. Review article: novel biomarkers in hepatitis B infection. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2022;56:760-776.
4. Kramvis A, Chang KM, Dandri M, Farci P, Glebe D, Hu J, et al. A roadmap for serum biomarkers for hepatitis B virus: current status and future outlook. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2022;19:727-745.
5. Mak LY, Wong D, Kuchta A, Hilfiker M, Hamilton A, Chow N, et al. Hepatitis B virus pre-genomic RNA and hepatitis B core-related antigen reductions at week 4 predict favourable hepatitis B surface antigen response upon long-term nucleos(t)ide analogue in chronic hepatitis B. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:146-162.

Abbreviations:

cccDNA, covalently closed circular DNA; CHB, chronic hepatitis B; FHR, favourable HBsAg response; HBcrAg, HBV core-related antigen; HBeAg, hepatitis B e antigen; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; NUC, nucleos(t)ide analogues; pg, pre-genomic; qHBsAg, quantification of HBsAg

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2021.0395
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:120-134

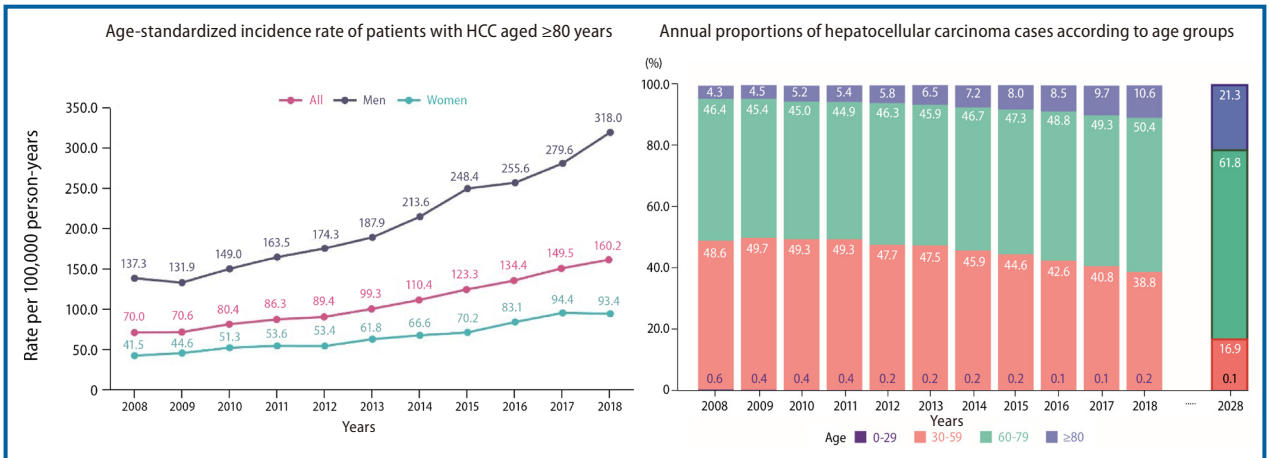
Original Article

Hepatocellular carcinoma incidence is decreasing in Korea but increasing in the very elderly

Young Eun Chon[1], Seong Yong Park[2,3], Han Pyo Hong[4], Donghee Son[5], Jonghyun Lee[6], Eileen Yoon[7], Soon Sun Kim[8], Sang Bong Ahn[9], Soung Won Jeong[10], and Dae Won Jun[7]

[1]Department of Internal Medicine, CHA Bundang Medical Center, CHA University, Seongnam; [2]Big Data Steering Department, National Health Insurance Service, Wonju; [3]Department of Health Administration, Graduate School, Yonsei University, Wonju; [4]Big Data Center, Department of Statistics, Yonsei University Wonju College of Medicine, Wonju; [5]Biostatistical Consulting and Research Lab, Medical Research Collaborating Center, Hanyang University, Seoul; [6]Department of Medical and Digital Engineering, Hanyang University College of Engineering, Seoul; [7]Department of Internal Medicine, School of Medicine, Hanyang University, Seoul; [8]Department of Gastroenterology, Ajou University School of Medicine, Suwon; [9]Department of Internal Medicine, Eulji University College of Medicine, Seoul; [10]Department of Internal Medicine, Soonchunhyang University Seoul Hospital, Soonchunhyang University College of Medicine, Seoul, Korea

Graphical Abstract



- The age-standardized incidence rate of patients with HCC aged ≥80 years increased over the past 10 years in Korea, and the predicted number of HCC patients aged ≥80 years in 2028 will be quadruple greater than the number of HCC patients in 2008, comprising 21.3% of all HCC patients in 2028.

Study Highlights

- From 2008 to 2018, the incidence of HCC in Korea gradually declined, however, the incidence of HCC patients aged ≥80 years increased significantly (age-standardized incidence rate increased by 0.96% per year).
- In 2028, the number of HCC patients aged ≥80 years will increase to quadruple greater than that in 2008, consisting 21.3% of all HCC patients.
- Investigation in trends of HCC incidence will guide tailored management plan for elderly patients, and will help making a national health strategy to reduce the socioeconomic burden of HCC.

Background/Aims: A comprehensive analysis of trends in the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is important for planning public health initiatives. We aimed to analyze the trends in HCC incidence in South Korea over 10 years and to predict the incidence for the year 2028.

Methods: Data from patients with newly diagnosed HCC between 2008 and 2018 were obtained from Korean National Health Insurance Service database. Age-standardized incidence rates (ASRs) were calculated to compare HCC incidence. A poisson regression model was used to predict the future incidence of HCC.

Results: The average crude incidence rate (CR) was 22.4 per 100,000 person-years, and the average ASR was 17.6 per 100,000 person-years between 2008 and 2018. The CR (from 23.9 to 21.2 per 100,000 person-years) and ASR (from 21.9 to 14.3 per 100,000 person-years) of HCC incidence decreased during the past ten years in all age groups, except in the elderly. The ASR of patients aged ≥80 years increased significantly (from 70.0 to 160.2/100,000 person-years; average annual percent change, +9.00%; P<0.001). The estimated CR (17.9 per 100,000 person-years) and ASR (9.7 per 100,000 person-years) of HCC incidence in 2028 was declined, but the number of HCC patients aged ≥80 years in 2028 will be quadruple greater than the number of HCC patients in 2008 (from 521 to 2,055), comprising 21.3% of all HCC patients in 2028.

Conclusions: The ASRs of HCC in Korea have gradually declined over the past 10 years, but the number, CR, and ASR are increasing in patients aged ≥80 years. **(Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:120-134)**

Keywords: Age-standardized incidence rate; Hepatocellular carcinoma; Incidence; Korea; Prediction

INTRODUCTION

Primary liver cancer is the sixth most common cancer and the third leading cause of cancer-related deaths worldwide.[1,2] In 2020, the highest age-standardized incidence rates (ASRs) of liver cancer were observed in Eastern Asia (17.8/100,000 person-years), Northern Africa (15.2/100,000 person-years), South-Eastern Asia (13.7 /100,000 person-years), and South Korea (14.3 cases/100,000 person-years).[1] In South Korea, liver cancer ranked second only to lung cancer as a cause of cancer-related deaths in 2016.[3] As liver cancer has the highest mortality rate in middle-aged Koreans (i.e., individuals aged 40–59 years) having the highest socioeconomic productivity, there is a substantial disease burden associated with hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Therefore, efforts have been continued to accurately investigate the incidence of liver cancer and to establish proper strategies to reduce liver cancer accordingly.

The incidence of liver cancer has been extensively investigated worldwide, but the incidence of HCC is relatively

Corresponding author : **Dae Won Jun**
Department of Internal Medicine, School of Medicine, Hanyang University, 222-1 Wangsimni-ro, Seongdong-gu, Seoul 04763, Korea
Tel: +82-2-2290-8338, Fax: +82-2-2298-9183, E-mail: noshin@hanyang.ac.kr
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-2875-6139

Soung Won Jeong
Department of Internal Medicine, Soonchunhyang University College of Medicine, 59 Daesagwan-ro, Yongsan-gu, Seoul 04401, Korea
Tel: +82-2-9419-1823, Fax: +82-2-709-9696, E-mail: jeongsw@schmc.ac.kr
https://orcid.org/0000-0003-2855-6011

Editor: Joong-Won Park, National Cancer Center Korea, Korea

Received : Dec. 20, 2021 / **Revised :** Jul. 29, 2022 / **Accepted :** Aug. 6, 2022

Abbreviations:

AAPC, average annual percent change; ASR, age-standardized incidence rate; CHB, chronic hepatitis B; CI, confidence interval; CR, crude incidence rate; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; HCV, hepatitis C virus; ICD, International Classification of Diseases; KNHIS, Korean National Health Insurance Service; NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease

unknown. HCC is the most common primary liver cancer, comprising 75–85% of all primary liver cancers. Most previous studies reported the incidence of all types of cancers in the liver (e.g., intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma, hepatoblastoma), and thus did not discuss exclusive data about HCC.[1,4-6] In addition, the main source of data for previous epidemiologic studies on HCC in Korea was the Korean Primary Liver Cancer Registry.[7-10] Although the data from this registry are representative of patients with HCC nationwide, the registry does not include all patients with HCC.

Hepatitis B virus (HBV), hepatitis C virus (HCV), and liver cirrhosis are risk factors for HCC. In a cohort study concerning the Korean population conducted from 2003–2005, the most frequently identified etiologies of HCC were HBV (62.2%), HCV (10.4%), and alcohol or an unknown etiology (27.4%).[11] During the past several decades, many efforts have been made to eradicate HBV, the main cause of HCC. A national project has been in place since 1995 to vaccinate young people against HBV, and patients with chronic hepatitis B (CHB) have been eligible to receive reimbursement for the cost of lifelong antiviral treatment since 2010.[12] As a result, HBV infection has decreased dramatically from 8% in the 1990s to 3% in the 2010s in Korea.[12] However, at the same time, there is an increasing incidence of HCC caused by non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) because of recent westernization of the dietary pattern in Korea.[13,14] The improved control of viral hepatitis and increased prevalence of metabolic liver diseases suggest that the etiology of HCC may be changing.

Therefore, it is necessary to comprehensively analyze trends in HCC incidence and the factors that affect these trends. We aimed to analyze the trends in the incidence rates of HCC over 10 years (2008–2018) and to predict the incidence rate of HCC in Korea for the year 2028. In addition, we aimed to study serial changes in the incidence of HCC according to age groups, economic classes, and etiologies.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study design

This retrospective cohort study used data from the Korean National Health Insurance Service (KNHIS) database. Data were extracted and coded with an encrypted number, in accordance with the institutional disclosure principle after permission had been obtained from the National Health Corporation. This study was approved by the Institutional Review Board of Hanyang University, Seoul, Republic of Korea (2019-07-014).

Database characteristics

The Korean government created universal health insurance systems in 1989 and consolidated them into a single system in 2000.[15] The health insurance system is mandatory for all Korean citizens, and 97.2% of the Korean population has been enrolled in the system since 2018. Data are entered into the KNHIS database when Korean clinics or hospitals submit an insurance claim to the National Health Corporation for their medical services to be reimbursed.

Inclusion and exclusion criteria

We included patients from the KNHIS database who had been newly diagnosed with HCC (C220 and V193) between January 2008 and December 2018. We excluded patients if any of the following conditions were met: 1) diagnosis with HCC between 2005 and 2006 due to the low reliability of the data from that period; 2) diagnosis with HCC in the 2 years prior to index date; 3) diagnosis with malignancies other than HCC (C codes other than C220 and V193); 4) history of organ transplantation; 5) human immunodeficiency virus infection; or 6) missing patient identification information (age or sex).

Primary and secondary endpoints

The primary endpoints of this study were the change in the incidence rate of HCC over the past 10 years (2008–2018) by age groups and the predicted incidence rate of HCC in Korea for 2028. The secondary endpoints were the changes in the HCC incidence rate according to age groups, economic classes, and etiologies of HCC.

Stratification

Patients were divided into four age groups: 0–29 years, 30–59 years, 60–79 years, and ≥80 years. The economic classes of the study participants were determined by the premiums of their medical insurance. Medical insurance groups were classified into 20 categories (Q1 to Q20) based on their in-

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2021.0395

surance premiums. The Medicare group was excluded from these categories because patients in this group were exempted from paying the insurance premiums. The 20 categories were grouped into Q1–5, Q6–10, Q11–15, and Q16–20. Patients in the Q16–20 group paid the highest premium, and patients in the Q1–5 group paid the lowest premium.

Table 1. Baseline characteristics of the study population

Variable	Patients with HCC (n=127,426)
Age (years)	61.4 (53.0–70.0)
Male gender	99,767 (78.3)
Etiology	
HBV	80,354 (63.0)
HCV	12,556 (9.9)
Alcohol	12,815 (10.1)
NAFLD	13,183 (10.3)
Others	8,518 (6.7)
District	
Seoul	23,428 (18.4)
Medical insurances	
Medicare	8,580 (6.7)
Q1–5	23,716 (18.6)
Q6–10	24,852 (19.5)
Q11–15	30,223 (23.7)
Q16–20	40,055 (31.5)
Comorbid conditions	
Liver cirrhosis	96,593 (75.8)
Chronic kidney disease	10,619 (8.3)
Diabetes mellitus	48,182 (37.8)
Hypertension	63,991 (50.2)
Other neoplasms	6,766 (5.3)
Cardiovascular diseases	9,272 (7.3)
Cerebrovascular diseases	15,962 (12.5)

Values are presented as median (interquartile range) or number (%).
The medical insurance group was classified into 20 categories, excluding medicare group. Twenty categories were regrouped into 4 categories. The higher category stands for the higher income.
HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; HBV, hepatitis B virus; NAFLD, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease.

Table 2. Annual incidence rate and average annual percent change of hepatocellular carcinoma (2008–2018)

	All	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018	AAPC	95% CI	*P*-value
Numbers															
All	127,426	12,056	11,744	11,544	11,788	11,518	11,415	11,455	11,501	11,714	11,457	11,234	-0.42	-0.59 to -0.25	<0.001
Men	99,767	9,422	9,165	9,005	9,206	9,104	9,013	9,017	9,022	9,136	8,900	8,777	-0.43	-0.63 to -0.24	<0.001
Women	27,659	2,634	2,579	2,539	2,582	2,414	2,402	2,438	2,479	2,578	2,557	2,457	-0.37	-0.75 to -0.01	0.048
CR (per 100,000 person-years)															
All	22.4	23.9	23.2	22.6	23.0	22.3	22.0	22.0	21.9	22.2	21.7	21.2	-0.94	-4.78 to 3.06	0.640
Men	35.0	37.3	36.1	35.2	35.8	35.2	34.8	34.6	34.4	34.7	33.7	33.1	-0.92	-4.00 to 2.26	0.567
Women	9.7	10.5	10.2	10.0	10.1	9.4	9.3	9.3	9.4	9.8	9.7	9.3	-0.94	-6.70 to 5.18	0.758
ASR (per 100,000 person-years)															
All	17.6	21.9	20.5	19.3	19.0	17.8	17.2	16.7	16.1	15.9	15.1	14.3	-3.90	-4.20 to -3.50	<0.001
Men	26.9	33.7	31.4	29.6	29.0	27.5	26.4	25.5	24.6	24.0	22.7	21.6	-4.20	-4.70 to -3.70	<0.001
Women	7.7	9.6	9.1	8.5	8.4	7.6	7.3	7.1	7.0	7.0	6.7	6.2	-3.90	-5.00 to -2.90	<0.001

AAPC, average annual percent change; CI, confidence interval; CR, crude incidence rate; ASR, age-standardized incidence rate.

Definition of HCC

The operational definition of HCC included patients who had assigned both the International Classification of Diseases (ICD) code of C220 and the rare incurable disease code of V193 (cancer). If a patient is diagnosed with a cancer and assi-

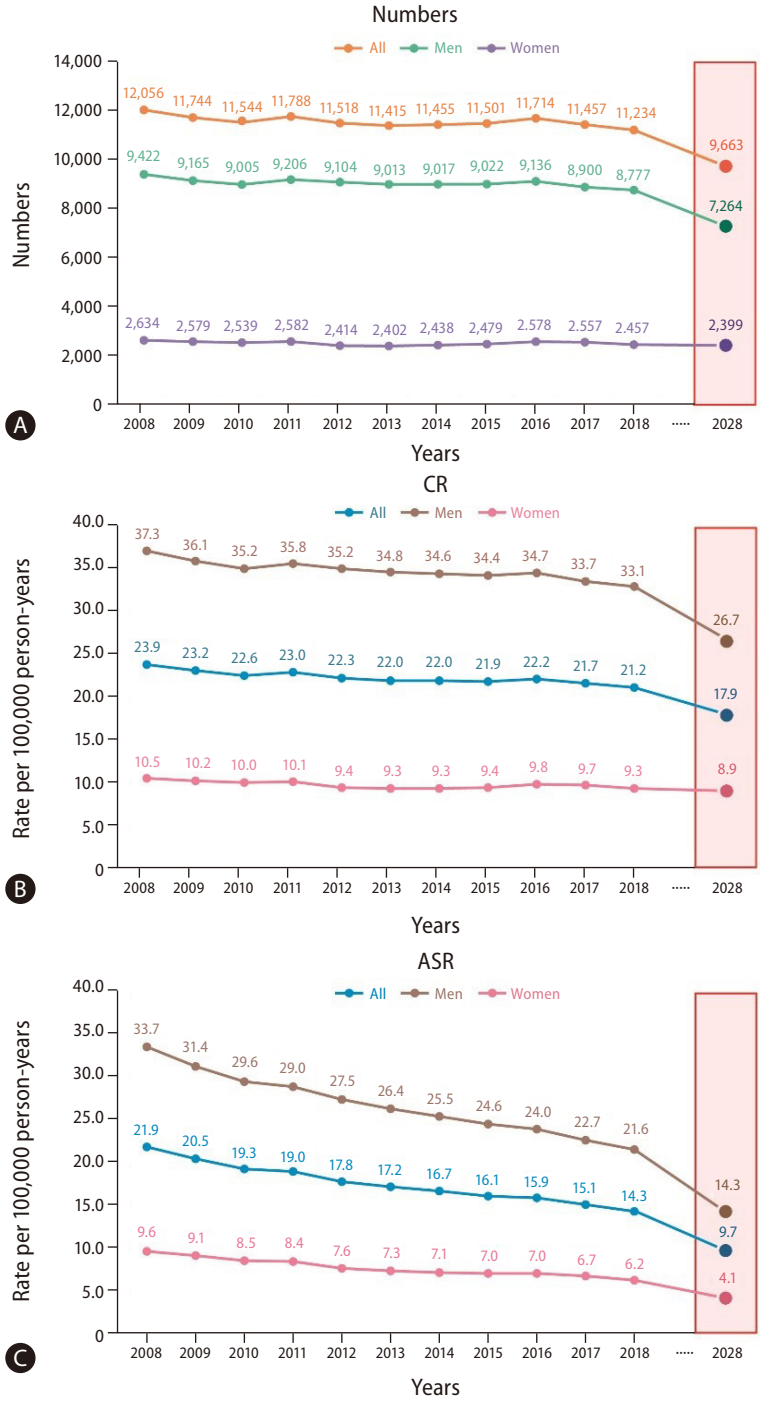


Figure 1. Annual incidence rate of hepatocellular carcinoma (2008–2018) and projections of incidence to 2028. (A) Numbers; (B) crude incidence rates (CRs); (C) age-standardized incidence rates (ASRs).

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2021.0395

Table 3. Annual age-standardized incidence rate of hepatocellular carcinoma by age

Age	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018	AAPC	95% CI	*P*-value
Total (per 100,000 person-years)														
All	21.9	20.5	19.3	19.0	17.8	17.2	16.7	16.1	15.9	15.1	14.3	-3.90	-4.20 to -3.50	<0.001
Men	33.7	31.4	29.6	29.0	27.5	26.4	25.5	24.6	24.0	22.7	21.6	-4.20	-4.70 to -3.70	<0.001
Women	9.6	9.1	8.5	8.4	7.6	7.3	7.1	7.0	7.0	6.7	6.2	-3.90	-5.00 to -2.90	<0.001
0–29 years (per 100,000 person-years)														
All	0.4	0.3	0.2	0.2	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	-13.59	-16.48 to -10.60	<0.001
Men	0.5	0.3	0.3	0.2	0.2	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	-14.10	-19.70 to -8.10	<0.001
Women	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.0	0.1	0.1	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.1	-44.60	-88.80 to 166.20	0.400
30–59 years (per 100,000 person-years)														
All	25.8	25.7	25.1	25.6	24.2	23.8	23.1	22.5	21.9	20.6	19.2	-3.10	-4.10 to -2.10	<0.001
Men	42.9	43.0	42.1	42.8	40.8	40.4	39.2	37.6	36.9	34.3	32.2	-2.80	-3.60 to -2.10	<0.001
Women	8.0	7.7	7.4	7.7	7.0	6.7	6.6	7.0	6.4	6.4	5.7	-2.80	-3.60 to -2.10	<0.001
60–79 years (per 100,000 person-years)														
All	97.5	92.8	90.5	92.2	92.9	91.2	93.1	94.7	99.5	98.4	98.5	0.20	-0.90 to 1.30	0.708
Men	163.6	154.0	150.7	154.3	158.8	156.1	159.6	163.8	171.1	172.0	173.0	0.70	-0.20 to 1.60	0.129
Women	46.3	45.3	43.9	44.0	41.7	40.9	41.6	41.1	43.9	41.4	40.9	-1.00	-1.70 to -0.40	0.007
≥80 years (per 100,000 person-years)														
All	70.0	70.6	80.4	86.3	89.4	99.3	110.4	123.3	134.4	149.5	160.2	9.00	7.90 to 10.2	<0.001
Men	137.3	131.9	149.0	163.5	174.3	187.9	213.6	248.4	255.6	279.6	318.0	9.40	8.42 to 10.45	<0.001
Women	41.5	44.6	51.3	53.6	53.4	61.8	66.6	70.2	83.1	94.4	93.4	8.80	7.70 to 9.90	<0.001

AAPC, average annual percent change; CI, confidence interval.

gned the V193 code, the patient only pays 5% to 10% of the total medical expenses. Cancer patients covered 10% of the total cost in 2008 and 2009; the proportion decreased to 5% in December 2009. Therefore, the KNHIS requests more information at the time of HCC diagnosis, and these patients are strictly monitored by the government. The KNHIS reviewed

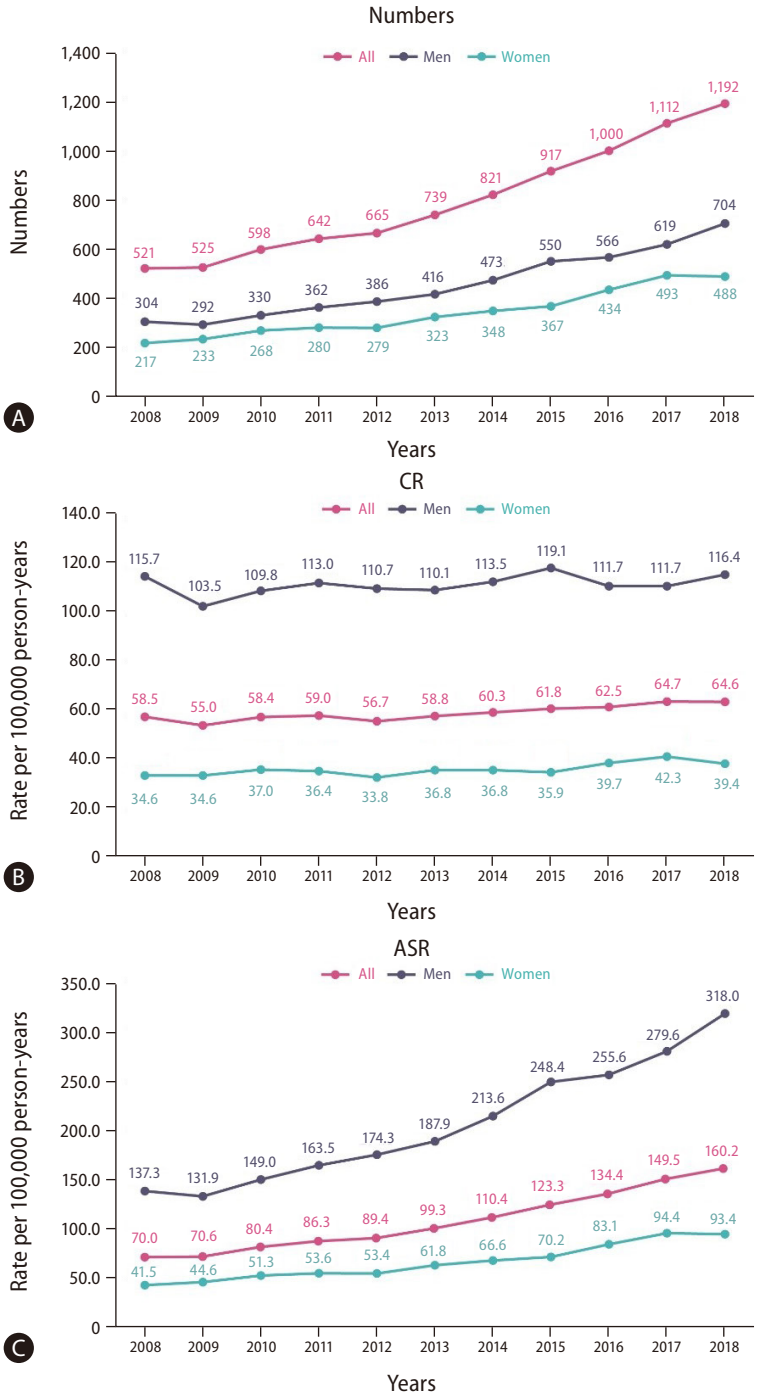


Figure 2. Annual incidence rate of hepatocellular carcinoma (2008–2018) in patients aged ≥80 years. (A) Numbers; (B) crude incidence rates (CRs); (C) age-standardized incidence rates (ASRs).

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2021.0395

whether HCC was diagnosed based on histology, dynamic computed tomography, and/or magnetic resonance imaging findings. The imaging findings suggestive of HCC included a liver nodule >1 cm, arterial hypervascularity of the nodule, and washout in the portal venous or delayed phase.[16]

Identification of etiologies and comorbid conditions of HCC

Etiologic diseases (CHB, chronic hepatitis C, alcoholic liver disease, and NALFD) were identified if the code for the disease or prescription of its treatment was assigned in the calendar year containing the index date or within one calendar year before or after this year (3 years). When two or more etiologic factors were present, patients were classified into the class for the higher-ranked condition in the following order: HBV, HCV, alcoholic liver disease, NAFLD, and others. We have added this information to the Methods section. Comorbid conditions (liver cirrhosis, diabetes mellitus, hypertension, chronic kidney disease, other malignancies, cardiovascular diseases, and cerebrovascular diseases) were identified if the relevant ICD codes were assigned twice during the calendar year containing the index date or within one calendar year before or after this year (3 years). Each definition and the relevant ICD codes were depicted in Supplementary Table 1.

Statistical analysis

Data are presented as the median (interquartile range) or frequencies with percentages, as appropriate. The 2005 Korean population covered by the KNHIS was used as the standard population for calculation of the ASR. To evaluate trends in the incidence of HCC during the past 10 years, we used the joinpoint regression method to calculate the average annual percent change (AAPC) in incidence rates. We used the Poisson regression model to predict the incidence of HCC. All statistical analyses were performed using SAS software (version 9.4; SAS Institute, Cary, NC, USA) and R software (version 3.6.0; http://cran.r-project.org/). Two-sided *P*-values <0.05 were considered statistically significant.

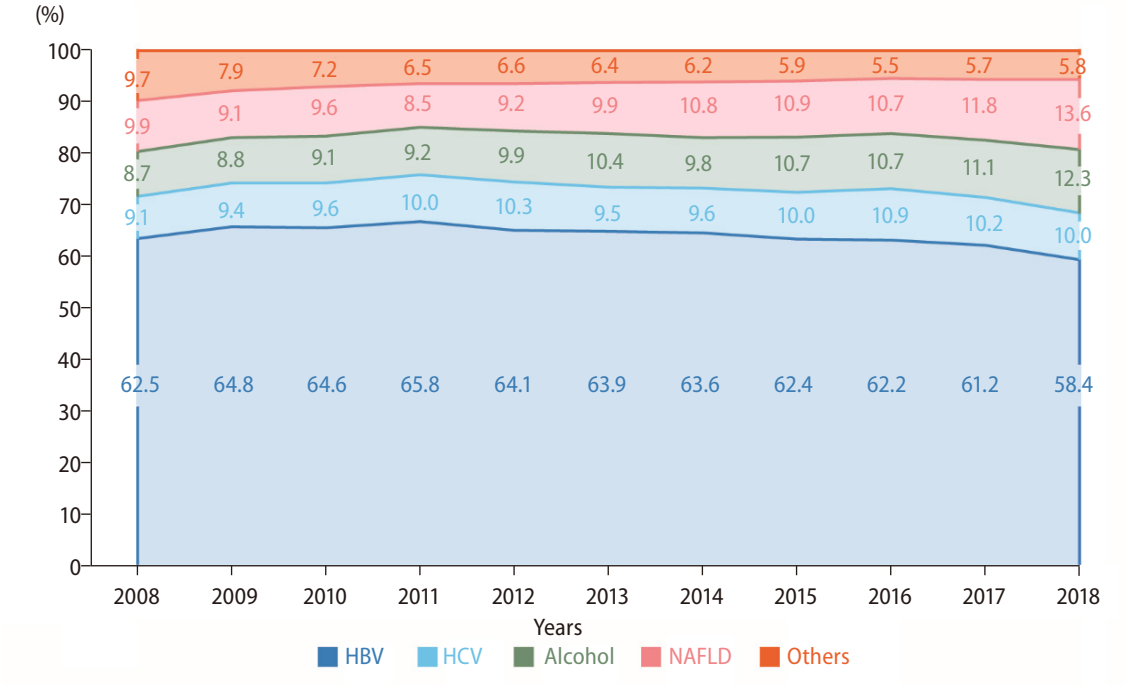


Figure 3. Annual changes in etiologies of hepatocellular carcinoma (2008–2018). HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCV, hepatitis C virus; NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease.

 https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2021.0395

Table 4. Projections of hepatocellular carcinoma incidence to 2028 in Korea

	Number of new cases			Crude rate (per 100,000 person-years)			Age-standardized rate (per 100,000 person-years)				
	2008	2028	Change in numbers (%)	2008	2028	Changes in crude rate (%)	2008	2028	Changes in ASR (%)	Annual percent change	95% CI
All	12,056	9,663	-19.8	23.9	17.9	-25.3	21.9	9.7	-55.8	-3.9*	-4.0 to -3.8
Men	9,422	7,264	-22.9	37.3	26.7	-28.4	33.7	14.3	-57.6	-4.1*	-4.2 to -4.0
Women	2,634	2,399	-8.9	10.5	8.9	-15.1	9.6	4.1	-57.0	-4.0*	-4.1 to -3.9
0–29 years	75	5	-93.3	0.4	0.05	-87.5	0.4	0.01	-97.0	-15.7*	-16.6 to -14.8
30–59 years	5,861	1,635	-72.1	24.7	7.0	-71.7	25.8	15.5	-39.8	-2.7*	-2.8 to -2.6
60–79 years	5,599	5,968	6.6	87.2	42.9	-50.8	97.5	103.2	5.8	0.6*	0.5 to 0.6
≥80 years	521	2,055	294.4	58.5	82.2	40.5	70.0	387.6	453.5	9.3*	9.2 to 9.3

ASR, age-standardized incidence rate; CI, confidence interval.
*Refers to $P<0.05$.

RESULTS

Baseline characteristics

We identified 127,426 patients in the KNHIS database who had been newly diagnosed with HCC between 2008 and 2018 (Supplementary Fig. 1). The baseline characteristics of these patients are summarized in Table 1. The mean age at the time of HCC diagnosis was 61 years, and there was a male predominance (78.3%). HBV was the most common etiology of HCC, affecting 63.0% of all patients with HCC. The top quarter of medical insurance groups (Q16–20) had the largest proportion of patients with HCC (31.5%). Liver cirrhosis, hypertension, and diabetes mellitus were present in 75.8%, 50.2%, and 37.8% of patients with HCC, respectively.

Incidence of HCC

We identified 127,426 patients newly diagnosed with HCC between 2008 and 2018 from the KNHIS database, yielding an average annual incidence rate of 11,584 patients. The average crude incidence rate (CR) of HCC incidence was 22.4 per 100,000 person-years (Table 2, Fig. 1), and the average ASR was 17.6 per 100,000 person-years. HCC was more frequent in men than in women, and the age-standardized male-to-female incidence ratio was 3.49 (95% confidence interval [CI], 3.10–3.72; P=0.032). The annual numbers of HCC incidence significantly decreased from 2008 to 2018 (from 12,056/year in 2008 to 11,234/year in 2018; AAPC: -0.42%; 95% CI, -0.59 to -0.25; P<0.001). The decline in annual numbers of HCC incidence was observed for both sexes (AAPC in men, -0.43%; AAPC in women, -0.37%). The CR of HCC incidence decreased from 23.9 per 100,000 person-years in 2008 to 21.2 per 100,000 person-years in 2018, but this change was not statistically significant (AAPC, -0.94%; P=0.640). The ASR in the entire population significantly decreased from 2008 to 2018 (from 21.9/100,000 person-years in 2008 to 14.3/100,000 person-years in 2018; AAPC, -3.90%; 95% CI, -4.20 to -3.50; P<0.001). The decline in ASR between 2008 and 2018 was evident in both men (AAPC, -4.20%; 95% CI, -4.70 to -3.70; P<0.001) and women (AAPC, -3.90%; 95% CI, -5.00 to -2.90; P<0.001).

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2021.0395

Incidence of HCC by age groups

HCC was diagnosed most frequently in patients aged 60–79 years (46.9%), followed by patients aged 30–59 years (45.9%), ≥80 years (6.9%), and 0–20 years (0.3%). The ASR significantly decreased in patients aged 0–29 years and 30–59 years (Table 3, Supplementary Fig. 2). The decline in annual ASR was greater in patients aged 0–29 years (AAPC, -13.59%; 95% CI, -16.48 to -10.60) than in patients aged 30–59 years (AAPC, -3.10%; 95% CI, -4.10 to -2.10; *P*<0.001; Table 3, Supplementary Fig. 3). There was a significant decrease in ASR in box sexes in most groups of patients aged <80 years, but patients aged 0–29 women and patients aged 60–79 men did not show significant decrease in ASR. The average annual change was greatest in men aged 0–29 years (AAPC, -14.10%; 95% CI, -19.70 to -8.10; *P*<0.001). The numbers of HCC and CR significantly decreased in patients aged 0–29 years and 30–59 years (Supplementary Table 2). In patients aged 60–79 years, the numbers of HCC did not change, whereas the CR of HCC incidence significantly decreased. The ASR in patients aged ≥80 years increased from 70.0 per 100,000 person-years in 2008 to 160.2 per 100,000 person-years in 2018 (AAPC, 9.00%; 95% CI, 7.90–10.20; *P*<0.001; Fig. 2C). This increase was evident in both men (AAPC, 9.40%; 95% CI, 8.42–10.45; *P*<0.001) and women (AAPC, 8.80%; 95% CI, 7.70–9.90; *P*<0.001; Table 3). During the 10-year study period, the numbers of HCC increased in patients aged ≥80 years (AAPC, 9.90%; 95% CI, 7.90–10.20; *P*<0.001; Supplementary Table 2, Fig. 2A). The CR of HCC incidence in patients aged ≥80 years also significantly increased (AAPC, 1.40%; 95% CI, 0.80–1.90; *P*<0.001; Supplementary Table 2, Fig. 2B).

Incidence of HCC by economic classes

Patients with HCC were diagnosed most frequently in the Q16–20 group (31.5%), followed by the Q11–15 (23.7%), Q6–10 (19.5%), Q6–10 (18.6%), and Medicare (6.7%) groups. However, the ASR was significantly greater in the Medicare group than in the Q16–20 group. From 2008 to 2018, there was a significant decrease in the ASR in all groups (Supplementary Fig. 4, Supplementary Table 3), except the Medicare group. There was no significant change in the ASR in the Medicare group (AAPC, -1.40%; *P*=0.202).

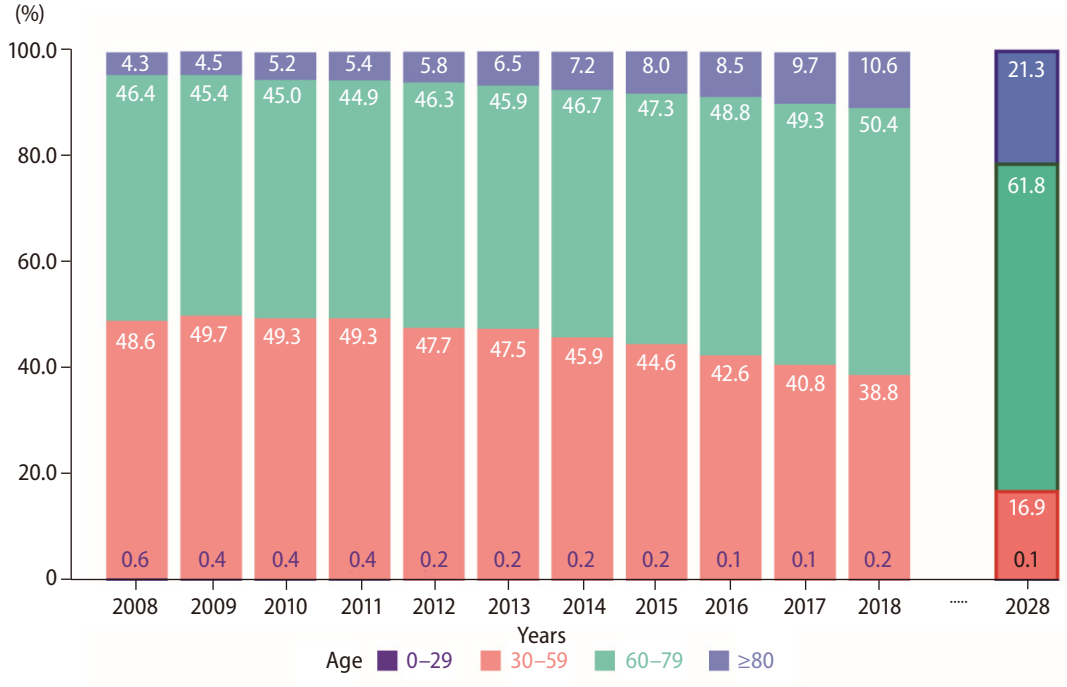


Figure 4. Annual proportions of hepatocellular carcinoma cases according to age groups (2008–2018) and projection in 2028.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2021.0395

Etiologies of HCC

The most common etiology of HCC was HBV (63.0%), followed by NAFLD (10.4%), alcohol (10.1%), and HCV (9.9%; Fig. 3). The proportion of patients with HBV-related HCC did not significantly change from 2008 to 2018 (P=0.210). However, the proportion of HBV-related HCC significantly decreased between 2011 and 2018 with an AAPC of -1.40% (95% CI, -2.10 to -0.70; P<0.001). The proportion of HCV-related HCC significantly increased with an AAPC of 1.00% (95% CI, 0.20–1.90; P<0.001), contributing to 9.1% of HCC cases in 2008 and 10.0% in 2018. The proportion of alcohol-induced HCC increased from 8.7% in 2008 to 12.3% in 2018 (AAPC, 3.20%; 95% CI, 2.50–3.90; P<0.001). Specifically, the proportion of NAFLD-related HCC steadily increased from 2008 to 2018 (AAPC, 2.70%; 95% CI, 0.20–5.30; P<0.001), with a rapid increase from 2011 to 2018 at an average of 5.60% per year (95% CI, 3.20–8.10; P<0.001).

Projections of HCC incidence to 2028

The observed and predicted trends in HCC incidence among men and women are summarized in Figure 1 and Table 4. We predict that number of new HCC patients in 2028 will be 9,663 (7,264 men; 2,399 women). The CR of HCC incidence in 2028 is estimated to be 17.9 per 100,000 person-years (men: 26.7/100,000 person-years; women: 8.9/100,000 person-years). The predicted ASR will decline by 9.7 per 100,000 person-years in 2028. The ASRs in men and women are expected to be 14.3 and 4.1 per 100,000 person-years, respectively. The annual changes of ASR from 2008 to 2028 are expected to be -3.9% (95% CI, -4.0 to -3.8; P<0.001) for the entire population, -4.1% (95% CI, -4.2 to -4.0; P<0.001) for men, and -4.0% (95% CI, -4.1 to -3.9; P<0.001) for women, respectively. From 2008 to 2028, the ASR is expected to significantly decrease in age groups 0–29 and 30–59 years. The annual decrease of ASR from 2008 to 2028 is expected to be the greatest in the age group 0–29 years with an AAPC of -15.7% (95% CI, -16.6 to -14.8; P<0.001). In 2028, the number of HCC patients aged ≥80 years is estimated to increase quadruple, compared with the number in 2008 (from 521 in 2008 to 2,055 in 2028). The ASR (from 70.0 to 387.6/100,000 person-years) of HCC incidence of that age is also expected to increase, with an annual increase in ASR of 9.3% (95% CI, 9.2–9.3; P<0.001).

Figure 4 shows the proportions of HCC cases in different age groups (2008–2018) and the projected proportions in 2028. From 2008 to 2028, the proportions of patients with HCC developing at ages 0–29 years (AAPC, -11.3%; 95% CI, -14.5 to -8.0; P<0.001), and 30–59 years (AAPC, -5.2%; 95% CI, -5.5 to -4.8; P<0.001) are estimated to significantly decrease. Conversely, the proportions of HCC patients at ages 60–79 years (AAPC, 1.4%; 95% CI, 1.1–1.8; P<0.001), and ≥80 years (AAPC, 8.5%; 95% CI, 8.0–9.0; P<0.001) are estimated to significantly increase. The proportion of HCC patients aged ≥80 years will increase from 4.3% in 2008 to 21.3% in 2028, and it is estimated that patients older than 60 years will comprise 83.1% in 2028.

DISCUSSION

From 2008 to 2018, the numbers and ASRs of HCC significantly decreased. However, in patients aged ≥80 years, the ASR significantly increased by 0.96% per year; the CR of HCC also increased. By 2028, despite the estimated decrease in HCC incidence in the entire population, the incidence and the proportion of HCC patients aged ≥80 years are estimated to increase. To our knowledge, this study is the first to include a large number of patients (n=127,426) from the KNHIS database, which includes most Korean citizens. The inclusion of such a large number of patients has enabled a comprehensive analysis of the longitudinal trends in HCC incidence in Korea. The estimation of the current and future incidences of HCC in different age groups is important for performing an economic evaluation of the burden of HCC and for formulating an appropriate healthcare policy to control HCC.

There are several important clinical implications of this study. First, the decreasing trend in the ASR of HCC incidence in Korea is similar to the trends observed in Asians living in other countries. A recent study by Petrick et al.[17] estimated the current and future incidences of HCC in the United States. The overall ASR of HCC increased from 2000 to 2012, and the researchers predicted that it would further increase from 2013 to 2030. In contrast, the ASR of HCC in Asians is expected to decrease from 2013 to 2030 by an average of -1.8% each year, and the ASR of HCC in 2030 is estimated to be 15.5 per 100,000 person-years. Another study from the United States reported that the ASR of HCC significantly decreased from 2007 to 2016 at a rate of -2.72% per year in patients with

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2021.0395

Asian/Pacific islander ethnicity.[18] Similar to these two studies, the annual decrease in ASR in our study was -3.9% from 2008 to 2018, and the predicted ASR in 2028 is 9.7% per 100,000 person-years. The projected decrease in the ASR and number of patients with HCC in Korea may be a result of better control of HBV and HBV-related HCC. Although HBV remained the strongest contributing factor to HCC in 2018, the total number of patients with HCC and the proportion of cases of HBV-related HCC decreased annually from 2011 to 2018. Nationwide efforts have been made to eradicate HBV, the main cause of HCC. HBV vaccination has been a component of the national vaccination program since 1995; more than 95% of infants are currently vaccinated, which has contributed to a low positivity rate (0.2%) for hepatitis B surface antigen in children.[19] In addition, the introduction and expansion of insurance coverage of antiviral agents for HBV have improved the control of HBV replication and prevented cirrhosis-related complications and HCC.[20]

Second, the HCC incidence trends varied noticeably among age groups. While the absolute number of HCC cases in patients aged 0–29 years was very few, the annual decrease in the ASR was the greatest in this age group (AAPC, -13.59%), and the incidence is predicted to approach zero by 2028. From 2008 to 2018, the ASR decreased in patients aged 30–59 years, and it did not change in patients aged 60–79 years. The ASR anticipated to decrease to 15.5/100,000 person-years in patients aged 30–59 years, whereas it is predicted to increase by 103.2 person-years in patients aged 60–79 years by 2028. Despite a gradual decrease in the ASR over time, the socioeconomic burden of HCC is expected to increase because of increasing life expectancy and a greater likelihood of HCC with increasing age in patients with chronic liver disease. Therefore, efforts should be made to control the HCC incidence in middle-aged patients with the highest socioeconomic productivity to alleviate the socioeconomic burden.

Third, it is concerning that the ASR of HCC is not declining in patients receiving Medicare. From 2008 to 2018, the ASR significantly decreased in all medical insurance groups, except the Medicare group. Conversely, there was a slight increase in the ASR from 2012 to 2018 in the Medicare group, although this difference was not statistically significant. It is unclear whether economic class directly affects HCC incidence. In a study by Anyiwe et al.,[21] patients in the lower income groups had an increased risk of HCC compared with those in the highest income group, despite adjustments for age, sex, and area of residence. Although economic class itself was not a risk factor for HCC, many risk factors for HCC were closely related to economic class. In our study, we did not find any differences in HCC etiology among medical insurance groups (Supplementary Table 4). However, between 2008 and 2018, patients with HBV-related HCC in the Medicare group had significantly less use of antiviral treatment, than patients in the group with the highest medical insurance (Q16–20) (Supplementary Table 5). Further research is needed to confirm whether the reduced use of antiviral drugs in HBV-infected patients in the Medicare group is linked to uncontrolled viremia and thus affects HCC development.

Fourth, the proportions of patients developing HCC due to HBV and HCV still remained high in 2018, while the proportions of patients with HCC induced by NAFLD and alcoholic liver disease are increasing. In 2016, the World Health Organization set a goal of eliminating HBV and HCV by the year 2030 using prevention and treatment targets that aim to reduce annual deaths by 65%, increase the proportion of treated patients to 80%, and save 7.1 million lives globally.[22] Consistent with this 2030 eradication strategy, vaccination against HBV and antiviral treatment for HBV and HCV will further reduce the incidence of HCC. However, the proportion of patients with NAFLD-related HCC increased by 2.7% annually in our study. NAFLD is the fastest growing cause of HCC in the United States and United Kingdom.[23,24] The prevalence of NAFLD-related HCC is likely to increase concomitantly with the increasing incidence of obesity. Therefore, management of metabolic indices through lifestyle modification is important for reducing the risk of HCC.

Finally, special attention is needed for patients with HCC aged ≥80 years. The absolute number, CR, and ASR of HCC in patients aged ≥80 years has significantly increased from 2008 to 2018, and the incidence is expected to continue increasing until 2028. An increasing trend in the ASR in the elderly population was also identified in a Taiwanese cohort,[25] and the most plausible explanation was that old age is a risk factor for HCC. The increasing incidence of HCC in older age groups is similar to that seen in other cancers. According to annual statistics from the Korean Central Cancer Registry, the proportion patients with gastric cancer aged ≥80 years was 7.5% and 12.7% in 2008 and 2018, respectively. The proportion patients with colon cancer aged ≥80 years was 9.4% in 2008 and 19.0% in 2018. Moreover, elderly patients have many comorbid conditions, such as liver cirrhosis or diabetes

mellitus, which may further increase the risk of HCC. In our subgroup analysis of patients with HBV-related HCC, patients aged ≥80 years received significantly less antiviral treatment between 2008 and 2018 than did patients in other age groups (P<0.001; data not shown). HBV is the most common etiology of HCC; therefore, uncontrolled HBV viremia in elderly patients can be associated with a greater incidence of HCC. This assumption requires subsequent verification in future studies. By 2028, the proportion of patients with HCC aged ≥80 years will increase to 21.3% of all patients with HCC. This is consistent with the report by Kim and Park[4] that the age distribution of HCC in Korea has shifted towards the right between 2005 and 2014. When we look up the age structure of general population, the number of Koreans aged 80 years or older increased from 2008 to 2018 (number, 890,000 in 2008 to 1,845,000 in 2018; the proportion, 1.8% in 2008 to 3.1% in 2018).[26] Therefore, even considering that Korea is becoming an aging society, the proportion of HCC patients aged 80 years or older increased at a faster rate (4.3% in 2008 to 10.6% in 2018). Elderly patients with HCC often have additional comorbid conditions such as diabetes, hypertension, and renal failure; thus, they may not receive adequate treatment because healthcare professionals are concerned about the abilities of these patients to tolerate standard HCC treatment. Conversely, using standard treatment for HCC without considering the frailty of these patients may cause toxicity or fatality. Therefore, guidelines should be formulated for customized management of elderly patients with HCC to improve the treatment and reduce the socioeconomic burden of HCC.

There were several limitations in our study. First, although we included the entire dataset from the KNHIS database in our analysis, the HCC incidence may have been underestimated because some patients with HCC may not have visited any hospital or the disease codes may have been missed. Second, we could not confirm the medical records of included patients from the hospitals; thus, there was a possibility of misclassification or under-/overestimation of HCC, etiologies of HCC, or comorbid conditions. Third, the operational definition of NAFLD-related HCC was somewhat liberal because we included patients with diabetes mellitus and without any other chronic liver diseases. However, NAFLD-related HCC accounted for only 10% of all HCC cases in our study, and this proportion was similar to a previous Korean study about the etiological distribution of HCC.[13] Fourth, since we could not perform analysis by birth cohort, it was difficult to determine the exact timing of HCC reduction affected by expansion of HBV vaccination or antiviral treatment for HBV and HCV. Finally, prediction of future incidence assumes that past trends will continue; predictions may be inaccurate if there are various changes in the medical environment.

In conclusion, the ASR of HCC in Korea gradually declined over the past 10 years. However, the number, CR, and ASR of HCC are increasing in patients aged ≥80 years. In 2028, the number of HCC patients aged ≥80 years will be quadruple greater than the number of HCC patients in 2008, and 21.3% of all patients with HCC will be in this age group. A customized HCC management plan that considers the age and general health status of these patients is necessary. In addition, a national health strategy should be implemented to manage the economic burden of HCC.

Authors' contribution

Soung Won Jeong and Dae Won Jun take responsibility for the integrity of the work, from inception tothe published article.

Specific author contributions: Conception: Young Eun Chon, Soung Won Jeong, and Dae Won Jun; Study design: Young Eun Chon, Dae Won Jun, and Soung Won Jeong; Contribution to data acquisition: Young Eun Chon, Seong Yong Park, Eileen Yoon, Soon Sun Kim, Sang Bong Ahn, Soung Won Jeong, and Dae Won Jun; Statistical analysis: Young Eun Chon, Seong Yong Park, Han Pyo Hong, Donghee Son, Jonghyun Lee, Soung Won Jeong, and Dae Won Jun; Writing papers: Young Eun Chon, Soung Won Jeong, and Dae Won Jun.

All authors have reviewed the paper and approved the final version.

Acknowledgements

This article was written with cooperation from the National Health Insurance Service (NHIS) and Korean Association for the Study of the Liver (KASL), based on a MOU (NHIS-2021-1-096). Data from the National Health Insurance Database of NHIS Korea were analyzed. This study was supported by the Research Supporting Program of The KASL (recipient: S. W. J, KASL 2019-05), and the Soonchunhyang University Research Fund.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

Supplementary material is available at Clinical and Molecular Hepatology website (http://www.e-cmh.org).

REFERENCES

1. Sung H, Ferlay J, Siegel RL, Laversanne M, Soerjomataram I, Jemal A, et al. Global cancer statistics 2020: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. CA Cancer J Clin 2021;71:209-249.
2. Rawla P, Sunkara T, Muralidharan P, Raj JP. Update in global trends and aetiology of hepatocellular carcinoma. Contemp Oncol (Pozn) 2018;22:141-150.
3. Korean Liver Cancer Association (KLCA), National Cancer Center (NCC). 2018 Korean liver cancer association-national cancer center Korea practice guidelines for the management of hepatocellular carcinoma. Gut Liver 2019;13:227-299.
4. Kim BH, Park JW. Epidemiology of liver cancer in South Korea. Clin Mol Hepatol 2018;24:1-9.
5. Dasgupta P, Henshaw C, Youlden DR, Clark PJ, Aitken JF, Baade PD. Global trends in incidence rates of primary adult liver cancers: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Front Oncol 2020;10:171.
6. Liu Z, Jiang Y, Yuan H, Fang Q, Cai N, Suo C, et al. The trends in incidence of primary liver cancer caused by specific etiologies: results from the global burden of disease study 2016 and implications for liver cancer prevention. J Hepatol 2019;70:674-683.
7. Kim BK, Kim DY, Han KH, Seong J. Changes in real-life practice for hepatocellular carcinoma patients in the Republic of Korea over a 12-year period: a nationwide random sample study. PLoS One 2019;14:e0223678.
8. Chon YE, Lee HA, Yoon JS, Park JY, Kim BH, Lee IJ. Hepatocellular carcinoma in Korea between 2012 and 2014: an analysis of data from the Korean nationwide cancer registry. J Liver Cancer 2020;20:135-147.
9. Lee EY, Xuan Mai TT, Chang Y, Ki M. Trends of liver cancer and its major risk factors in Korea. Epidemiol Health 2015;37:e2015016.
10. Yoon JS, Lee HA, Park JY, Kim BH, Lee IJ, Chon YE. Hepatocellular carcinoma in Korea between 2008 and 2011: an analysis of Korean nationwide cancer registry. J Liver Cancer 2020;20:41-52.
11. Kim BH, Lim YS, Kim EY, Kong HJ, Won YJ, Han S, et al. Temporal improvement in survival of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma in a hepatitis B virus-endemic population. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2018;33:475-483.
12. Cho EJ, Kim SE, Suk KT, An J, Jeong SW, Chung WJ, et al. Current status and strategies for hepatitis B control in Korea. Clin Mol Hepatol 2017;23:205-211.
13. Cho EJ, Kwack MS, Jang ES, You SJ, Lee JH, Kim YJ, et al. Relative etiological role of prior hepatitis B virus infection and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in the development of non-B non-C hepatocellular carcinoma in a hepatitis B-endemic area. Digestion 2011;84(Suppl 1):17-22.
14. Jun DW, Jeong SW, Chon YE, Park S, Yoon E, Kim SS, et al. 2021 hepatocellular carcinoma factsheet in Korea. Korean Association for the Study of the Liver web site, <https://www.kasl.org/file/factsheet_2021.pdf>. Accessed 12 Aug 2022.
15. Kwon S, Lee TJ, Kim CY. Republic of Korea health system review. In: Kwon S, ed. Health Systems in Transition. Vol 5. Manila: WHO Regional Office for the Western Pacific, 2015.
16. Korean Liver Cancer Study Group (KLCSG), National Cancer Center, Korea (NCC). 2014 Korean liver cancer study group-national cancer center Korea practice guideline for the management of hepatocellular carcinoma. Korean J Radiol 2015;16:465-522.
17. Petrick JL, Kelly SP, Altekruse SF, McGlynn KA, Rosenberg PS. Future of hepatocellular carcinoma incidence in the United States forecast through 2030. J Clin Oncol 2016;34:1787-1794.
18. Shiels MS, O'Brien TR. Recent decline in hepatocellular carcinoma rates in the United States. Gastroenterology 2020;158:1503-1505.
19. Lee BS, Cho YK, Jeong SH, Lee JH, Lee D, Park NH, et al. Nationwide seroepidemiology of hepatitis B virus infection in South Korea in 2009 emphasizes the coexistence of HBsAg and anti-HBs. J Med Virol 2013;85:1327-1333.
20. Shim JJ, Oh IH, Kim SB, Kim JW, Lee CK, Jang JY, et al. Predictive value of antiviral effects in the development of hepatocellular carcinoma in the general Korean population with chronic hepatitis B. Gut Liver 2016;10:962-968.
21. Anyiwe K, Qiao Y, De P, Yoshida EM, Earle CC, Thein HH. Effect of socioeconomic status on hepatocellular carcinoma incidence and stage at diagnosis, a population-based cohort study. Liver Int 2016;36:902-910.
22. Cox AL, El-Sayed MH, Kao JH, Lazarus JV, Lemoine M, Lok AS, et al. Progress towards elimination goals for viral hepatitis. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2020;17:533-542.

23. Huang DQ, El-Serag HB, Loomba R. Global epidemiology of NAFLD-related HCC: trends, predictions, risk factors and prevention. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2021;18:223-238.
24. Estes C, Anstee QM, Arias-Loste MT, Bantel H, Bellentani S, Caballeria J, et al. Modeling NAFLD disease burden in China, France, Germany, Italy, Japan, Spain, United Kingdom, and United States for the period 2016-2030. J Hepatol 2018;69:896-904.
25. Hung GY, Horng JL, Yen HJ, Lee CY, Lin LY. Changing incidence patterns of hepatocellular carcinoma among age groups in Taiwan. J Hepatol 2015;63:1390-1396.
26. Statistics Korea. Korean Statistical Information Service. Statistics Korea web site, <https://www.index.go.kr/potal/main/EachDtlPageDetail.do?idx_cd=1010>. Accessed 13 Dec 2021.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2021.0395

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0181
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:135-145

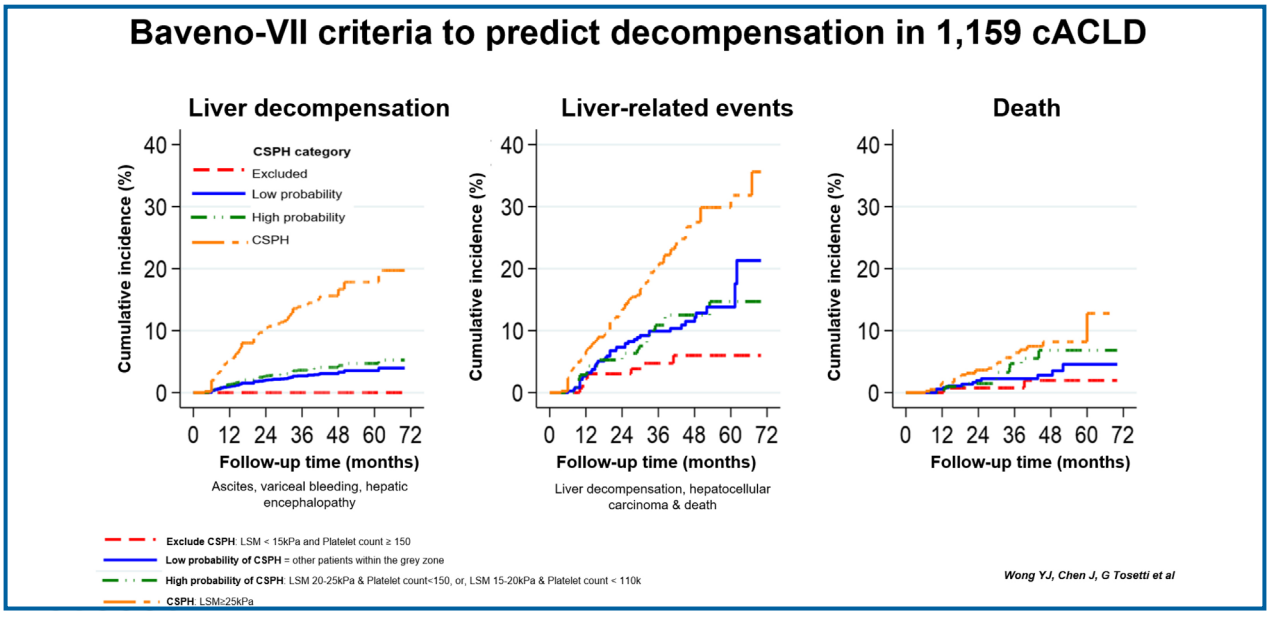
Original Article

Baveno-VII criteria to predict decompensation and initiate non-selective beta-blocker in compensated advanced chronic liver disease patients

Yu Jun Wong[1,2], Chen Zhaojin[3], Guilia Tosetti[4], Elisabetta Degasperi[4], Sanchit Sharma[5], Samagra Agarwal[5], Liu Chuan[6], Chan Yiong Huak[3], Li Jia[7,*], Qi Xiaolong[6,*], Anoop Saraya[5,*], and Massimo Primignani[4,*]

[1]Department of Gastroenterology & Hepatology, Changi General Hospital, Singapore; [2]Duke-NUS Academic Clinical Program, SingHealth, Singapore; [3]Biostatistics Unit, Yong Loo Lin School of Medicine, National University of Singapore, Singapore; [4]Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Foundation IRCCS Ca' Granda Ospedale Maggiore Policlinico, Milan, Italy; [5]Department of Gastroenterology and Human Nutrition Unit, All India Institute of Medical Science, New Dehli, India; [6]CHESS Center, Institute of Portal Hypertension, the First Hospital of Lanzhou University, Lanzhou; [7]Department of Gastroenterology & Hepatology, Tianjin Second People's Hospital, Tianjin, China

Graphical Abstract



Study Highlights

- Baveno-VII criteria can rule in or rule out CSPH among cACLD patients at baseline.
- Baveno-VII criteria have not been validated to predict decompensation and the need for NSBB in cACLD patients.
- The prevalence of CSPH among cACLD patients remained unclear.
- One-third of cACLD patients fulfilled the non-invasive criteria of CSPH.
- While non-invasive assessment of CSPH predicts decompensation risk and the need for NSBB in cACLD patients, "probable CSPH" is suboptimal to predict decompensation risk in cACLD patients.
- CSPH exclusion criteria might be used to stop NSBB in cACLD patients however further validations are required.

Background/Aims: The utility of Baveno-VII criteria of clinically significant portal hypertension (CSPH) to predict decompensation in compensated advanced chronic liver disease (cACLD) patient needs validation. We aim to validate the performance of CSPH criteria to predict the risk of decompensation in an international real-world cohort of cACLD patients.

Methods: cACLD patients were stratified into three categories (CSPH excluded, grey zone, and CSPH). The risks of decompensation across different CSPH categories were estimated using competing risk regression for clustered data, with death and hepatocellular carcinoma as competing events. The performance of "treating definite CSPH" strategy to prevent decompensation using non-selective beta-blocker (NSBB) was compared against other strategies in decision curve analysis.

Results: One thousand one hundred fifty-nine cACLD patients (36.8% had CSPH) were included; 7.2% experienced decompensation over a median follow-up of 40 months. Non-invasive assessment of CSPH predicts a 5-fold higher risk of liver decompensation in cACLD patients (subdistribution hazard ratio, 5.5; 95% confidence interval, 4.0–7.4). "Probable CSPH" is suboptimal to predict decompensation risk in cACLD patients. CSPH exclusion criteria reliably exclude cACLD patients at risk of decompensation, regardless of etiology. Among the grey zone, the decompensation risk was negligible among viral-related cACLD, but was substantially higher among the non-viral cACLD group. Decision curve analysis showed that "treating definite CSPH" strategy is superior to "treating all varices" or "treating probable CSPH" strategy to prevent decompensation using NSBB.

Conclusions: Non-invasive assessment of CSPH may stratify decompensation risk and the need for NSBB in cACLD patients. **(Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:135-145)**

Keywords: Portal hypertension; Hypertension, portal; Liver cirrhosis

INTRODUCTION

Compensated advanced chronic liver disease (cACLD) patients can be risk-stratified based on the presence of clinically significant portal hypertension (CSPH),[1] which is defined as hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG) measurement beyond 10 mmHg.[2] In a randomized trial, Villanueva et al.[3] showed that non-selective beta-blockers (NSBBs) prevent decompensation and improve survival in cACLD patients with HVPG ≥10 mmHg. Although the Baveno-VII consensus recommends NSBB for cACLD patients with CSPH,[4] controversies remain, especially among virologically-suppressed cACLD patients, where the decompensation risk is generally low.[5,6]

Given the invasive nature and logistic challenges to measuring HVPG in every cACLD patient, the non-invasive assessment of CSPH is an important unmet need.[7] A unifying, non-invasive diagnosis for CSPH was lacking until the recent Baveno-VII consensus.[4] While the combination of baseline liver stiffness measurement (LSM) and platelet count (Bave-

Corresponding author : **Yu Jun Wong**
Department of Gastroenterology & Hepatology, Changi General Hospital, 2, Simei Street 3, 529889, Singapore
Tel: +65-6936-5729, E-mail: eugene.wong.y.j@singhealth.com.sg
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-0727-1183

*Co-last authors.

Editor: Salvatore Piano, University of Padova Faculty of Medicine and Surgery, Italy **Received :** Jun. 23, 2022 / **Revised :** Aug. 24, 2022 / **Accepted :** Aug. 29, 2022

Abbreviations:

cACLD, compensated advanced chronic liver disease; CI, confidence interval; CSPH, clinically significant portal hypertension; CTP, Child-Turcott-Pugh; DCA, decision curve analysis; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; HRV, high-risk varices; HVPG, hepatic venous pressure gradient; INR, international normalized ratio; IQR, interquartile range; LSM, liver stiffness measurement; NASH, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis; NSBB, non-selective beta-blocker; sHR, subdistribution hazard ratio

no-VII criteria) correlates with baseline CSPH,[8,9] this proposed non-invasive assessment of CSPH has not been validated to predict liver decompensation. In this study, we aimed to validate the performance of the Baveno-VII criteria of CSPH to predict liver decompensation and the need for NSBB in an international real-world cohort of cACLD patients.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

This is a retrospective analysis of cACLD patients identified via institutional registries of cACLD patients from four countries (Italy, India, China, and Singapore) between January 2014 and December 2017. We identified cACLD patients based on institutional transient elastography database from Singapore, India, and China, regardless of cirrhosis etiology. The Italy cohort included consecutively treated HCV patients with available transient elastography results consistent with the diagnosis of cACLD (LSM ≥10 kPa). The study was approved by the respective institutional ethics committees with waiver of consent granted, and conducted in compliance with the 1975 Helsinki declaration.

The diagnosis of cACLD was made based on LSM ≥10 kPa with supportive features of cirrhosis such as 1) radiological (nodular liver or irregular liver margin or splenomegaly), 2) histological features of advanced fibrosis or established cirrhosis, 3) presence of gastroesophageal varices or 4) HVPG >5 mmHg.[4] Individual chart review was performed for all patients to confirm the diagnosis of cACLD[4] and relevant clinical data were collected using a unified data template. We excluded patients with a history of liver decompensating events such as ascites, variceal bleeding or hepatic encephalopathy,[4] baseline hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), invalid LSM, or missing data. Given that treatment of virus-related cirrhosis is the standard of care for cirrhosis patients, we excluded patients with untreated virus-related cirrhosis, which was defined as hepatitis B virus-related cirrhosis without virological suppression or hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis without sustained virological response.[4] We also excluded patients with significant alcohol intake (30 g/day in males or 20 g/day in females) identified based on electronic medical records. Given that there is no approved specific treatment for non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) cirrhosis, we included all NASH cirrhosis in our cohort. Finally, we excluded patients with NSBB usage because NSBB use can reduce decompensating events in compensated cirrhosis patients with CSPH, as shown in the PREDESCI (β blockers to Prevent Decompensation of Cirrhosis in Patients with Clinically Significant Portal Hypertension) trial. Given that our study period predated the recent Baveno-VII consensus which recommended the widespread use of empiric NSBB to prevent decompensation in cACLD patients, the treatment of high-risk varices (HRV) was intended to prevent variceal bleeding (rather than decompensation). The decisions between endoscopic variceal ligation versus NSBB were physician-dependent.

LSM

All transient elastography were performed by certified operators using either M or XL probe, based on the manufacturer's instruction. LSM was measured as the median of at least 10 successful measurements, expressed in kilopascal (kPa). LSM was considered unreliable when the interquartile range (IQR) was beyond 30% of the median LSM value, or when there were less than 10 successful measurements.

Definition of CSPH

We used the Baveno-VII criteria to define CSPH (LSM ≥25 kPa) and exclude CSPH (LSM <15 kPa and platelet ≥150×10^9/L).[4] Patients who did not fulfil the inclusion or exclusion CSPH criteria were classified as grey zone. Patients within the grey zone were further categorized into high probability of CSPH (defined as LSM between 20–25 kPa and platelet <150×10^9/L, or LSM between 15–20 kPa and platelet <110×10^9/L), or low probability of CSPH (defined as the remaining patients within the grey zone).[4]

Study outcomes

Patients were followed-up every 3 to 6 months from the diagnosis of cACLD to the onset of first liver decompensation (variceal bleeding, clinically overt ascites and overt hepatic encephalopathy), HCC or death, whichever occurred earlier. Variceal bleeding was confirmed from the endoscopy. Ascites was defined as clinically overt ascites requiring diuretic treatment. Overt hepatic encephalopathy was defined by West Haven Classification grade 2 and beyond. We defined liver-related events as the presence of either liver decompensation, HCC, or death.

Statistical analysis

Baseline data were summarized based on CSPH criteria into three categories, namely CSPH excluded, grey zone and CSPH (LSM ≥25 kPa).[4] Continuous data were reported in mean±standard deviation or median with IQR based on normality of data distribution. Categorical data were summarized by frequency (percentage). Numerical baseline variables comparisons across the three groups were performed using the one-way analysis of variance/Kruskal-Wallis rank test and chi-square/Fisher's exact tests for categorical variables. The log-rank test was used to compare the median follow-up times of the three groups.

The risk of liver decompensation was estimated using the competing risk regression for clustered data, with HCC and death as competing risks. The corresponding subdistribution hazard ratio (sHR), 95% confidence interval (95% CI) and cumulative incidence were reported.[10] Cumulative incidences of liver-related events and death were obtained by survival analysis. Subgroup analysis was performed to determine if the presence of HRV and etiology influenced the performance of CSPH to predict decompensation, liver-related events and death among cACLD patients.

Univariable and multivariable competing risk regression for clustered data were conducted to select predictors of liver decompensation regarding HCC and death as competing events. Optimal cut-offs of continuous predictors in the final model were chosen based on the Youden and Liu criteria. All statistical tests were two-sided with a 5% significance level. Statistical analysis was performed using STATA/SE version 17.0 (StataCorp LLC, College Station, TX, USA). Decision curve analysis was performed by R version 4.0.5 (R Foundation for Statistical Computing, Vienna, Austria).

Decision curve analysis (DCA)

DCA was used to assess the application of various screening strategies to stratify patients for NSBB to prevent decompensation in real-life settings.[11] DCA evaluates various screening strategies including (1) treating only HRV, (2) treating all esophageal varices (given that varices are manifestations of CSPH), and (3) treating CSPH (diagnosed based on the Baveno-VII non-invasive criteria), in comparison with default strategies of either treating everyone with NSBB, or treating no patients with NSBB. The net benefit of each strategy was assessed across a range of threshold probabilities, with the area under the curve corresponding to the estimated benefit of each strategy to prevent decompensation. Overall, DCA al-

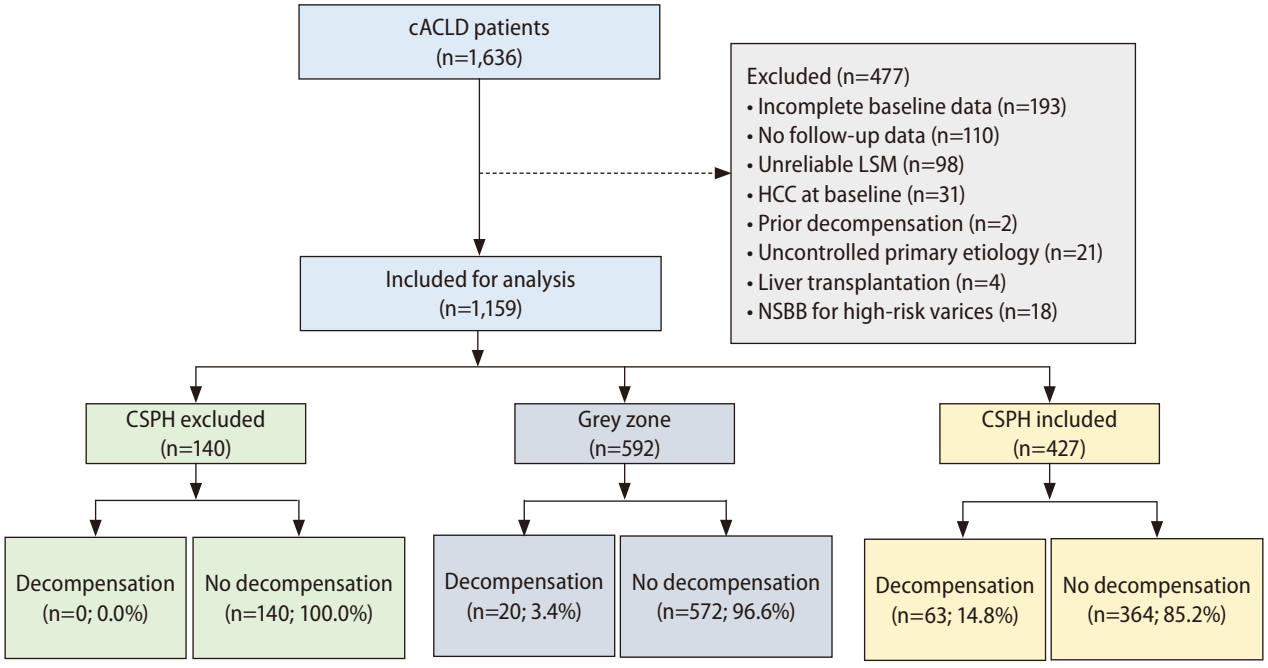


Figure 1. Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials diagram. cACLD, compensated advanced chronic liver disease; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; LSM, liver stiffness measurement; NSBB, non-selective beta-blocker; CSPH, clinically significant portal hypertension.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0181

Table 1. Baseline demographic of study subjects stratified based on the non-invasive diagnosis of clinically significant portal hypertension

Variable	Total cohort (n=1,159)	CSPH not fulfilled		CSPH fulfilled (n=427)	*P*-value
		CSPH excluded (n=140)	Grey zone (n=592)		
Age (years)	55±13	57±14	57±14	53±12	<0.001
Gender, male	776 (67.0)	89 (63.6)	374 (63.2)	313 (73.3)	0.002
Ethnicity					<0.001
Caucasian	357 (30.8)	66 (47.1)	207 (35.0)	84 (19.7)	
Chinese	328 (28.3)	47 (33.6)	165 (27.9)	116 (27.2)	
Indian	310 (26.8)	2 (1.4)	128 (21.6)	180 (42.2)	
Malay	111 (9.6)	20 (14.3)	62 (10.5)	29 (6.8)	
Arabic	28 (2.4)	2 (1.4)	18 (3.0)	8 (1.9)	
Others	25 (2.2)	3 (2.1)	12 (2.0)	10 (2.3)	
Etiology					<0.001
Hepatitis B	247 (21.3)	34 (24.3)	127 (21.5)	86 (20.1)	
Hepatitis C	650 (56.1)	95 (67.9)	374 (63.2)	181 (42.4)	
Alcohol	105 (9.1)	1 (0.7)	28 (4.7)	76 (17.8)	
NASH	102 (8.8)	4 (2.9)	41 (6.9)	57 (13.4)	
Others	55 (4.7)	6 (4.3)	22 (3.7)	27 (6.3)	
MELD score	8±3	7±1	8±3	9±3	<0.001
Child-Turcott-Pugh score	5.2±0.6	5.0±0.2	5.1±0.4	5.4±0.7	<0.001
LSM (kPa)	23.8±12.2	12.3±1.3	17.9±3.7	35.7±12.4	<0.001
Fibrosis-4	4.4±3.6	2.1±1.1	4.4±3.4	5.3±4.1	<0.001
Laboratory parameters					
Albumin (g/L)	40±5	43±4	41±5	38±6	<0.001
Bilirubin (μmol/L)	19±15	14±8	17±11	24±19	<0.001
ALT (μmol/L)	77±63	75±62	79±65	73±62	0.368
Platelets ($\times 10^3$/μL)	141±66	205±49	138±64	125±62	<0.001
Platelet count ($\times 10^3$/μL)					<0.001
<150	708 (61.1)	0 (0.0)	408 (68.9)	300 (70.3)	
≥150	451 (38.9)	140 (100.0)	184 (31.1)	127 (29.7)	
INR	1.09±0.14	1.03±0.08	1.07±0.13	1.14±0.14	<0.001
Creatinine (μmol/L)	68 (57–80)	69 (58–80)	69 (58–83)	66 (56–80)	0.162
Esophageal varices					
No varices	641 (60.7)	88 (82.2)	367 (69.0)	186 (44.6)	<0.001
Low-risk varices	357 (33.8)	19 (17.8)	140 (26.3)	198 (47.5)	<0.001
High-risk varices	58 (5.5)	0 (0.0)	25 (4.7)	33 (7.9)	0.003
Follow-up time (months)	40 (30–52)	44 (34–53)	40 (31–52)	39 (30–50)	0.010

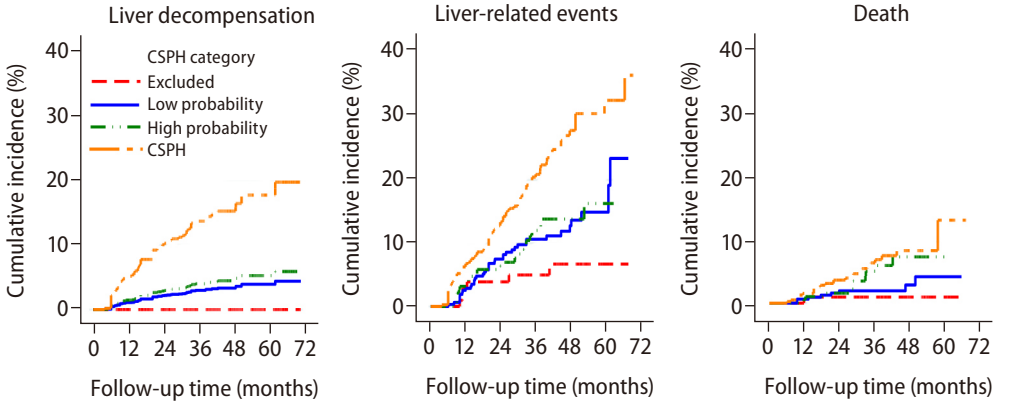
Values are presented as mean±standard deviation, median (interquartile range), or frequency (%).
CSPH, clinically significant portal hypertension; MELD, Model of End-stage Liver Disease; LSM, liver stiffness measurement; ALT, alanine aminotransferase; INR, international normalized ratio.

lows objective assessment of the number of additional patients experiencing decompensation for every patient treated with NSBB using various screening strategies. Further details of DCA are described in Supplementary Material 1.

RESULTS

Baseline characteristics

A total of 1,159 cACLD patients were included and the Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials diagram was summarized in Figure 1. The cohort was predominantly male with virus-related cirrhosis (77.4%) with Child-Turcott-Pugh (CTP)



CSPH category	sHR (95% CI)	*P*-value
Excluded	0	NA
Low probability	Reference	-
High probability	1.3 (0.9-1.8)	0.06
CSPH	5.5 (4.0-7.4)	<0.01

CSPH category	HR (95% CI)	*P*-value
Excluded	Reference	-
Low probability	2.2 (0.9-4.8)	0.06
High probability	1.8 (0.8-4.4)	0.16
CSPH	3.9 (1.8-8.4)	<0.01

CSPH category	HR (95% CI)	*P*-value
Excluded	Reference	-
Low probability	2.0 (0.4-8.9)	0.38
High probability	3.2 (0.7-14.9)	0.14
CSPH	4.6 (1.1-19.6)	0.04

Figure 2. Clinical outcomes according to the non-invasive diagnosis of clinically significant portal hypertension in compensated advanced chronic liver disease patients. Liver decompensation was defined as the presence of ascites, variceal bleeding and hepatic encephalopathy. Liver-related events was defined as the presence of liver decompensation, hepatocellular carcinoma or death. CSPH, clinically significant portal hypertension; sHR, subdistribution hazard ratio; CI, confidence interval; NA, not applicable.

Table 2. Cumulative incidence of liver-related events stratified based on non-invasively assessed clinically significant portal hypertension status

Category	No. of events (cumulative incidence %) at 3-year		
	Liver decompensation*	Liver-related events†	All-cause death†
CSPH excluded (n=140)	0 (0.0)	7 (5.0)	2 (1.4)
Grey-zone (n=592)	10 (2.6)	43 (11.3)	11 (2.9)
Low probability of CSPH	8 (3.7)	21 (10.0)	9 (4.2)
High probability of CSPH			
CSPH (n=427)	59 (13.8)	82 (19.2)	25 (5.8)

Definition of CSPH category: CSPH, defined as liver stiffness measurement (LSM) ≥25 kPa; CSPH excluded, defined as LSM <15 kPa and platelet count ≥150; grey-zone, patients who did not fulfilled non-invasive criteria to diagnose or exclude CSPH; high probability of CSPH, defined as LSM 20–25 kPa & platelet count <150, or LSM 15–20 kPa & platelet count $<110\times10^9$/L; low probability of CSPH, other patients within the grey zone.
CSPH, clinically significant portal hypertension.
*Cumulative incidence was calculated based on competing risks regression for clustered data with hepatocellular carcinoma and death as competing risks.
†Cumulative incidence was calculated based on Cox regression with shared frailty.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0181

class A (95.0%); 10.3% had body mass index >30 kg/m^2. Baveno-VII criteria stratified cACLD patients into three categories, namely CSPH (36.8%), grey zone (51.1%) and CSPH excluded (12.1%). Patients with CSPH had more advanced liver disease (higher CTP score, higher Model of End-stage Liver Disease score, higher bilirubin, lower albumin and lower platelet count), higher mean LSM and Fibrosis-4 score than those without CSPH (*P*<0.001 for all) (Table 1). The details of each cohort stratified by study sites were summarized in Supplementary Table 1.

Non-invasive diagnosis of CSPH and decompensation

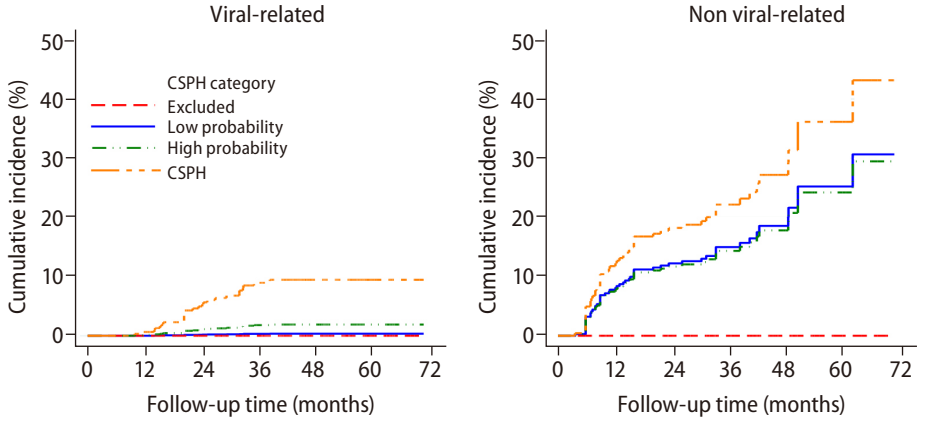
Over a median (IQR) follow-up of 40 months (30–52), 83 patients (7.2%) developed liver decompensation, 67 patients (5.8%) had *de-novo* HCC, 51 patients (4.4%) died, and none received liver transplantation. The commonest decompensating event was ascites, followed by variceal bleeding and hepatic encephalopathy (Supplementary Table 2). None of the 140 patients (12.1%) fulfilling the exclusion criteria for CSPH developed liver decompensation.

CSPH patients had a higher risk of liver decompensation, liver-related events and death when compared to those without CSPH (Fig. 2, Supplementary Table 3). The risk of liver decompensation was low among patients within the grey zone, regardless of whether they had a high or low probability of CSPH based on non-invasive criteria (Table 2). After excluding subjects with HRVs, these findings remained the same (Supplementary Fig. 1).

Predictors of liver decompensation were the presence of CSPH (sHR, 2.48 [1.35–4.55]; *P*=0.003), non-viral related cirrhosis (sHR, 3.25 [1.83–5.76]; *P*<0.001], international normalized ratio (INR) >1.1 (sHR, 2.08 [1.14–3.80]; *P*=0.017), and albumin <37 g/L (sHR, 3.38 [1.83–6.25]; *P*<0.001) (Supplementary Table 4). Application of the "Rule-of-five" in our cohort demonstrate an incremental risk of liver decompensation, with LSM >25 kPa significantly associated with a higher risk of liver decompensation (Supplementary Table 5).

Subgroup analysis by etiology

Given that non-virus-related cirrhosis has a higher risk of decompensation, we performed a subgroup analysis based on etiology. The exclusion criteria of CSPH performed well in excluding patients at risk of decompensation, regardless of the underlying etiology of cirrhosis. Similarly, the presence of CSPH also predicts a higher risk of decompensation com-



CSPH category	sHR (95% CI)	*P*-value
Excluded	Reference	-
Low probability	0	NA
High probability	5.4 (1.0-27.8)	0.04
CSPH	27.9 (4.2-183.3)	<0.01

CSPH category	sHR (95% CI)	*P*-value
Excluded	Reference	-
Low probability	0	NA
High probability	1.0 (0.6-1.5)	0.8
CSPH	1.5 (1.3-1.9)	<0.01

Figure 3. Cumulative incidence of decompensation based on etiology (virus-related vs. non-viral related). The 3-year cumulative incidence of decompensation among non-virus-related cACLD (CSPH excluded, 0%; low probability, 15.0%; high probability, 14.3%; CSPH, 22.2%) was higher than virus-related cACLD patients (CSPH excluded, 0%; low probability, 0.3%; high probability, 1.8%; CSPH, 9.0%). CSPH, clinically significant portal hypertension; sHR, subdistribution hazard ratio; CI, confidence interval; NA, not applicable; cACLD, compensated advanced chronic liver disease.

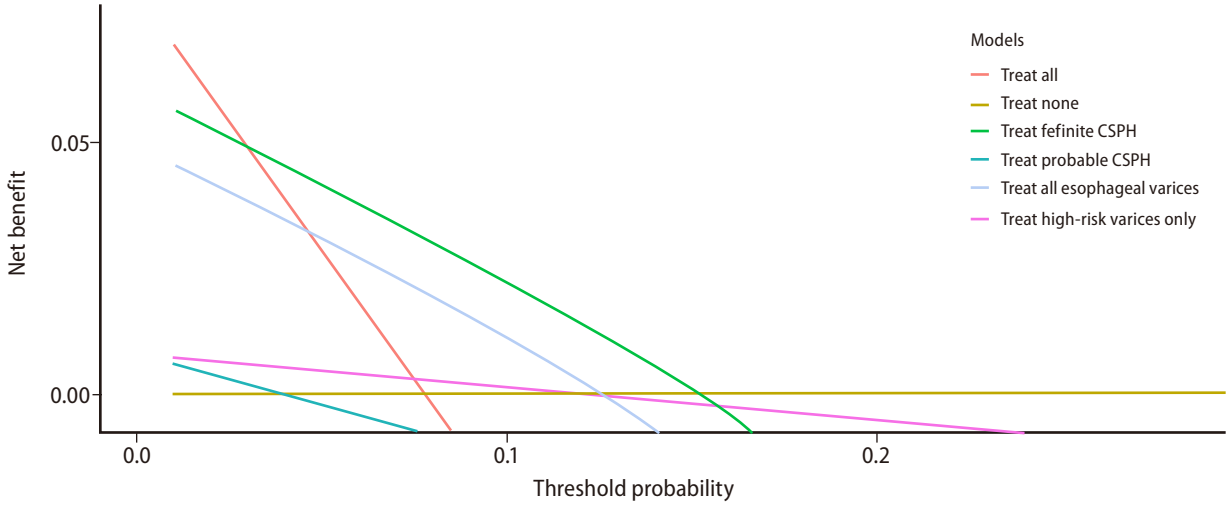


Figure 4. Decision curve analysis demonstrating the benefit of initiating non-selective beta-blocker based on various strategies such as treating "high-risk varices" (pink), "all esophageal varices" (red), "treat definite CSPH" (green), "treat probable CSPH" (turquoise) and "treat none" (brown), across different threshold risk of annual decompensation. The area under the curve between different lines and the brown line (treat none) reflect the estimated benefit of each treatment strategy. At a treatment threshold between 5–10% of decompensation rate, treating "definite CSPH" is the best strategy to initiate non-selective beta-blocker to prevent decompensation. CSPH, clinically significant portal hypertension.

pared to those with CSPH excluded (Fig. 3). The 3-year cumulative incidence of decompensation among non-virus-related cACLD (CSPH excluded, 0%; low probability, 15.0%; high probability, 14.3%; CSPH, 22.2%) was higher than virus-related cACLD patients (CSPH excluded, 0%; low probability, 0.3%; high probability, 1.8%; CSPH, 9.0%).

While the decompensation risk between the grey zone and those with CSPH excluded were similar among virus-related cACLD patients, such risk was substantially higher among non-viral cACLD patients within the grey zone. Among cACLD patients within the grey zone, there were no differences observed between patients with a low or high probability of CSPH, regardless of the underlying etiology (Fig. 3). The predictors of decompensation among patients in grey zone were the etiology of liver cirrhosis, INR, albumin and bilirubin (Supplementary Table 6).

Decision curve analysis

Using the treatment threshold derived from our cohort (between 5–10% decompensation rate at 5 years), "treating definite CSPH" strategy is superior to "treating probable CSPH" and "treating any varices" strategy to initiate NSBB. This is demonstrated by the largest area under the curve by adopting "treating definite CSPH" strategy. The number needed to treat for CSPH-based strategy was 27 and 50, at treatment thresholds of 5% and 10%, respectively (Fig. 4, Supplementary Table 7).

DISCUSSION

This international multicenter study demonstrates that non-invasive assessment of CSPH predicted liver decompensation in a large cohort of cACLD patients. Baveno-VII criteria reliably exclude CSPH, complementing earlier study by Ripoll et al.[2] showing a negligible risk of liver decompensation in patients with HVPG below 10 mmHg. CSPH was present in one-third of cACLD patients, and was associated with a five-fold higher risk of liver decompensation. Moreover, our DCA further supports the strategy of initiating NSBB in patients with CSPH to prevent liver decompensation, which is in line with an earlier randomized trial[3] and meta-analysis[12] supporting the use of carvedilol in preventing liver decompensation.

Compared to the seminal PREDESCI study, our cohort had a lower 5-year decompensation risk than the seminar PREDESCI study (7.9% vs. 20%, $P<0.001$) because the majority of the HCV-related cirrhosis patients from the PREDESCI cohort

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0181

were untreated, and only 37% of our cohort had CSPH.[2] While one may argue that virological suppression would have modified the natural course of CSPH in virus-related cirrhosis, our findings reflect the real-world setting where virological suppression is now an achievable standard of care in virus-related cACLD patients following the introduction of high-efficacious, pangenotypic direct-acting antiviral treatment.[13] Moreover, our decompensation rate was consistent with recent studies demonstrating a relatively low risk of decompensation among virologically-suppressed cACLD patients.[5,6,14]

Despite the heterogeneous risk of CSPH, we found the risk of liver decompensation in patients within the CSPH grey zone remained similar, irrespective of the underlying etiology of cirrhosis. The Baveno-VII consensus defined patients within CSPH "grey zone" as having either LSM between 20–25 kPa and platelet $<150\times10^9$/L (defined as high probability of CSPH in our study), or LSM between 15–20 kPa and platelet $<110\times10^9$/L (defined as low probability of CSPH in our study). While these patients had "at least" 60% predicted risk of CSPH, the observed risk of CSPH within the ANTICIPATE[15] cohort ranges from 57% to 78.5% in cACLD patients with low or high probability of CSPH, respectively. In other words, the diagnosis of CSPH grey zone may not be accurate in up to 43%. This heterogeneity in baseline decompensation risks can influence the treatment magnitude of NSBB in terms of absolute risk reduction and number needed to treat, thus making the diagnosis of "CSPH grey zone" unfavourable to be used as selection criteria to initiate NSBB in cACLD patients. In our cohort, the etiology of liver cirrhosis, serum INR, albumin and bilirubin correlates with the risk of liver decompensation in patients within CSPH grey zone (Supplementary Table 6). A recent study by Dajti and colleagues[16] demonstrated that spleen stiffness can reduce the proportion of patients within the CSPH grey zone. Further studies are required to validate the performance of spleen stiffness to stratify decompensation risk in patients with the CSPH grey zone.

Unlike virus-related cACLD whereby only patients with CSPH are at a higher risk of decompensation, a higher risk of decompensation was observed in non-virus-related cACLD patients with CSPH, as well as those within the grey zone. The exact reasons cannot be elucidated due to the relatively small proportion of non-virus-related cACLD in the current study. However there were several postulations: 1) the lack of definitive treatment for NASH cirrhosis may predispose these patients to an increased risk of disease progression and decompensation, 2) the potential difference in the natural history between NASH and virus-related cACLD, where the former may experience clinical decompensation at a lower portal pressure,[17] and 3) unreported ongoing alcohol drinking, which may contribute to a higher risk of decompensation among alcoholic liver cirrhosis. Given the risk of decompensation is substantially higher in non-virus-related cACLD patients within the grey zone, one should remember that the decompensation risk is a continuous spectrum, therefore over-reliance on specific cut-off may potentially oversimplify the risk prediction in cACLD patients.

The expanding treatment indication of NSBB from preventing variceal bleeding to preventing decompensation represents a paradigm shift in the management of cACLD patients. While the Baveno-VI criteria could safely reduce the need for screening gastroscopy, it was unclear if this may represent a missing opportunity to identify cACLD patients with small esophageal varices for NSBB. While the risk of variceal bleeding is generally small in these patients, we demonstrated that the presence of small esophageal varices was associated with a higher risk of liver decompensation in our previous study.[18] In this regard, decision curve analysis showed that the "treating all esophageal varices" strategy is superior to "treating only HRV" strategy to prevent decompensation. However, even with routine endoscopy, CSPH may be present in those without esophageal varices. Indeed, decision curve analysis showed that the best strategy to prevent decompensation is not treating "probable CSPH" or "treating all esophageal varices", but "treating definite CSPH strategy" instead (Supplementary Table 7). The strategy of treating definite CSPH strategy may prevent more decompensating events, at the same time mitigate the need for routine screening endoscopy among cACLD patients. In other words, the "treat definite CSPH" strategy may have significant impacts on resource allocation and carbon emission, given that endoscopy is the third-largest generator of carbon emission within healthcare.[19]

The strengths of our study include the multicentre design with a relatively large sample size. We validated the performance of non-invasive Baveno-VII criteria using the competing risk analysis to account for multiple competing outcomes among cirrhosis patients, where the occurrence of an event could preclude (death) or modify (HCC or non-hepatic comorbidities) the probability of liver decompensation. Our

findings provide a pragmatic estimation of the decompensation risk, given that most virus-related cirrhosis patients would have been treated with antiviral in a real-world setting.[20] Given the negligible risk of decompensation, NSBB is unlikely beneficial in patients whose CSPH were excluded based on Baveno-VII criteria. Prospective validation will help to understand if this criterion may be used to withdraw NSBB in cACLD patients with primary etiology controlled.

Our study has limitations. Due to the retrospective nature of our study, it is not possible to ensure alcohol abstinence in all subjects as we lack objective tests such as phosphatidylethanol to assess for alcohol intake. While the non-viral etiology was identified as one driving factor of liver decompensation, controlled or cured etiology may likely have contributed to a higher decompensation risk in alcohol-related cACLD (9.1%) as compared to virus-related cACLD patients. We acknowledged that variceal ligation may reduce the incidence of variceal bleeding in patients with HRVs. However, variceal ligation should not influence the incidence of other decompensating events such as ascites or hepatic encephalopathy,[4] and our findings remained consistent after excluding subjects with HRVs (Supplementary Fig. 1). We did not account for radiological evidence of CSPH, such as portosystemic shunts, which may potentially under-estimate the prevalence of CSPH in this cohort. We acknowledge that there is variability in patients' characteristics and clinical practice across different institutions, which may potentially influenced our results. Our findings remained robust for all key outcomes (liver decompensation, liver-related events and death) after adjusting our analysis by clusters (Fig. 2, Supplementary Table 7).[10] Finally, the application of our findings should also consider the confounders of LSM (obesity, liver congestion or operator experience) and adverse effects of NSBB.

In summary, the non-invasive assessment of CSPH predicts a 5-fold higher decompensation risk in cACLD patients. Our findings support the use of Baveno-VII criteria of CSPH (i.e., LSM >25 kPa) to initiate NSBB in cACLD patients. While the risk of decompensation is low among virus-related cACLD fulfilling exclusion criteria of CSPH (LSM <15 kPa and platelet count ≥150), HCC surveillance should still be continued in these patients. Future studies should focus on identifying disease-specific thresholds to rule in or rule out CSPH following primary etiology suppression.

Authors' contribution

Study conception: WYJ; Data acquisition: WYJ, SS, GT, ED, LC, LJ; Data analysis: WYJ, CZ, SS, SA, GT, CYH; Manuscript draft: WYJ, SS, SA, GT; Critical review of the manuscript and final review: All authors

Acknowledgements

Dr. Wong YJ is supported by the Nurturing Clinician Scientist Scheme (NCCS) award by SingHealth Duke-NUS Academic Medical Centre.

We would like to thank Dr. Martin Putera and Dr. Garrett Kang for their contribution to this study.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

Supplementary material is available at Clinical and Molecular Hepatology website (http://www.e-cmh.org).

REFERENCES

1. D'Amico G, Morabito A, D'Amico M, Pasta L, Malizia G, Rebora P, et al. New concepts on the clinical course and stratification of compensated and decompensated cirrhosis. Hepatol Int 2018;12(Suppl 1):34-43.
2. Ripoll C, Groszmann R, Garcia-Tsao G, Grace N, Burroughs A, Planas R, et al. Hepatic venous pressure gradient predicts clinical decompensation in patients with compensated cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 2007;133:481-488.
3. Villanueva C, Albillos A, Genescà J, Garcia-Pagan JC, Calleja JL, Aracil C, et al. β blockers to prevent decompensation of cirrhosis in patients with clinically significant portal hypertension (PREDESCI): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre trial. Lancet 2019;393:1597-1608.
4. de Franchis R, Bosch J, Garcia-Tsao G, Reiberger T, Ripoll C, Baveno VII Faculty. BavenoVII - renewing consensus in portalhypertension: report of the Baveno VII consensus workshop: personalized care in portal hypertension. J Hepatol 2022;76:959-974.
5. Tosetti G, Degasperi E, Farina E, D'Ambrosio R, Soffredini R, Borghi M, et al. Decompensation in direct-acting antiviral

cured hepatitis C virus compensated patients with clinically significant portal hypertension: too rare to warrant universal B-blocker therapy. Am J Gastroenterol 2021;116:1342-1344.
6. Thabut D, Bureau C, Layese R, Bourcier V, Hammouche M, Cagnot C, et al. Validation of Baveno VI criteria for screening and surveillance of esophageal varices in patients with compensated cirrhosis and a sustained response to antiviral therapy. Gastroenterology 2019;156:997-1009.e5.
7. European Association for the Study of the Liver, Clinical Practice Guideline Panel. EASL clinical practice guidelines on non-invasive tests for evaluation of liver disease severity and prognosis - 2021 update. J Hepatol 2021;75:659-689.
8. Pons M, Augustin S, Scheiner B, Guillaume M, Rosselli M, Rodrigues SG, et al. Noninvasive diagnosis of portal hypertension in patients with compensated advanced chronic liver disease. Am J Gastroenterol 2021;116:723-732.
9. Podrug K, Trkulja V, Zelenika M, Bokun T, Madir A, Kanizaj TF, et al. Validation of the new diagnostic criteria for clinically significant portal hypertension by platelets and elastography. Dig Dis Sci 2021;67:3327-3332.
10. Zhou B, Fine J, Latouche A, Labopin M. Competing risks regression for clustered data. Biostatistics 2012;13:371-383 .
11. Vickers AJ, van Calster B, Steyerberg EW. A simple, step-by-step guide to interpreting decision curve analysis. Diagn Progn Res 2019;3:18.
12. Villanueva C, Torres F, Sarin SK, Shah HA, Tripathi D, Brujats A, et al. Carvedilol reduces the risk of decompensation and mortality in patients with compensated cirrhosis in a competing-risk meta-analysis. J Hepatology 2022;77:1014-1025.
13. Wong YJ, Thurairajah PH, Kumar R, Tan J, Fock KM, Law NM, et al. Efficacy and safety of sofosbuvir/velpatasvir in a real-world chronic hepatitis C genotype 3 cohort. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2021;36:1300-1308.
14. Asesio N, Pollo-Flores P, Caliez O, Munteanu M, Ngo A, Ngo Y, et al. Baveno VI criteria as a prognostic factor for clinical complications in patients with compensated cirrhosis. Dig Liver Dis 2021;54:645-653.
15. Abraldes JG, Bureau C, Stefanescu H, Augustin S, Ney M, Blasco H, et al. Noninvasive tools and risk of clinically significant portal hypertension and varices in compensated cirrhosis: the "ANTICIPATE" study. Hepatology 2016;64:2173-2184.
16. Dajti E, Ravaioli F, Marasco G, Alemanni LV, Clecchia L, Ferrarese A, et al. A combined Baveno VII and spleen stiffness algorithm to improve the non-invasive diagnosis of clinically significant portal hypertension in patients with compensated advanced chronic liver disease. Am J Gastroenterol 2022;117:1825-1833.
17. Sanyal AJ, Van Natta ML, Clark J, Neuschwander-Tetri BA, Diehl A, Dasarathy S, et al. Prospective study of outcomes in adults with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. N Engl J Med 2021;385:1559-1569.
18. Putera M, Teh KB, Kumar R, Wong YJ. Small esophageal varices in compensated cirrhosis patients: to treat or not to treat? J Hepatol 2021;75:491-492.
19. Maurice JB, Siau K, Sebastian S, Ahuja N, Wesley E, Stableforth W, et al. Green endoscopy network. Green endoscopy: a call for sustainability in the midst of COVID-19. Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol 2020;5:636-638.
20. Wong YJ, Thurairajah PH, Kumar R, Fock KM, Law NM, Chong SY, et al. The impact of unrestricted access to direct-acting antiviral among incarcerated hepatitis C virus-infected patients. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:474-485.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0172
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:146-162

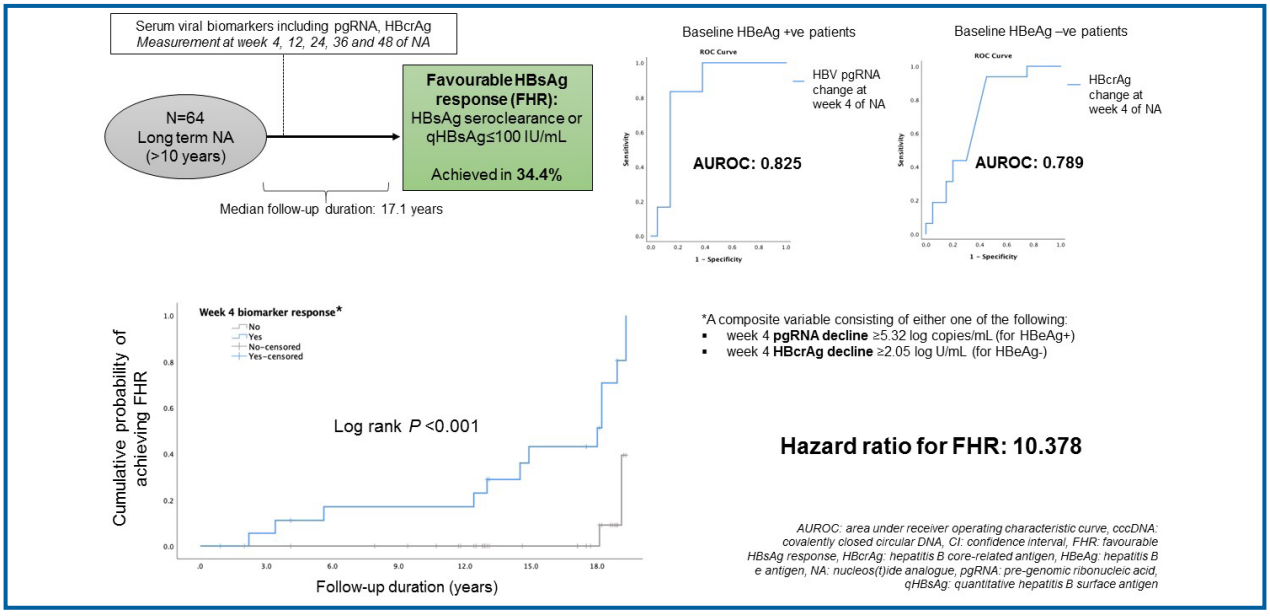
Original Article

Hepatitis B virus pre-genomic RNA and hepatitis B core-related antigen reductions at week 4 predict favourable hepatitis B surface antigen response upon long-term nucleos(t)ide analogue in chronic hepatitis B

Lung-Yi Mak[1,2,*], Danny Wong[1,2,*], Alison Kuchta[3], Martina Hilfiker[4], Aaron Hamilton[3], Ning Chow[1], XianHua Mao[1], Wai Kay Seto[1,2], and Man-Fung Yuen[1,2]

[1]Department of Medicine, School of Clinical Medicine, The University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong; [2]State Key Laboratory of Liver Research, The University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong; [3]Roche Molecular Systems, Inc., Pleasanton, CA, USA; [4]Roche Diagnostics Int. AG, Rotkreuz, Switzerland

Graphical Abstract



Study Highlights

- Early on-treatment HBcrAg and HBV pgRNA showed differential rate of decline between those who achieved favourable HBsAg suppression and those who did not.
- Among those who achieved HBsAg seroclearance or low HBsAg after on antiviral therapy >10 years, week 4 HBV pgRNA or HBcrAg decline were strong predictors (AUROC 0.825 and 0.789, respectively).
- Intrahepatic cccDNA or total HBV DNA decline were not associated with favourable HBsAg suppression.
- Serum pgRNA and HBcrAg allowed the prediction of indefinite duration of therapy in patients put on NAs who should be prioritized for enrolment into clinical trials.

Background/Aims: We investigated the dynamics of serum HBV pre-genomic RNA (pgRNA) and hepatitis B core-related antigen (HBcrAg) in patients receiving nucleos(t)ide analogues (NAs) and their predictability for favourable suppression of serum hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg).

Methods: Serum viral biomarkers were measured at baseline, weeks 4, 12, 24, 36, and 48 of treatment. Patients were followed up thereafter and serum HBsAg level was measured at end of follow-up (EOFU). Favourable HBsAg response (FHR) was defined as ≤100 IU/mL or HBsAg seroclearance upon EOFU.

Results: Twenty-eight hepatitis B e antigen (HBeAg)-positive and 36 HBeAg-negative patients (median, 38.2 years old; 71.9% male) were recruited with median follow-up duration of 17.1 years (interquartile range, 12.8–18.2). For the entire cohort, 22/64 (34.4%) achieved FHR. For HBeAg-positive patients, serum HBV pgRNA decline at week 4 was significantly greater for patients with FHR compared to non-FHR (5.49 vs. 4.32 log copies/mL, respectively; *P*=0.016). The area under the receiver-operating-characteristic curve (AUROC) for week 4 HBV pgRNA reduction to predict FHR in HBeAg-positive patients was 0.825 (95% confidence interval [CI], 0.661–0.989). For HBeAg-negative patients, instead of increase in serum HBcrAg in non-FHR patients, FHR patients had median reduction in HBcrAg at week 4 (increment of 1.75 vs. reduction of 2.98 log U/mL; *P*=0.023). The AUROC for week 4 change of HBcrAg to predict FHR in HBeAg-negative patients was 0.789 (95% CI, 0.596–0.982).

Conclusions: Early on-treatment changes of serum HBV pgRNA and HBcrAg at 4 weeks predict HBsAg seroclearance or ≤100 IU/mL in NA-treated CHB patients upon long-term FU. **(Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:146-162)**

Keywords: Chronic hepatitis B; Hepatitis B core antigen; Hepatitis B e antigen; Viremia; Treatment outcome

INTRODUCTION

Despite the availability of an effective vaccine, hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection is still a global problem, with an estimate of 292 million people being infected.[1] Currently approved antiviral treatment against chronic hepatitis B (CHB), in the form of nucleos(t)ide analogues (NAs), is very effective in suppression of serum HBV DNA, thereby normalization of liver functions, histological improvement, and reduction in risk of hepatocellular carcinoma and mortality.[2-6] However, a more desirable treatment endpoint i.e., functional cure, defined as hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) seroclearance, is still a rare event (about 1% per year) even with long-term NA treatment.[7-9] Moreover, there is a high rate of virological re-

Corresponding author : Man-Fung Yuen
Department of Medicine, School of Clinical Medicine, The University of Hong Kong, Pokfulam Road, Hong Kong
Tel: +852-22553984, Fax: +852-28162863, E-mail: mfyuen@hku.hk
https://orcid.org/0000-0001-7985-7725

Wai-Kay Seto
Department of Medicine, School of Clinical Medicine, The University of Hong Kong, Pokfulam Road, Hong Kong
Tel: +852-22556979, Fax: +852-28162863, E mail: wkseto@hku.hk
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-9012-313X

*Authors contributed equally.

Editor: Young-Suk Lim, University of Ulsan College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Jun. 14, 2022 / **Revised :** Jul. 27, 2022 / **Accepted :** Aug. 12, 2022

Abbreviations:

AUROC, area under receiver operating curve; cccDNA, covalently closed circular DNA; CHB, chronic hepatitis B; CI, confidence interval; EOFU, end of follow-up; FHR, favourable HBsAg response; HBcrAg, hepatitis B core-related antigen; HBeAg, hepatitis B e antigen; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HR, hazard ratio; IA, investigational assay; IQR, interquartile range; LLOD, lower limit of detection; NAs, nucleos(t)ide analogues; NCBI, National Center for Biotechnology Information; OR, odds ratio; PCR, polymerase chain reaction; pgRNA, pre-genomic RNA; qHBsAg, quantitative HBsAg

lapse if NA is stopped before achieving functional cure. Therefore, most patients need to take NA on a long-term basis. Little is known about which patients can achieve functional cure so that NA can be stopped after a finite duration. A number of HBV serum markers have been shown to be suppressed by NA and are associated with post-NA cessation virological control. The most-studied markers are HBsAg level, hepatitis B core-related antigen (HBcrAg) and HBV pre-genomic RNA (pgRNA). According to several natural history of disease studies, patients with HBsAg levels <100 IU/mL had a good chance of subsequent loss of HBsAg upon continuation of follow-up.[10-13] However, the rate of HBsAg decline on NA is modest (0.107 log IU/mL per year)[14] and it will take decades to reach the preferable target of HBsAg level lower than 100 IU/mL.

HBcrAg is a composite measure of three HBV proteins, namely the hepatitis B core antigen, hepatitis B e antigen (HBeAg) and a 22 kDa precore protein.[15,16] HBcrAg has been shown to correlate with covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA) levels,[17,18] and is suppressed by NA treatment.[14,19,20] Recent studies have suggested that HBV pgRNA can be detected in the serum of CHB patients and can serve as a marker for viral replication.[21-26] Serum HBV pgRNA levels correlate with the levels and transcriptional activity of cccDNA, and is suppressed by NA therapy.[22,27-29] It is not known whether the effect of long-term NA-treatment on HBsAg suppression could be reflected by the early on-treatment changes of HBV serum markers such as HBV pgRNA and HBcrAg.

Therefore, in the present study, we primarily aimed to study the dynamic changes of serum HBcrAg, HBV pgRNA and other serum markers in the first year of NA treatment and investigate whether they can predict favourable HBsAg response (FHR) in the long run. The secondary aim included the investigation of whether serum HBV markers could reflect intrahepatic viral replicative activity.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients

Between January 2002 and April 2009, 215 CHB patients had taken part in three international phase III, randomized, double blind trials in our centre, namely the BEHoLD trials, comparing between entecavir and lamivudine;[30,31] the GLOBE trial, comparing between telbivudine and lamivudine;[32] and the QUASH trial, comparing between clevudine and adefovir. Among them, 124 patients had available paired liver biopsies taken at baseline and year 1 of treatment in our centre.[33] Of these, 67 had available stored serum samples (stored at -20°C) collected at baseline, week 4, week 12, week 24, week 36, and week 48 for analysis in the present study. Of these 67 patients, three were lost to long-term follow-up, leaving 64 patients for final analysis. The primary outcome of this study was the predictors for FHR at end of follow-up (EOFU) upon long-term NA. FHR was defined as HBsAg seroclearance or HBsAg ≤100 IU/mL at EOFU. Written informed consent were obtained from these patients for the analysis of liver tissue and blood samples. This study was approved by the Institution Review Board, The University of Hong Kong and Hospital Authority Hong Kong West Cluster (UW 18-021).

Analysis of serum HBV markers

Serum HBV DNA was measured by the COBAS HBV Test (Roche Diagnostics GmbH, Mannheim, Germany), with a lower limit of detection (LLOD) of 20 IU/mL. HBsAg was measured by the Elecsys HBsAg Quant II assay (Roche Diagnostics, Indianapolis, IN, USA) with a LLOD of 0.05 IU/mL (the LLOD per the manufacturers' user manual is 0.04 U/mL in Paul-Ehrlich-Institute standard and 0.1 U/mL in World Health Organization standard). HBcrAg was measured with the Lumipulse HBcrAg assay (Fuijrebio Inc., Tokyo, Japan), with a linear range of 1,000 to 10,000,000 U/mL, while the LLOD was 100 U/mL. Values above the LLOD (i.e., 100–1,000 U/mL) are also presented for statistical analysis. This methodology has been verified and used in our previous studies.[19,34,35] Circulating HBV RNA was quantified by real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR) using the Roche HBV RNA investigational assay (IA) for use on the cobas® 6800/8800 Systems (Roche Diagnostics, Pleasanton, CA, USA). The HBV RNA assay is a quantitative nucleic acid test (lower limit of quantification 10 copies/mL; linearity range 10 to 10×10^9 copies/mL on armored RNA template) to enable the detection and quantification of HBV RNA in EDTA plasma or serum of HBV-infected patients. Analytical verification was completed at Roche Development (RKZ) and included genotypes A, B, C, D. Additionally, in-silico analysis indicated the design would perform equivalently on all genotypes. All tests were performed by trained operators in accordance with the manu-

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0172

facturers' specifications.[36,37] Runs were considered valid if internal controls were valid and no protocol deviations or incidents occurred that might affect the validity of the data. If a run was considered invalid, all samples included in that run were retested wherever possible. HBV genotyping was performed by PCR amplification of the HBV S region, followed by direct sequencing and phylogenetic comparison with reference HBV sequences in the National Center for Biotechnology Information (NCBI) GenBank, as previously described.[38]

Analysis of intrahepatic HBV markers

The extraction of DNA from liver tissues, as well as the data and methods of measurement of intrahepatic total HBV DNA and cccDNA have been reported previously.[18,33] Briefly, intrahepatic total HBV DNA and cccDNA were isolated by either QIAamp DNA Mini-Kit or the Allprep DNA/RNA/protein (both Qiagen) according to manufacturer's instructions, and measured by real-time PCR using hybridization probes and primers targeting the S regions and those targeting the nicked region of the HBV DNA genome for intrahepatic total HBV DNA and cccDNA, respectively, with lower limit of quantification of 0.001 and 0.005 copies/cell, respectively.

Detection of integrated HBV DNA

Liver DNA extraction

Degree of HBV DNA integration were studied in 17 patients with adequate liver tissue samples. Total liver DNA was extracted using the QIAamp DNA Mini kit (Qiagen, Hilden, Germany), according to manufacturer's instructions. DNA quality and quantity were assessed using both the Qubit DNA quantification assay and the NanoDrop™ 2000c spectrophotometers (both from Thermo Fisher Scientific, Waltham, MA, USA).

Inverse PCR

HBV DNA integration and the estimation of hepatocyte clone size were measured by inverse PCR.[39,40] Inverse PCR relies on the selective use of restriction enzymes (*Nco*I in this case) to cut at both HBV DNA (near the DR1-DR2 region) and the human genome. Following re-ligation of the restricted fragments and further cutting by a second restriction enzyme (*BsiHK*AI), the fragments were amplified by nested-PCR. In order to detect HBV-human chimeric DNA in small hepatocyte clones, the restricted fragments were serially diluted and PCR-amplified in replicates of 12. The sequence of the primers for the first round PCR were OF1 (nt 1585–1603) 5′ -TTCGCTTCACCTCTGCACG-3′ and OR1 (nt 1422–1405) 5′ -AAAGGACGTCCCGCGCAG-3′; and those for the second round were IF2 (nt 1605–1623) ′-CGCATGGAGACCACCGTGA-3′and IR2 (nt 1390–1372) -CACAGCCTAGCAGCCATGG-3′. The identities of the amplicons were confirmed by Sanger sequencing.

Identification of viral-host junction and hepatocyte clone size calculation

Sequencing results were aligned with both HBV genome (NCBI accession number: NC_003977.1) and Human Reference Genome (GRCh38) for the identification of viral-host junctions and integration sites.

Determination of cell number in liver tissues

The number of cells in the liver tissues were determined by measurement of the human genomic DNA content in the extracted liver DNA using the Light-Cycler Control DNA kit (Roche Molecular Systems), based on an estimation of 6.667 pg human genomic DNA per cell. Intrahepatic total HBV DNA and cccDNA were log transformed and expressed in log copies/ liver cell, whereas HBV DNA integration frequency was expressed in integrants/1,000 liver cells.

Statistical analysis

Statistical analyses were performed by using IBM SPSS ver. 27.0 (IBM, Armonk, NT, USA) unless otherwise specified. Continuous variables were logarithmic transformed and compared using the Mann-Whitney U test. Related variables were compared by using the Wilcoxon signed rank test. For variables that showed statistical significance at comparison, area under receiver operating curve (AUROC) analysis was performed to assess the overall prediction accuracy. The optimal cut-off values for predicting FHR were derived by maximizing the Youden's index (sensitivity + specificity − 1) from the AUROC analysis. The time-dependent AUROC was estimated by Inverse Probability of Censoring via package "timeROC" in R (version 4.1.2). To determine whether a biomarker profile was independently associated with FHR, multivariate binary logistic regression was performed using variables that were significant at univariate analysis, with odds ratio (OR) and

95% confidence interval (95% CI) calculated. Time-to-event analysis by Cox regression was performed on the entire cohort after excluding patients with undetectable baseline pgRNA or HBcrAg, with results expressed in hazard ratio (HR) and 95% CI. We were able to determine the time of HBsAg seroclearance from the cohort. For patients who remained HBsAg+ but achieved quantitative HBsAg (qHBsAg) <100 at EOFU, longitudinal qHBsAg data was not available; therefore the time of achieving the 'event' was arbitrarily taken as the time of last FU for these low qHBsAg patients. Kaplan-Meier survival analysis was performed to compare the probability of FHR in pre-defined groups, with differences tested for statistical significance by log rank test. A two-tailed $P<0.05$ was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

Baseline characteristics

A total of 64 patients (71.9% male) were recruited for analysis. At baseline, i.e., NA initiation, the median age of the cohort was 38.2 (interquartile range [IQR], 29.4–47.2) years, with 28 (43.75%) being HBeAg-positive. The median HBcrAg, HBV pgRNA, HBV DNA and HBsAg were 3.54 log U/mL (IQR, 2.3–4.78), 4.00 log copies/mL (IQR, 2.98–4.88), 6.60 log IU/mL (IQR, 5.84–8.24), and 3.48 log U/mL (IQR, 2.89–3.77), respectively. The median total intrahepatic HBV DNA and cccDNA were 140.5 and 3.37 copies/cell, respectively. The frequency of HBV DNA integration per 1,000 liver cells was 0.94 (IQR, 0.51–2.24) (Table 1). Six patients had undetectable serum HBV pgRNA at baseline (HBeAg-positive, 1; HBeAg-negative, 5) and 12 HBeAg-negative patients had undetectable serum

Table 1. Baseline characteristics (n=64)

	Value
Gender (% male)	46 (71.9)
Age at recruitment (years)	38.2 (29.4 to 47.2)
Antiviral therapy	
Adefovir	8 (12.5)
Clevudine	16 (25.0)
Entecavir	16 (25.0)
Lamivudine	19 (29.7)
Telbivudine	5 (7.8)
HBeAg (% positive)	28 (43.75)
Genotype	
B	20 (31.25)
C	44 (68.75)
ALT (U/L)	93 (69 to 171)
HBcrAg (log U/mL)	3.54 (2.30 to 4.78)
HBV pgRNA (log copies/mL)	4 (2.98 to 4.88)
HBV DNA (log IU/mL)	6.6 (5.84 to 8.24)
HBsAg (log IU/mL)	3.48 (2.89 to 3.77)
Intrahepatic total HBV DNA (log copies/liver cell)	2.148 (1.387 to 2.862)
Intrahepatic cccDNA (log copies/ liver cell)	0.527 (-0.142 to 1.180)
HBV DNA integration frequency (integrants/1,000 liver cells)*	0.94 (0.51 to 2.24)

Values are presented as median (%) or median (interquartile range).
HBeAg, hepatitis B e antigen; ALT, alanine aminotransferase; HBcrAg, hepatitis B core-related antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; pgRNA, pregenomic RNA; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; cccDNA, covalently closed circular DNA.
*Data available in 17 patients.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0172

HBcrAg at baseline. Among these 12 patients with undetectable serum HBcrAg, four also had undetectable serum HBV pgRNA (Supplementary Table 1).

The median duration from start of NA to EOFU was 17.1 (IQR, 12.8–18.2) years. At EOFU, 22/64 patients (34.4%) achieved FHR, including eight patients with HBsAg seroclearance (median duration from NA, 11.9 years [IQR, 3.97–15.96]), and 14 patients with HBsAg ≤100 IU/mL. No significant differences in achieving FHR were observed between ETV-treated and non-ETV-treated patients (43.8% vs. 31.3%, *P*=0.269). Since the levels of HBV biomarkers are highly dependent on HBeAg status,[19,34,41] analyses were performed in HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative patients separately.

HBeAg-positive patients

Kinetics of viral markers during initial 48 weeks of NA therapy

At baseline, median serum HBV pgRNA was 3 logs lower than HBV DNA level (4.92 log copies/mL vs. 8.13 log IU/mL, respectively). After 4 weeks of NA, both markers were reduced but a bigger decline was observed for HBV DNA compared to HBV pgRNA, leading to narrowing of the gap between the two markers (4.10 log copies/mL for HBV pgRNA vs. 4.33 log IU/mL for HBV DNA). At week 12, HBV pgRNA caught up with the level of HBV DNA (3.01 log copies/mL vs. 3.07 log IU/mL, respectively) and after which the relationship reversed that serum pgRNA levels were higher than HBV DNA levels at week 24 (2.61 log copies/mL vs. 2.22 log IU/mL, respectively) and week 36 (2.54 log copies/mL vs. 1.83 log IU/mL, respectively). At week 48, the median serum levels of both markers were undetectable. Overall, there was a gradual reduction of median serum HBcrAg level except with two blips at week 12 and week 36. At week 48, there was a 5.15 log U/mL reduction of serum HBcrAg from baseline, and was still detectable at a median level of 3.04 log U/mL (Fig. 1A, Supplementary Table 2).

Kinetics of viral markers in FHR vs. non-FHR

Among 28 HBeAg-positive patients, 26 patients (92.9%) achieved HBeAg seroclearance as of EOFU. Six of the 28 patients (21.4%) achieved FHR at EOFU (three achieved HBsAg seroclearance and the other three had HBsAg level ≤100 IU/mL). There were no statistical differences in the baseline demographics including age and gender, the duration of follow-up as well as the median levels of HBcrAg, HBV DNA and HBsAg. Notably, patients with FHR had a higher baseline median HBV pgRNA level compared with patients with non-FHR. All these parameters at baseline and during the initial 48 weeks of NA therapy are shown in Supplementary Table 3. Supplementary Figure 1A, B shows the levels of HBcrAg and HBV pgRNA at each time point.

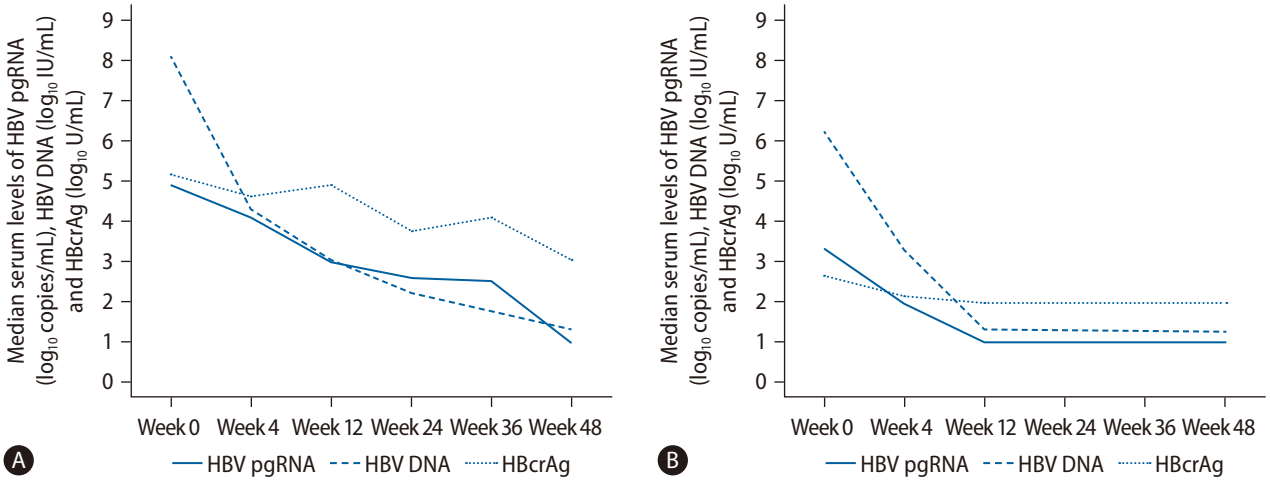


Figure 1. Median levels of HBV pgRNA, HBV DNA and HBcrAg during initial 48 weeks of nucleos(t)ide analogues therapy. Lower limit of quantification for HBV pgRNA = 10 copies/mL (i.e., 1 $\log_{10}$ copies/mL); lower limit of detection for HBV DNA = 20 IU/mL (i.e., 3 $\log_{10}$ IU/mL); lower limit of detection for HBcrAg = 100 U/mL (i.e., 2 $\log_{10}$ U/mL). (A) HBeAg-positive patients. (B) HBeAg-negative patients. HBeAg, hepatitis B e antigen; pgRNA, pre-genomic RNA; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HBcrAg, hepatitis B core-related antigen.

Association between early on-treatment changes of serum viral markers and FHR

One patient with baseline undetectable serum HBV pgRNA was excluded from the individual biomarker analysis. Compared to non-FHR, FHR patients had higher median decline in most serum HBV markers including HBcrAg, pgRNA and HBV DNA at all the time points measured during the first year of NA treatment (Table 2). These differences reached statisti-

Table 2. Median reduction in serum and intrahepatic viral markers at different time points during initial 48 weeks of NA therapy among initially HBeAg-positive patients

Viral marker	FHR	Non-FHR	*P*-value
HBcrAg (log U/mL)			
Week 4	4.88 (-3.15 to 5.85)	0.77 (-4.08 to 5.39)	0.395
Week 12	5.30 (2.26 to 5.95)	4.33 (3.54 to 5.43)	0.141
Week 24	5.22 (1.77 to 6.02)	4.32 (3.33 to 5.49)	0.387
Week 36	5.68 (4.49 to 6.36)	4.59 (3.68 to 5.40)	0.199
Week 48	5.50 (4.63 to 6.03)	4.90 (4.28 to 5.60)	0.283
HBV pgRNA (log copies/mL)*			
Week 4	5.49 (5.19 to 5.83)†	4.32 (3.30 to 5.18)†	0.016†
Week 12	5.58 (5.06 to 6.05)†	4.38 (3.76 to 5.15)†	0.037†
Week 24	5.63 (5.22 to 5.96)†	4.40 (3.65 to 5.45)†	0.047†
Week 36	5.68 (4.50 to 6.36)†	4.59 (3.68 to 5.40)†	0.030†
Week 48	5.63 (5.21 to 5.99)†	4.42 (4.42 to 5.24)†	0.016†
HBV DNA (log IU/mL)			
Week 4	8.26 (7.63 to 8.78)	7.82 (6.29 to 8.55)	0.427
Week 12	8.26 (7.63 to 8.78)	7.82 (6.29 to 8.55)	0.427
Week 24	8.26 (7.63 to 8.78)	7.82 (6.29 to 8.55)	0.387
Week 36	8.30 (7.23 to 8.93)	7.59 (6.22 to 8.46)	0.336
Week 48	8.26 (7.63 to 8.78)	7.82 (6.29 to 8.55)	0.427
HBsAg (log IU/mL)			
Week 4	0.03 (-4.05 to 4.80)	3.13 (1.90 to 3.42)	0.642
Week 12	-3.63 (-4.20 to 4.83)	1.53 (-3.5 to 3.62)	0.581
Week 24	1.17 (-3.13 to 4.95)	3.34 (-2.16 to 4.12)	0.682
Week 36	3.31 (-0.41 to 5.03)	3.06 (-2.89 to 3.78)	0.538
Week 48	3.65 (0.82 to 5.02)	2.75 (-3.11 to 3.62)	0.336
Intrahepatic total HBV DNA (log copies/liver cell)			
Week 48	2.42 (2.16 to 3.07)	2.74 (2.01 to 3.13)	0.764
Intrahepatic cccDNA (log copies/liver cell)			
Week 48	0.65 (0.27 to 1.71)	1.06 (0.74 to 1.38)	0.494
HBV DNA integration frequency (integrants/1,000 liver cells)‡			
Week 48	1.56 (0.30 to not applicable)§	0.07 (-0.91 to 0.65)	0.381

NA, nucleos(t)ide analogues; HBeAg, hepatitis B e antigen; FHR, favourable HBsAg response; HBcrAg, hepatitis B core-related antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; pgRNA, pre-genomic RNA; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; cccDNA, covalently closed circular DNA.
*Excluded 1 patient with undetectable baseline HBV pgRNA.
†Significant variables.
‡Data available in 7 patients.
§Data available in only two patients in the FHR group.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0172

cally significant level at all treatment time points throughout for pgRNA. Importantly, pgRNA decline was significantly greater in FHR patients compared to non-FHR patients starting as early as week 4 (5.49 vs. 4.32 log copies/mL decline, *P*=0.016) (Table 2, Fig. 2A) despite a higher median HBV pgRNA level at baseline (5.63 vs. 4.43 log copies/mL, *P*=0.024) (Supplementary Table 3).

ROC analysis was performed to assess the performance characteristics of decline in serum HBV pgRNA at various time points to predict FHR at EOFU. The AUROC values were highest and identical for week 4 and week 48 decline, both being 0.825 (95% CI, 0.661–0.989, *P*<0.001) (Supplementary Table 4). For week 4 decline in serum pgRNA, adopting the Youden's index to identify the cut-off level of ≥5.32 log copies/mL reduction, the sensitivity and specificity for FHR at EOFU were 83.3% and 85%, respectively. Using the cut-off of ≥5.32 log copies/mL drop at week 4, 62.5% patients developed FHR compared to 5.6% remaining patients (*P*=0.004). For week 48 decline in serum pgRNA, using a cut-off level of >5.31 log copies/mL reduction, the sensitivity and specificity for FHR at EOFU were 83.3% and 85%, respectively. Using the cut-off of ≥5.31 log copies/mL drop at week 48, 62.5% patients developed FHR compared to 5.6% remaining patients (*P*=0.004). Time-dependent AUROC was performed on for week 4, 12, 24, 36, and 48 drop of HBV pgRNA and the results are shown in Supplementary Table 5.

Intrahepatic viral markers and FHR

The levels of intrahepatic total HBV DNA, cccDNA and the frequency of HBV DNA integration at baseline were not significantly different between FHR and non-FHR patients (Supplementary Table 3). For all HBeAg-positive patients, upon 48 weeks of NA therapy, the median level of cccDNA reduced from 1.096 to 0.005 log copies per cell (*P*<0.001), while that for intrahepatic total HBV DNA reduced from 2.648 to 0.554 log copies per cell (*P*<0.001). The frequency of HBV integration decreased from 3.96 (IQR, 0.82–NA) at week 0 to 2.40 (0.52–NA) integrants/1,000 liver cells at week 48 for FHR group (*P*=0.18), compared to 1.48 (IQR, 0.82–2.00) to 1.10 (0.52–2.49) integrants/1,000 liver cells for non-FHR group (*P*=0.31). No significant differences in the degree of decline in intrahepatic viral markers or HBV DNA integration frequency were observed between FHR and non-FHR patients (Table 2).

HBeAg-negative patients

Kinetics of viral markers during initial 48 weeks of NA therapy

At baseline, median serum HBV pgRNA was 3 log lower than HBV DNA level (3.34 log copies/mL vs. 6.20 log IU/mL,

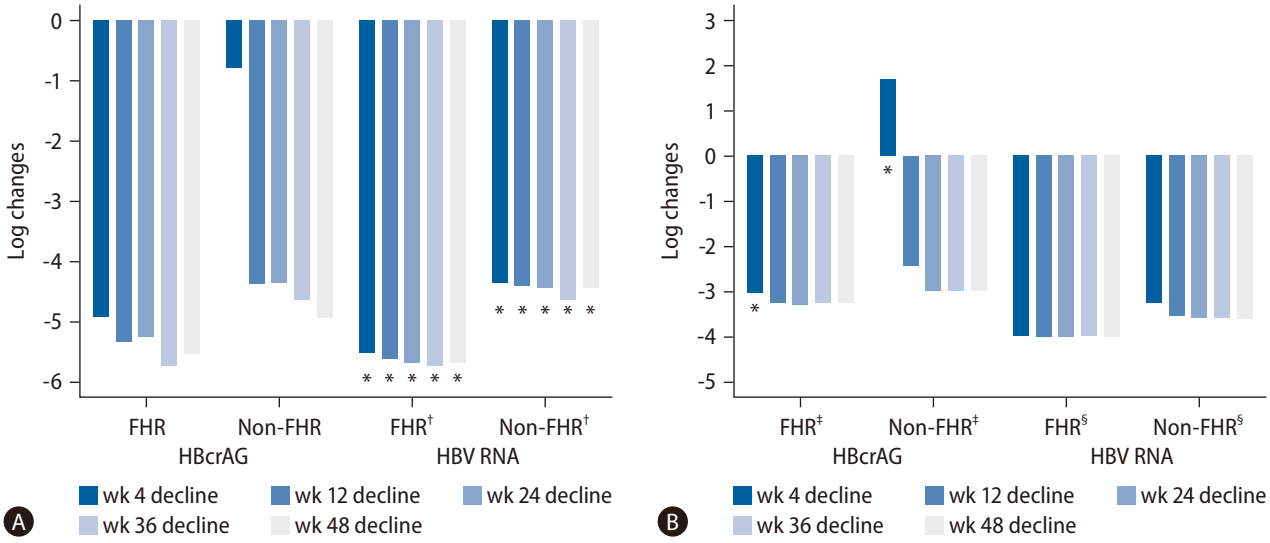


Figure 2. Median log reduction of HBcrAg and HBV pgRNA in (A) initially HBeAg-positive and (B) initially HBeAg-negative patients during initial 48 weeks of nucleos(t)ide analogues. HBcrAg, hepatitis B core-related antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; FHR, favourable hepatitis B surface antigen response; HBeAg, hepatitis B e antigen; pgRNA, pre-genomic RNA. *Denotes statistical significance between the two groups at specified time point. †Excluded 1 patient with undetecatable baseline HBV pgRNA. ‡Excluded 12 patients with undetectable baseline HBcrAg. §Excluded 5 patients with undetectable baseline HBV pgRNA.

respectively). At week 12, the median serum levels of HBV pgRNA, HBV DNA and HBcrAg were undetectable (Fig. 1B, Supplementary Table 2).

Kinetics of viral markers in FHR vs. non-FHR

Among 36 HBeAg-negative patients, 16 patients (44.4%) achieved FHR at EOFU (five achieved HBsAg seroclearance and the other 11 had HBsAg level ≤100 IU/mL). The baseline

Table 3. Median reduction in serum and intrahepatic viral markers at different time points during initial 48 weeks of NA therapy among initially HBeAg-negative patients

Viral marker	FHR	Non-FHR	*P*-value
HBcrAg (log U/mL)*			
Week 4	2.98 (2.20 to 3.55)†	-1.75 (-2.65 to 2.53)†	0.023†
Week 12	3.21 (2.68 to 3.56)	2.38 (-0.07 to 3.39)	0.120
Week 24	3.25 (2.24 to 3.56)	2.94 (1.64 to 3.43)	0.376
Week 36	3.17 (2.40 to 3.56)	2.94 (1.74 to 3.43)	0.413
Week 48	3.20 (2.63 to 3.58)	2.95 (1.93 to 3.40)	0.264
HBV pgRNA (log copies/mL)‡			
Week 4	3.93 (3.01 to 4.01)	3.21 (2.42 to 4.40)	0.594
Week 12	3.93 (3.03 to 4.02)	3.47 (2.41 to 4.42)	1.000
Week 24	3.95 (3.02 to 4.03)	3.53 (2.54 to 4.51)	0.692
Week 36	3.93 (3.01 to 4.02)	3.55 (2.58 to 4.53)	0.708
Week 48	3.93 (3.00 to 4.02)	3.55 (2.58 to 4.52)	0.679
HBV DNA (log IU/mL)			
Week 4	5.86 (5.30 to 6.37)	6.43 (5.58 to 7.79)	0.140
Week 12	5.86 (5.30 to 6.38)	6.32 (5.29 to 7.79)	0.320
Week 24	5.85 (5.23 to 6.32)	6.43 (5.59 to 7.79)	0.064
Week 36	5.85 (5.23 to 6.4)	6.43 (5.59 to 7.79)	0.169
Week 48	5.86 (5.3 to 6.38)	6.43 (5.59 to 7.79)	0.149
HBsAg (log IU/mL)			
Week 4	2.17 (-1.06 to 3.27)	2.82 (-0.44 to 3.37)	0.290
Week 12	2.52 (-0.80 to 3.06)	2.86 (-0.78 to 3.19)	0.422
Week 24	2.14 (-2.66 to 3.21)	-2.80 (-3.45 to 3.03)	0.189
Week 36	2.68 (-1.19 to 3.16)	-2.15 (-3.17 to 3.08)	0.236
Week 48	-1.89 (-3.03 to 2.70)	-2.92 (-3.47 to 2.76)	0.386
Intrahepatic total HBV DNA (log copies/liver cell)			
Week 48	1.42 (0.21 to 2.23)	1.85 (1.21 to 2.40)	0.236
Intrahepatic cccDNA (log copies/liver cell)			
Week 48	0.45 (1.04 to 0.39)	0.04 (-0.35 to 0.32)	0.479
HBV DNA integration frequency (integrants/1,000 liver cells)§			
Week 48	0.11 (-0.13 to 0.47)	0.30 (-3.01 to 3.57)	0.762

NA, nucleos(t)ide analogues; HBeAg, hepatitis B e antigen; FHR, favourable HBsAg response; HBcrAg, hepatitis B core-related antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; pgRNA, pre-genomic RNA; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; cccDNA, covalently closed circular DNA.
*Excluded 12 patients with undetectable baseline HBcrAg.
†Significant variables.
‡Excluded 5 patients with undetectable baseline HBV pgRNA.
§Data available in 10 patients.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0172

characteristics of patients and the median levels of HBcrAg, HBV pgRNA, HBV DNA and HBsAg during the initial 48 weeks of NA therapy were compared between FHR and non-FHR patients and shown in Supplementary Table 6. Patients who achieved FHR were significantly younger at baseline (41.5 vs. 46.4 years old, *P*=0.026) and had longer duration of follow-up (18.1 vs. 13.1 years, *P*=0.033) compared to non-FHR patients (Supplementary Table 6). Supplementary Figure 1C, D shows the levels of HBcrAg and HBV pgRNA at each time point.

Association between early on-treatment changes of serum viral markers and FHR

Patients with baseline undetectable serum viral biomarker (5/36 for HBV pgRNA and 12/36 for HBcrAg) were excluded from the individual biomarker analysis. Compared to non-FHR patients, FHR patients had median reduction in HBcrAg at week 4 (increment of 1.75 vs. reduction of 2.98 log U/mL; *P*=0.023) (Fig. 2B). There were no significant differences in the median log reduction for HBV pgRNA, HBV DNA and HBsAg (Table 3).

ROC analysis was performed to assess the performance characteristics of week 4 change in serum HBcrAg to predict FHR at EOFU. The AUROC is 0.789 (95% CI, 0.596–0.982; *P*=0.003). Using a cut-off level of ≥2.05 log U/mL decline, the sensitivity and specificity for FHR at EOFU were 75% and 62.5%, respectively. Using the cut-off of ≥2.05 log U/mL decline in HBcrAg at week 4, 63.6% patients developed FHR compared to 7.7% remaining patients. Binary logistic regression inputting the factors of age, duration of follow-up and week 4 HBcrAg decline showed that only week 4 HBcrAg decline of ≥2.05 log U/mL remained significantly associated with FHR at EOFU (OR, 16.919; 95% CI, 11.245–229.964; *P*=0.034).

Intrahepatic viral markers and FHR

The levels of intrahepatic total HBV DNA, cccDNA and the frequency of HBV DNA integration at baseline were not significantly different between FHR and non-FHR patients (Supplementary Table 6). For all HBeAg-negative patients, upon 48 weeks of NA therapy, the median level of cccDNA reduced from 0.041 to -0.832 log copies per cell (*P*<0.001), while that for intrahepatic total HBV DNA reduced from 1.792 to 0.114 log copies per cell (*P*<0.001). The frequency of HBV integration was 0.71 (IQR, 0.41–1.86) at week 0 and 0.70 (0.34–1.50) integrants/1,000 liver cells at week 48 for FHR group; *P*=0.46, whereas for non-FHR group the integration frequency non-significantly increased from 1.60 (IQR, 0.32–4.48) to 2.15 (0.08–4.10) integrants/1,000 liver cells; *P*=0.60. No significant differences in the degree of decline in both intrahepatic viral markers or the frequency of HBV DNA integration were observed between FHR and non-FHR patients (Table 3).

Serum HBV markers and cccDNA reduction

We analysed the decline of various serum HBV biomarkers with respect to cccDNA reduction at week 48. As it was previously reported that the magnitude of cccDNA decline after 1 year of antiviral therapy was about 1 log copy/cell,[42] we performed subgroup analysis for patients with ≥1 log copy/cell reduction (n=17) vs. <1 log copy/cell reduction (n=47) of cccDNA at 48 weeks of NA. Compared to patients with <1 log decline of cccDNA, patients with ≥1 log decline of ccDNA had significantly bigger reductions in serum HBV RNA (week 12, 24, and 48), HBcrAg (week 12, 24, 36, and 48) and HBV DNA (week 4, 12, 24, 36, and 48) (Table 4).

Composite endpoint and time-to-event analysis

A composite variable 'week 4 biomarker response' consisting of either week 4 pgRNA decline ≥5.32 log copies/mL for HBeAg+ or week 4 HBcrAg decline ≥2.05 log U/mL for HBeAg- was computed into the analysis. The result showed that 'week 4 biomarker response' was significantly associated with FHR (HR, 10.378; 95% CI, 2.312–46.589; *P*=0.002) (Fig. 3).

DISCUSSION

Functional cure is a desirable endpoint yet a rare occurrence in CHB patients on long-term NA therapy. The 'stop-to-cure' approach has been adopted to induce host immunity triggered by recurrence of HBV replication. The probability of NA cessation-induced functional cure is increased if cccDNA transcriptional activity has been silenced to some degree during treatment.[43] The end-of-treatment viral biomarkers including HBsAg and HBV pgRNA have been reported to predict post NA-cessation virological flare.[44,45] Importantly, the end-of-treatment HBsAg titre is a crucial factor that determines the fate after antiviral therapy cessation.

Table 4. Differential reductions of serum viral markers at week 48 with respect to cccDNA decline

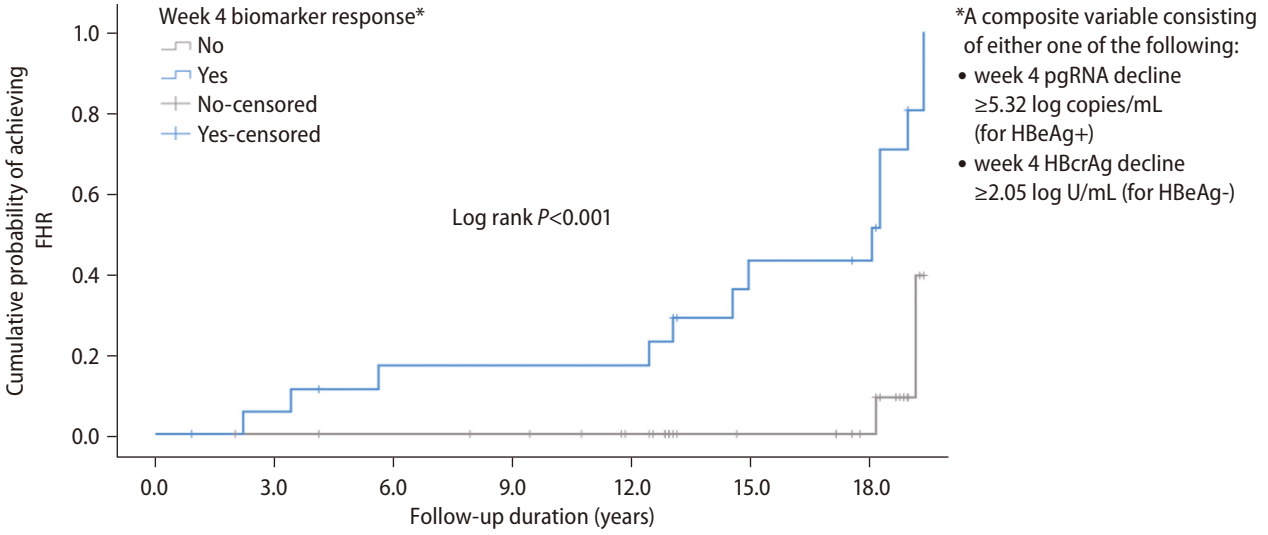
	cccDNA ≥1 log copy/cell reduction (n=17)	cccDNA <1 log copy/cell reduction (n=47)	*P*-value
RNA log decline*			
Week 4	4.39 (3.26 to 5.47)	3.93 (3.00 to 4.66)	0.189
Week 12	4.38 (3.98 to 5.43)	3.97 (1.02 to 4.63)	0.046
Week 24	4.43 (3.99 to 5.65)	3.97 (3.04 to 4.58)	0.028
Week 36	4.39 (3.92 to 5.44)	3.97 (3.05 to 4.55)	0.070
Week 48	4.43 (4.00 to 5.61)	3.97 (3.04 to 4.62)	0.036
HBcrAg log decline†			
Week 4	3.73 (-4.04 to 5.41)	-0.88 (-2.65 to 3.49)	0.246
Week 12	4.36 (3.93 to 5.44)	3.02 (1.68 to 4.14)	0.007
Week 24	4.36 (3.84 to 5.60)	3.18 (1.79 to 4.12)	0.01
Week 36	4.40 (3.59 to 5.60)	3.25 (2.39 to 4.39)	0.048
Week 48	4.80 (4.25 to 5.65)	3.40 (2.50 to 4.50)	<0.001
HBV DNA log decline			
Week 4	8.22 (7.50 to 8.59)	6.32 (5.51 to 7.87)	0.001
Week 12	8.22 (7.50 to 8.59)	6.30 (5.51 to 7.87)	0.001
Week 24	8.22 (7.50 to 8.59)	6.31 (5.51 to 7.59)	<0.001
Week 36	8.04 (7.42 to 8.59)	6.32 (5.52 to 7.73)	0.003
Week 48	8.22 (7.50 to 8.59)	6.32 (5.52 to 7.87)	0.001
HBsAg log decline			
Week 4	2.97 (-3.06 to 3.42)	2.88 (1.39 to 3.39)	0.745
Week 12	2.75 (-3.57 to 3.45)	2.50 (-2.24 to 3.30)	0.986
Week 24	3.10 (-1.84 to 4.09)	-2.12 (-3.15 to 3.44)	0.167
Week 36	3.06 (1.33 to 3.78)	2.14 (-2.87 to 3.24)	0.121
Week 48	2.75 (-3.12 to 3.42)	-2.66 (-3.15 to 3.02)	0.204

cccDNA, covalently closed circular DNA; HBcrAg, hepatitis B core-related antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen.
*Excluded 5 patients with baseline undetectable HBV RNA.
†Excluded 12 patients with baseline undetectable HBcrAg.

In this study, we studied the early on-treatment viral markers in a group of CHB patients who were started on NA with long-term follow-up. We found that among those who achieved HBsAg seroclearance or low HBsAg (≤100 IU/mL) after on NA >10 years, the early on-treatment changes in serum viral biomarkers were significantly different compared to those who did not achieve a low HBsAg level. Specifically, for HBeAg-positive patients, all viral biomarkers (except HBsAg) showed the same trend (albeit statistically insignificant for HBV DNA and HBcrAg) that a bigger decline in the individual biomarkers were observed in FHR patients compared to non-FHR. Importantly, serum HBV pgRNA was the most useful in detecting early on-treatment differences – a high statistical power was observed despite a limited number of patients were included. For HBeAg-negative patients, both serum HBcrAg and HBV pgRNA showed similar pattern that a bigger decline in the individual biomarkers were observed in FHR patients compared to non-FHR. Due to the fact that a sizable proportion of HBeAg-negative patients had undetectable HBcrAg (12/36, 33.3%) or HBV pgRNA (5/36, 13.9%) at baseline, the statistical power of these serum biomarkers was further reduced. Nevertheless, this is the first study to describe the role of early on-treatment viral markers in prediction of favourable HBsAg suppression in NA-treated CHB patients.

In HBeAg-negative patients, we noted that those who

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0172



Week 4 biomarker response	Number at risk (cumulative number of events)							Total number of events	Hazard ratio
	Year 0	Year 3	Year 6	Year 9	Year 12	Year 15	Year 18		
No	31 (0)	30 (0)	29 (0)	28 (0)	24 (0)	15 (0)	11 (1)	2	1 (reference)
Yes	19 (0)	17 (1)	14 (3)	14 (3)	14 (3)	8 (7)	7 (8)	12	10.378 (95% CI 2.312-46.589)

Figure 3. Kaplan-Meier analysis and Cox regression comparing patients who achieved the composite endpoint (defined as either week 4 pgRNA decline ≥5.32 log copies/mL for HBeAg-positive patients, or week 4 HBcrAg decline ≥2.05 log U/mL for HBeAg-negative patients) during early phase of nucleos(t)ide analogues. FHR, favourable hepatitis B surface antigen response; pgRNA, pre-genomic RNA; HBeAg, hepatitis B e antigen; HBcrAg, hepatitis B core-related antigen; CI, confidence interval.

achieved FHR were significantly younger at baseline and had longer duration of follow-up compared to patients who did not achieve FHR. It is unknown whether initiating NA at an earlier age is associated with higher chance of HBsAg seroclearance. Also, extension of follow-up duration would potentially identify more cases with HBsAg seroclearance. We additionally performed multivariate analysis which showed that the week 4 decline in HBcrAg was the only significant factor associated with FHR among HBeAg-negative patients (Supplementary Table 7).

Among the four serum biomarkers, HBsAg levels were the least suppressed by NA (Table 2, Supplementary Table 2). Because HBsAg is not a direct target of NAs and that it can be expressed from integrated HBV DNA,[46] the decline of HBsAg by NAs is often very small.[14,47] Therefore, HBsAg remained relatively static (3–4 logs for HBeAg-positive and 2–3 logs for HBeAg-negative patients) during the initial 48 weeks of NA therapy in contrast to the substantial reduction in serum HBV DNA (direct target of NA), HBcrAg and HBV pgRNA (both are surrogate markers of cccDNA transcriptional activity). Also, while the differential reductions of other three markers (HBV pgRNA, HBcrAg and HBV DNA) were reflective of whether cccDNA was suppressed effectively, HBsAg levels did not show similar trends (Table 4). Therefore, early on-treatment HBsAg kinetics could not predict subsequent levels upon long-term NA nor the degree of cccDNA suppression.

Intrahepatic viral markers were significantly suppressed upon initial 48 weeks of NA therapy and was consistent with other reports in the literature.[33,48] In contrast to serum biomarkers, the dynamics of intrahepatic total HBV DNA or cccDNA during initial 48 weeks of NA were not predictive of FHR. It was previously reported that most patients develop virological rebound despite undetectable cccDNA after >10 years of NA.[49] It is tempting to speculate that what matters most is the degree of cccDNA silencing, instead of the absolute amount of viral template that is still present, that determines the ultimate fate of whether NA can be used in a finite manner. In turn, the degree of cccDNA silencing can be re-

flected by the magnitude of reduction of serum viral biomarkers, namely HBcrAg or HBV pgRNA, during the course of NA. The fact that the rapid reduction of these biomarkers as early as week 4 might indicate a high degree of cccDNA silencing which was clinically translated into a long term favourable HBsAg response to NA (Fig. 4). Achieving HBsAg ≤100 IU/mL is the pre-requisite for consideration of stopping NA and is expected to have favourable rate of subsequent HBsAg seroclearance. However, our study cannot address whether early biomarker response can help to predict successful off-NA virological control. We propose that for subjects without week 4 biomarker response—indicating a low chance of achieving functional cure or a low HBsAg titre by long-term NA alone—NA should be continued and they should be prioritized for clinical trials with novel anti-HBV therapies within the HBV functional cure program (Fig. 4).[50] Currently, many trials that are designed for NA-treated CHB patients would like to consider qHBsAg and/or HBV DNA as the inclusion criteria,[51-53] while the role of other biomarkers is seldom explored. Early on-NA biomarker response will help to identify patients potentially eligible for clinical trials who would otherwise be embarked on indefinite duration of NA therapy. Of note, a high frequency of HBV DNA integration events at baseline was observed in both HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative patients. FHR was found to be independent of the degree of HBV DNA integration at baseline. Our group previously reported that HBV DNA integration frequency significantly decreased after long-term NA >10 years.[54] It will be worth investigating whether the reduction in HBV DNA integration is associated with FHR after long-term NA therapy.

In the six patients with baseline undetectable HBV pgRNA, four had undetectable HBcrAg, while the HBcrAg levels were 3.07 and 5.63 log U/mL for the remaining two patients. The serum HBV DNA was 2.82, 5.23, 5.85, 6.46, 7.99, and 8.32 log IU/mL for these six patients (Supplementary Table 1). This RNA-DNA dissociation was mainly observed in HBeAg-negative patients. The use of serum viral biomarkers especially HBV pgRNA to predict FHR would therefore be more useful

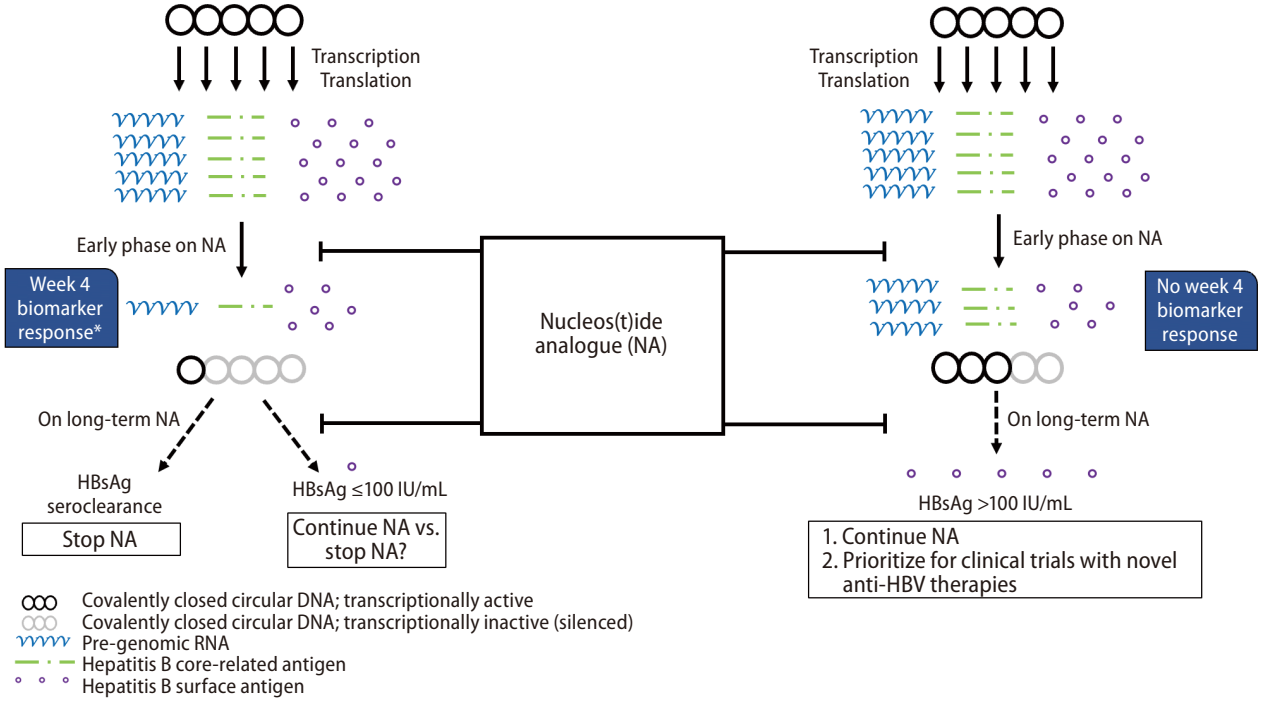


Figure 4. Schematic diagram illustrating the relationship between NA-induced cccDNA silencing and long-term effects on HBsAg suppression. During early phase of NA therapy, HBsAg levels remain relatively static despite marked reduction in transcriptional activity as reflected by early biomarker response (i.e., week 4 HBV pgRNA and HBcrAg). The long-term effects of NA on HBsAg production can potentially be predicted using early changes in serum viral biomarkers. HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; cccDNA, covalently closed circular DNA; pgRNA, pre-genomic RNA; HBcrAg, hepatitis B core-related antigen. *Week 4 biomarker response: a composite variable consisting of either one of the following: 1) week 4 pgRNA decline ≥5.32 log copies/mL (for HBeAg+) and 2) week 4 HBcrAg decline ≥2.05 log U/mL (for HBeAg-).

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0172

in HBeAg-positive patients. Assays with higher sensitivity, i.e., lower limits of detection are likely helpful to quantify the serum viral biomarkers in HBeAg-negative patients. There are a few potential reasons for the observed difference in roles for HBV pgRNA and HBcrAg in predicting FHR in HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative patients, respectively. Firstly, because HBeAg is part of the HBcrAg protein, HBeAg expression might have outnumbered HBcrAg expression in the blood for HBeAg-positive patients. Secondly, although both HBV pgRNA and HBcrAg come from cccDNA, their mechanisms of production are slightly different. The production of HBV pgRNA reflects the transcriptional activity, while the production of HBcrAg is affected by both transcription and post-transcriptional (e.g., translational) regulation. Although it is just a speculation, it is possible that different translation efficiencies of HBcrAg exist between HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative patients. Thirdly, the small sample size of this study might have masked any true predictive power of either biomarker in patients with different HBeAg status.

The present study has a few limitations. First, we did not have serial blood stored after 48 weeks of NA to study the longitudinal changes of viral biomarkers. Data from previous reports (NA up to 5 years) showed that HBcrAg and HBV pgRNA will continue to decline with increasing duration of therapy.[19,45] Second, the limit in the amount of available liver tissues precluded the measurement of intrahepatic HBV pgRNA levels, which would have provided a more comprehensive picture of the impact of NAs on intrahepatic HBV replication. Third, this study is limited to only patients with HBV genotypes B and C and is limited by a small number of patients with available serum and liver biopsies. Besides, the statistical comparisons were limited to non-parametric tests between FHR and non-FHR groups due to multi-collinearity of the biomarkers at different time points. Theoretically, a one-off measurement (instead of multiple timepoints) of biomarker in the early phase of NA might be sufficient to compare the change from baseline and decide if a patient would likely achieve FHR or not in the long run. Therefore, these findings need to be validated by future studies with larger sample size. Lastly, the present study employed only an IA for serum HBV pgRNA measurement, as a standardized serum HBV pgRNA assay is not available at present. Although there is lack of data concerning the stability of serum samples for HBV pgRNA analysis upon long-term storage, previous studies have demonstrated feasibility of this approach,[19,36] which is further supported by the overall pattern of pgRNA mirroring that of serum HBV DNA in the current study (Fig. 1). Future studies addressing these technical issues would be helpful to improve utilization of pgRNA assays.

In conclusion, this study demonstrated that early on-treatment viral biomarkers (HBV pgRNA or HBcrAg) can potentially predict low/ undetectable HBsAg after long-term NA therapy. Patients without early biomarker response likely need indefinite duration of NA therapy, therefore should be prioritized for enrolment into clinical trials.

Authors' contribution

LYM and DW were responsible for data collection, data analysis and drafting of the manuscript. AK, MH, AH, NC and XM were responsible for data analysis, data interpretation, and critical revision of the article. WKS and MFY were responsible for conception of the work and critical approval of the article.

Acknowledgements

This study was supported by the General Research Fund, Research Grants Council, The Government of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region (ref no: 17108921). HBV pgRNA and HBcrAg measurements are provided by Roche Molecular Systems, Inc. and Fujirebio, Inc., respectively.

Conflicts of Interest

D Wong received speaker's fees from Abbott Laboratories. A Kuchta and A Hamilton are employees of Roche Molecular Diagnostics. M Hilfiker is an employee of Roche Diagnostics Int. AG. WK Seto received speaker's fees from AstraZeneca and Mylan, is an advisory board member of CSL Behring, is an advisory board member and received speaker's fees from AbbVie, and is an advisory board member, received speaker's fees and researching funding from Gilead Sciences. MF Yuen serves as advisor/consultant for AbbVie, Assembly Biosciences, Aligos Therapeutics, Arbutus Biopharma, Bristol Myer Squibb, Clear B Therapeutics, Dicerna Pharmaceuticals, Finch Therapeutics, GlaxoSmithKline, Gilead Sciences, Immunocore, Janssen, Merck Sharp and Dohme, Hoffmann-La Roche and Springbank Pharmaceuticals, Vir Biotechnology and receives grant/research support from Assembly Biosciences, Aligos Therapeutics, Arrowhead Pharmaceuticals, Bristol Myer Squibb, Fujirebio Incorporation, Gilead Sciences,

Immunocore, Merck Sharp and Dohme, Hoffmann-La Roche, Springbank Pharmaceuticals and Sysmex Corporation. The remaining authors have no conflict of interests.

SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

Supplementary material is available at Clinical and Molecular Hepatology website (http://www.e-cmh.org).

REFERENCES

1. The Polaris Observatory Collaborators. Global prevalence, treatment, and prevention of hepatitis B virus infection in 2016: a modelling study. Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol 2018;3:383-403.
2. European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL 2017 clinical practice guidelines on the management of hepatitis B virus infection. J Hepatol 2017;67:370-398.
3. Terrault NA, Lok ASF, McMahon BJ, Chang KM, Hwang JP, Jonas MM, et al. Update on prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of chronic hepatitis B: AASLD 2018 hepatitis B guidance. Hepatology 2018;67:1560-1599.
4. Lin SM, Sheen IS, Chien RN, Chu CM, Liaw YF. Long-term beneficial effect of interferon therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Hepatology 1999;29:971-975.
5. Seto WK, Lau EH, Wu JT, Hung IF, Leung WK, Cheung KS, et al. Effects of nucleoside analogue prescription for hepatitis B on the incidence of liver cancer in Hong Kong: a territory-wide ecological study. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2017;45:501-509.
6. Thiele M, Gluud LL, Dahl EK, Krag A. Antiviral therapy for prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma and mortality in chronic hepatitis B: systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ Open 2013;3:e003265.
7. Hara T, Suzuki F, Kawamura Y, Sezaki H, Hosaka T, Akuta N, et al. Long-term entecavir therapy results in falls in serum hepatitis B surface antigen levels and seroclearance in nucleos(t)ide-naive chronic hepatitis B patients. J Viral Hepat 2014;21:802-808.
8. Ko KL, To WP, Mak LY, Seto WK, Ning Q, Fung J, et al. A large real-world cohort study examining the effects of long-term entecavir on hepatocellular carcinoma and HBsAg seroclearance. J Viral Hepat 2020;27:397-406.
9. Buti M, Tsai N, Petersen J, Flisiak R, Gurel S, Krastev Z, et al. Seven-year efficacy and safety of treatment with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Dig Dis Sci 2015;60:1457-1464.
10. Chan HL, Wong GL, Tse CH, Chan HY, Wong VW. Viral determinants of hepatitis B surface antigen seroclearance in hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B patients. J Infect Dis 2011;204:408-414.
11. Tseng TC, Liu CJ, Yang HC, Su TH, Wang CC, Chen CL, et al. Determinants of spontaneous surface antigen loss in hepatitis B e antigen-negative patients with a low viral load. Hepatology 2012;55:68-76.
12. Liu J, Lee MH, Batrla-Utermann R, Jen CL, Iloeje UH, Lu SN, et al. A predictive scoring system for the seroclearance of HBsAg in HBeAg-seronegative chronic hepatitis B patients with genotype B or C infection. J Hepatol 2013;58:853-860.
13. Tseng TC, Liu CJ, Su TH, Wang CC, Chen CL, Chen PJ, et al. Serum hepatitis B surface antigen levels predict surface antigen loss in hepatitis B e antigen seroconverters. Gastroenterology 2011;141:517-525, 525.e1-e2.
14. Lam YF, Seto WK, Wong D, Cheung KS, Fung J, Mak LY, et al. Seven-year treatment outcome of entecavir in a real-world cohort: effects on clinical parameters, HBsAg and HBcrAg levels. Clin Transl Gastroenterol 2017;8:e125.
15. Kimura T, Rokuhara A, Sakamoto Y, Yagi S, Tanaka E, Kiyosawa K, et al. Sensitive enzyme immunoassay for hepatitis B virus core-related antigens and their correlation to virus load. J Clin Microbiol 2002;40:439-445.
16. Mak LY, Wong DK, Cheung KS, Seto WK, Lai CL, Yuen MF. Review article: hepatitis B core-related antigen (HBcrAg): an emerging marker for chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2018;47:43-54.
17. Wong DK, Tanaka Y, Lai CL, Mizokami M, Fung J, Yuen MF. Hepatitis B virus core-related antigens as markers for monitoring chronic hepatitis B infection. J Clin Microbiol 2007;45:3942-3947.
18. Wong DK, Seto WK, Cheung KS, Chong CK, Huang FY, Fung J, et al. Hepatitis B virus core-related antigen as a surrogate marker for covalently closed circular DNA. Liver Int 2017;37:995-1001.
19. Mak LY, Cloherty G, Wong DK, Gersch J, Seto WK, Fung J, et al. HBV RNA profiles in patients with chronic hepatitis B under different disease phases and antiviral therapy. Hepatology 2021;73:2167-2179.
20. Mak LY, Wong DK, Cheung KS, Seto WK, Fung J, Yuen MF. First-line oral antiviral therapies showed similar efficacies in suppression of serum HBcrAg in chronic hepatitis B patients. BMC Gastroenterol 2021;21:123.
21. Liu S, Zhou B, Valdes JD, Sun J, Guo H. Serum hepatitis B virus

RNA: a new potential biomarker for chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Hepatology 2019;69:1816-1827.
22. Giersch K, Allweiss L, Volz T, Dandri M, Lutgehetmann M. Serum HBV pgRNA as a clinical marker for cccDNA activity. J Hepatol 2017;66:460-462.
23. Jansen L, Kootstra NA, van Dort KA, Takkenberg RB, Reesink HW, Zaaijer HL. Hepatitis B virus pregenomic RNA is present in virions in plasma and is associated with a response to pegylated interferon alfa-2a and nucleos(t)ide analogues. J Infect Dis 2016;213:224-232.
24. Wang J, Shen T, Huang X, Kumar GR, Chen X, Zeng Z, et al. Serum hepatitis B virus RNA is encapsidated pregenome RNA that may be associated with persistence of viral infection and rebound. J Hepatol 2016;65:700-710.
25. van Bommel F, Bartens A, Mysickova A, Hofmann J, Kruger DH, Berg T, et al. Serum hepatitis B virus RNA levels as an early predictor of hepatitis B envelope antigen seroconversion during treatment with polymerase inhibitors. Hepatology 2015;61:66-76.
26. Wang J, Yu Y, Li G, Shen C, Meng Z, Zheng J, et al. Relationship between serum HBV-RNA levels and intrahepatic viral as well as histologic activity markers in entecavir-treated patients. J Hepatol 2018;68:16-24.
27. Huang H, Wang J, Li W, Chen R, Chen X, Zhang F, et al. Serum HBV DNA plus RNA shows superiority in reflecting the activity of intrahepatic cccDNA in treatment-naive HBV-infected individuals. J Clin Virol 2018;99-100:71-78.
28. Wang J, Yu Y, Li G, Shen C, Li J, Chen S, et al. Natural history of serum HBV-RNA in chronic HBV infection. J Viral Hepat 2018;25:1038-1047.
29. Liu Y, Jiang M, Xue J, Yan H, Liang X. Serum HBV RNA quantification: useful for monitoring natural history of chronic hepatitis B infection. BMC Gastroenterol 2019;19:53.
30. Lai CL, Shouval D, Lok AS, Chang TT, Cheinquer H, Goodman Z, et al. Entecavir versus lamivudine for patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med 2006;354:1011-1020.
31. Chang TT, Gish RG, de Man R, Gadano A, Sollano J, Chao YC, et al. A comparison of entecavir and lamivudine for HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med 2006;354:1001-1010.
32. Lai CL, Gane E, Liaw YF, Hsu CW, Thongsawat S, Wang Y, et al. Telbivudine versus lamivudine in patients with chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med 2007;357:2576-2588.
33. Wong DK, Seto WK, Fung J, Ip P, Huang FY, Lai CL, et al. Reduction of hepatitis B surface antigen and covalently closed circular DNA by nucleos(t)ide analogues of different potency. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2013;11:1004-1010.e1.
34. Seto WK, Wong DK, Fung J, Huang FY, Liu KS, Lai CL, et al. Linearized hepatitis B surface antigen and hepatitis B core-related antigen in the natural history of chronic hepatitis B. Clin Microbiol Infect 2014;20:1173-1180.
35. Seto WK, Wong DK, Chan TS, Hwang YY, Fung J, Liu KS, et al. Association of hepatitis B core-related antigen with hepatitis B virus reactivation in occult viral carriers undergoing high-risk immunosuppressive therapy. Am J Gastroenterol 2016;111:1788-1795.
36. Scholtes C, Hamilton A, Scott B, Wang L, Plissonnier ML, Berby F, et al. Performance of a novel automated assay for the detection and quantification of HBV pregenomic RNA / circulating RNAs in chronic HBV patients. The Liver Meeting Digital Experience web site, <https://www.cirb-rna.fr/media/poster-0737-aalsd-final.pdf>. Accessed 13 Nov 2020.
37. Scholtes C, Hamilton AT, Plissonnier ML, Charre C, Scott B, Wang L, et al. Performance of the cobas(R) HBV RNA automated investigational assay for the detection and quantification of circulating HBV RNA in chronic HBV patients. J Clin Virol 2022;150-151:105150.
38. Yuen MF, Lee CK, Wong DK, Fung J, Hung I, Hsu A, et al. Prevalence of occult hepatitis B infection in a highly endemic area for chronic hepatitis B: a study of a large blood donor population. Gut 2010;59:1389-1393.
39. Mason WS, Gill US, Litwin S, Zhou Y, Peri S, Pop O, et al. HBV DNA integration and clonal hepatocyte expansion in chronic hepatitis B patients considered immune tolerant. Gastroenterology 2016;151:986-998.e4.
40. Tu T, Jilbert AR. Detection of hepatocyte clones containing integrated hepatitis B virus DNA using inverse nested PCR. In: Guo H, Cuconati A, eds. Hepatitis B Virus. Methods in Molecular Biology. Vol 1540. New York, NY: Humana Press, 2017:97-118.
41. Maasoumy B, Wiegand SB, Jaroszewicz J, Bremer B, Lehmann P, Deterding K, et al. Hepatitis B core-related antigen (HBcrAg) levels in the natural history of hepatitis B virus infection in a large European cohort predominantly infected with genotypes A and D. Clin Microbiol Infect 2015;21:606.e1-e10.
42. Wong DK, Yuen MF, Ngai VW, Fung J, Lai CL. One-year entecavir or lamivudine therapy results in reduction of hepatitis B virus intrahepatic covalently closed circular DNA levels. Antivir Ther 2006;11:909-916.
43. Berg T, Lampertico P. The times they are a-changing - a refined proposal for finite HBV nucleos(t)ide analogue therapy. J Hepatol 2021;75:474-480.

44. Seto WK, Liu KS, Mak LY, Cloherty G, Wong DK, Gersch J, et al. Role of serum HBV RNA and hepatitis B surface antigen levels in identifying Asian patients with chronic hepatitis B suitable for entecavir cessation. Gut 2021;70:775-783.
45. Carey I, Gersch J, Wang B, Moigboi C, Kuhns M, Cloherty G, et al. Pregenomic HBV RNA and hepatitis B core-related antigen predict outcomes in hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B patients suppressed on nucleos(T)ide analogue therapy. Hepatology 2020;72:42-57.
46. Wooddell CI, Yuen MF, Chan HL, Gish RG, Locarnini SA, Chavez D, et al. RNAi-based treatment of chronically infected patients and chimpanzees reveals that integrated hepatitis B virus DNA is a source of HBsAg. Sci Transl Med 2017;9:eaan0241.
47. Fung J, Lai CL, Young J, Wong DK, Yuen J, Seto WK, et al. Quantitative hepatitis B surface antigen levels in patients with chronic hepatitis B after 2 years of entecavir treatment. Am J Gastroenterol 2011;106:1766-1773.
48. Lai CL, Wong D, Ip P, Kopaniszen M, Seto WK, Fung J, et al. Reduction of covalently closed circular DNA with long-term nucleos(t)ide analogue treatment in chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol 2017;66:275-281.
49. Lai CL, Wong DK, Wong GT, Seto WK, Fung J, Yuen MF. Rebound of HBV DNA after cessation of nucleos/tide analogues in chronic hepatitis B patients with undetectable covalently closed. JHEP Rep 2020;2:100112.
50. Cornberg M, Lok AS, Terrault NA, Zoulim F; 2019 EASL-AASLD HBV Treatment Endpoints Conference Faculty. Guidance for design and endpoints of clinical trials in chronic hepatitis B - report from the 2019 EASL-AASLD HBV Treatment Endpoints Conference. Hepatology 2020;71:1070-1092.
51. Gane E, Yuen MF, Kim DJ, Chan HL, Surujbally B, Pavlovic V, et al. Clinical study of single-stranded oligonucleotide RO7062931 in healthy volunteers and patients with chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2021;74:1795-1808.
52. Yuen MF, Heo J, Jang JW, Yoon JH, Kweon YO, Park SJ, et al. Safety, tolerability and antiviral activity of the antisense oligonucleotide bepirovirsen in patients with chronic hepatitis B: a phase 2 randomized controlled trial. Nat Med 2021;27:1725-1734.
53. Ma H, Lim TH, Leerapun A, Weltman M, Jia J, Lim YS, et al. Therapeutic vaccine BRII-179 restores HBV-specific immune responses in patients with chronic HBV in a phase Ib/IIa study. JHEP Rep 2021;3:100361.
54. Chow N, Wong D, Lai CL, Mak LY, Fung J, Ma HT, et al. Effect of antiviral treatment on hepatitis B virus integration and hepatocyte clonal expansion. Clin Infect Dis. 2022 May 20. doi: 10.1093/cid/ciac383.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0326
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:163-164

Letter to the Editor

Letter regarding "Auranofin attenuates hepatic steatosis and fibrosis in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease via NRF2 and NF-κB signaling pathways"

Yuanbin Liu and Mingkai Chen

Department of Gastroenterology, Renmin Hospital of Wuhan University, Wuhan, China

Keywords: Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; Auranofin

Dear Editor,

We read with great interest the recently published article by Lee and colleagues,[1] which demonstrated that auranofin, a gold compound, can inhibit the progression of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) in both *in vivo* and *in vitro* models. This study revealed that auranofin reduced fibrosis and the expression of nuclear factor kappa B (NF-κB) and inhibitor of NF-κB alpha in LX-2 cells; while in HepG2 cells, auranofin increased nuclear erythroid 2-related factor 2 expression and significantly reduced inflammation and adipogenesis.[1] Furthermore, auranofin has also been shown to impede disease progression in fibrosis and NASH models.[1] This study is of great importance as there is currently no effective pharmacological treatment for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), and auranofin may have potential for repurposing in NAFLD as an agent historically used in rheumatoid arthritis. However, as a reintroduced compound that may have beneficial effects in NAFLD, we would like to provide additional insights regarding the role of auranofin in NAFLD.

Hepatic inflammatory infiltration is a significant feature in NAFLD. Hwangbo et al.[2] suggested that auranofin could reduce the expression of inflammatory markers, including the NOD-like receptor family pyrin domain containing 3, in NAFLD and inhibit hepatic steatosis in both *in vivo* and *in vitro* models. These results confirmed that auranofin also has anti-inflammatory properties in NAFLD. A recent study combining *in silico* screen, *in vivo* and *in vitro* models demonstrated the antidiabetic effects of auranofin at the 1 mg/kg dose in obese mice fed with high-fat diet.[3] Auranofin was proved to accumulate in the white adipose tissue of obese mice, improve insulin sensitivity, exert anti-inflammatory effects, and abolish fatty liver disease.[3] Notably, auranofin reduced serum leptin levels, and intact leptin signaling was required for auranofin to exhibit insulin sensitizing effects.[3] The presence of hyperleptinemia and leptin resistance in obese patients suggest that partial reduction of leptin by auranofin may be used as a strategy against obesity and NAFLD. The interferon regulatory factor 3 (IRF3) signaling pathway promotes hepatocyte inflammation and apoptosis in NAFLD.[4] Auranofin inhibited fatty acid-induced hepatocyte apoptosis in an *in vitro* model by inducing cellular autophagy and thereby degrading IRF3.[5]

Auranofin is also known as a pan-inhibitor of thioredoxin

Corresponding author : **Mingkai Chen**
Department of Gastroenterology, Renmin Hospital of Wuhan University, No. 99 Zhang Zhidong Road, Wuhan, Hubei 430060, China
Tel: +86-13720330580, Fax: +86-27-88042292, E-mail: chenmingkai@whu.edu.cn
https://orcid.org/0000-0001-6771-0523

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Oct. 21, 2022 / **Received :** Oct. 24, 2022 / **Accepted :** Oct. 25, 2022

reductase (TrxR).[6] By inhibiting TrxR, auranofin induced apoptosis in hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) cells and inhibited tumor growth, together with improved resistance to sorafenib.[7] Ferroptosis is a recently proposed iron-dependent form of cell death characterized by lipid peroxidation and accumulation of reactive oxygen species.[8] High-dose auranofin has been shown to induce ferroptosis by inhibiting TrxR.[6] The role of ferroptosis in NAFLD has been recently studied, and the effects are varied at different stages. Ferroptosis promotes the progression of hepatic steatosis, NASH, and associated fibrosis, while inhibiting the development of cirrhosis and HCC.[9] Auranofin and buthionine sulfoxime co-treatment induced ferroptosis in HCC cell lines.[10] These findings indicate that auranofin could inhibit cell proliferation by regulating cell death in HCC. However, there has been no relevant study suggesting the effects of TrxR inhibition by auranofin in hepatic steatosis and NASH progression. Furthermore, given that ferroptosis may have opposite effects on different stages of NAFLD, future studies are needed to explore the effect of auranofin on ferroptosis in NASH. Whether there is an optimal time point for modulating ferroptosis still requires further exploration, as NASH will eventually progress to HCC.

Overall, the present study demonstrated that auranofin can inhibit NASH progression under experimental conditions, suggesting that it could be a promising repurposed anti-NAFLD agent. Further research is warranted to reveal the mechanisms of auranofin in NAFLD and develop the potential for clinical translation.

Authors' contribution

Liu YB and Chen MK proposed the idea for the article; Liu YB carried out the literature search, wrote the manuscript, and prepared the language refinement; Chen MK revised the manuscript as the corresponding author and provided comments; and all authors have read and approved the final manuscript.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Lee SM, Koh DH, Jun DW, Roh YJ, Kang HT, Oh JH, et al. Auranofin attenuates hepatic steatosis and fibrosis in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease via NRF2 and NF-κB signaling pathways. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:827-840.
2. Hwangbo H, Kim MY, Ji SY, Kim SY, Lee H, Kim GY, et al. Auranofin attenuates non-alcoholic fatty liver disease by suppressing lipid accumulation and NLRP3 inflammasome-mediated hepatic inflammation in vivo and in vitro. Antioxidants (Basel) 2020;9:1040.
3. Cox AR, Masschelin PM, Saha PK, Felix JB, Sharp R, Lian Z, et al. The rheumatoid arthritis drug auranofin lowers leptin levels and exerts antidiabetic effects in obese mice. Cell Metab 2022;34:1932-1946.e7.
4. Qiao JT, Cui C, Qing L, Wang LS, He TY, Yan F, et al. Activation of the STING-IRF3 pathway promotes hepatocyte inflammation, apoptosis and induces metabolic disorders in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Metabolism 2018;81:13-24.
5. Glanz A, Chakravarty S, Fan S, Chawla K, Subramanian G, Rahman T, et al. Autophagic degradation of IRF3 induced by the small-molecule auranofin inhibits its transcriptional and pro-apoptotic activities. J Biol Chem 2021;297:101274.
6. Yang L, Wang H, Yang X, Wu Q, An P, Jin X, et al. Auranofin mitigates systemic iron overload and induces ferroptosis via distinct mechanisms. Signal Transduct Target Ther 2020;5:138.
7. Lee D, Xu IMJ, Chiu DKC, Leibold J, Tse APW, Bao MHR, et al. Induction of oxidative stress through inhibition of thioredoxin reductase 1 is an effective therapeutic approach for hepatocellular carcinoma. Hepatology 2019;69:1768-1786.
8. Wang S, Liu Z, Geng J, Li L, Feng X. An overview of ferroptosis in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Biomed Pharmacother 2022;153:113374.
9. Chen J, Li X, Ge C, Min J, Wang F. The multifaceted role of ferroptosis in liver disease. Cell Death Differ 2022;29:467-480.
10. Lippmann J, Petri K, Fulda S, Liese J. Redox modulation and induction of ferroptosis as a new therapeutic strategy in hepatocellular carcinoma. Transl Oncol 2020;13:100785.

Abbreviations:

HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; IRF3, interferon regulatory factor 3; NAFLD, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; NASH, nonalcoholic steatohepatitis; NF-κB, nuclear factor kappa B; TrxR, thioredoxin reductase

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0326

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0339
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:165-167

Letter to the Editor

Letter regarding "Impacts of muscle mass dynamics on prognosis of outpatients with cirrhosis"

Do Seon Song, U Im Chang, and Jin Mo Yang

Department of Internal Medicine, St. Vincent's Hospital, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, Suwon, Korea

Keywords: Sarcopenia; Cirrhosis; Prognosis

Dear Editor,

Sarcopenia refers to progressive decline in skeletal muscle, function, and strength with advancing age.[1] Sarcopenia is also highly prevalent in patients with cirrhosis,[2,3] and the development of sarcopenia in cirrhosis is considered to be associated with systemic inflammation.[4,5] In addition, sarcopenia has been reported to be associated with adverse clinical outcomes, such as cirrhotic complications, waitlist mortality, and post-transplantation mortality.[3,6,7] For these reasons, the importance of assessment of sarcopenia in patients with cirrhosis is being emphasized.[8-10] However, there are few studies on the association between changes in sarcopenia and the prognosis of cirrhosis. Thus, we read with great interest the article of Kim et al.,[11] which described that the change in muscle mass was a good predictor of the development of cirrhotic complications independent of liver function. However, it is still necessary to consider some of the issues that were not mentioned by Kim et al.[11]

Firstly, sarcopenia has sex-specific differences. Sex-specific cutoff values are used to define sarcopenia,[8] and the prevalence of sarcopenia is higher in male patients than in female patients with cirrhosis.[3] In addition, some studies have reported that the impact of sarcopenia on clinical outcomes could differ between male and female.[2,12] The sex-specific differences of sarcopenia might be caused by sex hormones, such as testosterone.[13] The rate of muscle mass reduction and the impacts of muscle mass reduction on the prognosis could vary by gender. Kim et al.[11] described that male patients had higher prevalence of sarcopenia compared to female patients, and the changes in muscle mass significantly predicted the development of complication of cirrhosis in both sex groups. However, it should be considered that change in muscle mass may not be an independent prognostic factor after adjusting Child-Pugh and Model for End-stage Liver Disease scores, if stratified by sex.

Secondly, the lifestyle of cirrhotic patients should be considered. In the study of Kim et al.,[11] alcohol-related liver disease accounted for 21.0% of all patients, and was the second most common etiology. In addition, alcohol-related liver disease was an independent risk factor for the development of complication. However, there was no description of alcohol use after enrollment. With regard to alcohol-related liver disease, hepatic dysfunction may cause sarcopenia, and alcohol

Corresponding author : **Jin Mo Yang**
Department of Internal Medicine, St. Vincent's Hospital, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, 93 Jungbu-daero, Paldal-gu, Suwon 16247, Korea
Tel: +82-31-881-8650, Fax: +82-31-254-8898, E-mail: jmyangdr@catholic.ac.kr
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-8339-4716

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Oct. 26, 2022 / **Accepted :** Oct. 26, 2022

can also cause sarcopenia directly or by its metabolites.[14] Ongoing alcohol use after enrollment might be directly associated with the development of cirrhotic complications. The other lifestyle factors to consider are nutrition and physical activity. Malnutrition is frequently observed in patients with cirrhosis by multifactorial etiologies, such as inadequate dietary intake, ascites, gastroparesis, hormonal change, and altered metabolism.[15] In addition, reduced exercise capacity and impaired physical performance are commonly observed in patients with cirrhosis.[16] Physical inactivity might lead to sarcopenia in cirrhotic patients, as physical activity and exercise are anabolic stimuli that can improve the muscle protein balance, reducing the protein loss and increasing the muscle mass and contractile function.[16] Therefore, it is necessary to consider factors such as alcohol abuse, diets, and physical activity of enrolled patients during the follow-up period.

Thirdly, the quality of muscle is important, as well as muscle mass. Muscle quality is associated with myosteatosis, which refers to ectopic fat infiltration in muscle. Myosteatosis is defined by lower mean skeletal muscle radiodensity on computed tomography (CT), and it is common in cirrhotic patients with prevalence of 16–82%. Myosteatosis is independently associated with mortality and complications in patients with cirrhosis.[17] Since CT was used for muscle mass evaluation, assessing myosteatosis would also be possible in the patients enrolled in the study by Kim et al.[11] Moreover, further analysis of myosteatosis would provide additional prognostic information in cirrhotic patients.

In conclusion, we genuinely appreciate the valuable work of Kim et al.,[11] which demonstrated that the change in muscle mass is an independent prognostic factor in predicting the development of cirrhotic complications. However, consideration of other issues that can affect muscle mass and quality in cirrhotic patients will be more helpful in identifying patients with a poor prognosis.

Authors' contribution

Concept of the work: D.S.S. and J.M.Y.; drafting article: D.S.S. and U.I.C.; critical revision of the article: J.M.Y

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Cederholm T, Barazzoni R, Austin P, Ballmer P, Biolo G, Bischoff SC, et al. ESPEN guidelines on definitions and terminology of clinical nutrition. Clin Nutr 2017;36:49-64.
2. DiMartini A, Cruz RJ Jr, Dew MA, Myaskovsky L, Goodpaster B, Fox K, et al. Muscle mass predicts outcomes following liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2013;19:1172-1180.
3. Tantai X, Liu Y, Yeo YH, Praktiknjo M, Mauro E, Hamaguchi Y, et al. Effect of sarcopenia on survival in patients with cirrhosis: a meta-analysis. J Hepatol 2022;76:588-599.
4. Han JW, Kim DI, Nam HC, Chang UI, Yang JM, Song DS. Association between serum tumor necrosis factor-α and sarcopenia in liver cirrhosis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:219-231.
5. Choi K, Jang HY, Ahn JM, Hwang SH, Chung JW, Choi YS, et al. The association of the serum levels of myostatin, follistatin, and interleukin-6 with sarcopenia, and their impacts on survival in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:492-505.
6. Montano-Loza AJ, Meza-Junco J, Prado CMM, Lieffers JR, Baracos VE, Bain VG, et al. Muscle wasting is associated with mortality in patients with cirrhosis. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2012;10:166-173.
7. Gu DH, Kim MY, Seo YS, Kim SG, Lee HA, Kim TH, et al. Clinical usefulness of psoas muscle thickness for the diagnosis of sarcopenia in patients with liver cirrhosis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2018;24:319-330.
8. Lai JC, Tandon P, Bernal W, Tapper EB, Ekong U, Dasarathy S, et al. Malnutrition, frailty, and sarcopenia in patients with cirrhosis: 2021 practice guidance by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Hepatology 2021;74:1611-1644.
9. European Association for the Study of the Liver (EASL). EASL clinical practice guidelines on nutrition in chronic liver disease. J Hepatol 2019;70:172-193.
10. Bischoff SC, Bernal W, Dasarathy S, Merli M, Plank LD, Schütz T, et al. ESPEN practical guideline: clinical nutrition in liver disease. Clin Nutr 2020;39:3533-3562.

Abbreviation:
CT, computed tomography

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0339

11. Kim TH, Jung YK, Yim HJ, Baik JW, Yim SY, Lee YS, et al. Impacts of muscle mass dynamics on prognosis of outpatients with cirrhosis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:876-889.
12. Ebadi M, Tandon P, Moctezuma-Velazquez C, Ghosh S, Baracos VE, Mazurak VC, et al. Low subcutaneous adiposity associates with higher mortality in female patients with cirrhosis. J Hepatol 2018;69:608-616.
13. Sinclair M, Gow PJ, Grossmann M, Angus PW. Review article: sarcopenia in cirrhosis-aetiology, implications and potential therapeutic interventions. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2016;43:765-777.
14. Dasarathy J, McCullough AJ, Dasarathy S. Sarcopenia in alcoholic liver disease: clinical and molecular advances. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 2017;41:1419-1431.
15. Chapman B, Sinclair M, Gow PJ, Testro AG. Malnutrition in cirrhosis: more food for thought. World J Hepatol 2020;12:883-896.
16. Bellar A, Welch N, Dasarathy S. Exercise and physical activity in cirrhosis: opportunities or perils. J Appl Physiol (1985) 2020;128:1547-1567.
17. Ebadi M, Tsien C, Bhanji RA, Dunichand-Hoedl AR, Rider E, Motamedrad M, et al. Myosteatosis in cirrhosis: a review of diagnosis, pathophysiological mechanisms and potential interventions. Cells 2022;11:1216.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0328
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:168

Letter to the Editor

Letter regarding "COVID-19 vaccine immunogenicity among chronic liver disease patients and liver transplant recipients: A meta-analysis"

Rujittika Mungmunpuntipantip[1] **and Viroj Wiwanitkit**[2]

[1]Private Academic Consultant, Bangkok, Thailand; [2]Department of Research Center, Chandigarh University, Punjab, India

Keywords: COVID-19; Vaccines; Liver

Dear Editor,

We would like to share ideas on "COVID-19 vaccine immunogenicity among chronic liver disease patients and liver transplant recipients: A meta-analysis."[1] In contrast to liver transplant recipients, patients with chronic liver disease exhibited a good humoral response to the coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) vaccination, according to Cheung et al.[1] We also agree that COVID-19 is helpful in immunogenicity. The immunological response of a vaccine recipient with an underlying medical condition may be different from that of a healthy individual. Potential confounding factors must be taken into consideration while interpreting the current report. Prior asymptomatic COVID-19 infection is a possibility, and is not unusual.[2] If there is no method to rule out prior cases of asymptomatic COVID-19, it would be challenging to evaluate the effectiveness of the vaccine.

Authors' contribution

RM: 50% ideas, writing, approval for submission; VW: 50% ideas, supervision, approval for submission

Conflicts of Interest

The authors declare no conflicts of interest.

REFERENCES

1. Cheung KS, Mok CH, Mao X, Zhang R, Hung IF, Seto WK, et al. COVID-19 vaccine immunogenicity among chronic liver disease patients and liver transplant recipients: a meta-analysis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:890-911.
2. Joob B, Wiwanitkit V. Letter to the editor: coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19), infectivity, and the incubation period. J Prev Med Public Health 2020;53:70.

Corresponding author : Rujittika Mungmunpuntipantip
Private Academic Consultant, 111 Bangkok 122, Bangkok 103300, Thailand
Tel: +66-22564133662, Fax: +66-22564133662, E-mail: rujittika@gmail.com
https://orcid.org/0000-0003-0078-7897

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Oct. 21, 2022 / **Received :** Oct. 26, 2022 / **Accepted :** Oct. 26, 2022

Abbreviation:

COVID-19, coronavirus disease 2019

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0384
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:169-170

Letter to the Editor

Letter regarding "The usefulness of metabolic score for insulin resistance for the prediction of incident non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in Korean adults"

Hye Won Lee[1,2,3]

[1]Department of Internal Medicine, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Seoul; [2]Insitute of Gastroenterology, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Seoul; [3]Liver Center, Severance Hospital, Seoul, Korea

Keywords: Insulin resistance; Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; Incidence

Dear Editor,

The euglycemic-hyperinsulinemic clamp (EHC) is the gold standard for assessing insulin sensitivity in peripheral tissues.[1] However, simpler metrics are needed to assess insulin resistance (IR). The metabolic score for the IR (METS-IR) index is a new metric for measuring IR that is simple, reliable, and reproducible.[1,2] Although Lee et al.[3] applied this score to Koreans, we would like to address some points regarding the associations between non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) and METS-IR.

First, is the METS-IR a reliable score? This score was first proposed by a Mexican research team.[1] The METS-IR discovery sample included 125 subjects who underwent the EHC. The study included subjects aged 20–79 years, with a wide range of body mass indices (18–34.9 kg/m^2), who were recruited from the outpatient diabetes clinic of a university hospital in Mexico City. Among the 125 subjects, 68 had type 2 diabetes mellitus (DM) and 57 did not. The subjects with DM were included if they met the following conditions: their glycated hemoglobin concentration was <8%; they did not take insulin; and they were treated with only metformin. However, the number of patients used to develop this score was too small. Furthermore, the composition of the discovery population was heterogeneous. No precise definition of how the METS-IR discovery population was recruited was provided. Although the factors included in the METS-IR score reflect IR, the question is, whether an appropriate patient population was recruited to develop the METS-IR.

Second, NAFLD progresses from simple steatosis, steatohepatitis, and fibrosis to cirrhosis.[4,5] The authors argued that METS-IR can be used to predict the incidence of NAFLD.[3] As mentioned in the editorial by Kim and Cheong,[6] METS-IR was inversely correlated with the prediction of fibrosis in patients with NAFLD in another study.[5] The same authors explained that a reduction in triglycerides with the progression of liver fibrosis was one hypothesis.[5] Serum triglyceride levels decrease as liver disease progresses to liver fibrosis.[7] As triglyc-

Corresponding author : Hye Won Lee
Department of Internal Medicine, Yonsei University College of Medicine, 50-1 Yonsei-ro, Seodaemun-gu, Seoul 03722, Korea
Tel: +82-2-2228-2288, Fax: +82-2-2227-7860, E-mail: lorry-lee@yuhs.ac
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-3552-3560

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 7, 2022 / **Received :** Nov. 7, 2022 / **Accepted :** Nov. 8, 2022

Table 1. Formulas of METS-IR and HOMA-IR

	Formula
METS-IR	ln (2 × FPG [mg/dL] + fasting serum triglyceride [mg/dL]) × BMI (kg/m^2) / ln (HDL cholesterol [mg/dL])
HOMA-IR	(fasting serum insulin [μIU/mL] × FPG [mg/dL] / 405)

METS-IR, metabolic score for the insulin resistance; HOMA-IR, homeostatic model assessment for insulin resistance; FPG, fasting plasma glucose; BMI, body mass index; HDL, high-density lipoprotein.

erides are normally the principal source of lipids in the liver, the fat mass in the liver may decrease with fibrosis. Therefore, if METS-IR is strongly affected by triglycerides, this is a major limitation of the METS-IR index. Triglyceride levels can be affected by many factors, including uric acid, being overweight, arterial blood pressure, use of oral contraceptives, consumption of alcohol and tobacco, lack of physical exercise, thyroid disease, and medications, such as diuretics, hormones, corticosteroids, and beta blockers.[8] We can easily find patients with NAFLD, and there are patients with abnormally elevated triglycerides or already taking triglycerides lowering agents, which may limit the use of METS-IR. The authors should explain the mechanism for the contradictory results in predicting steatosis and liver fibrosis with the METS-IR index.

Third, the homeostatic model assessment for insulin resistance (HOMA-IR) contains insulin in the formula, while METS-IR does not include insulin in the formula (Table 1). Additionally, METS-IR includes the blood lipid profile in the formula, while HOMA-IR does not. The METS-IR is superior to the HOMA-IR for predicting incident NAFLD, and is not inferior to the HOMA-IR for predicting prevalent NAFLD. Then, the incidence of NAFLD can be easily detected by images or laboratory findings. If METS-IR is non-inferior for predicting the development of NAFLD, why do we need a more complex formula to predict NAFLD? Another question arises as to whether METS-IR is a more useful marker for early detection and prediction of insulin sensitivity than HOMA-IR. Therefore, it is necessary to consider the clinical use and application of METS-IR in fatty liver patients.

In conclusion, further studies are needed to determine whether METS-IR is an appropriate predictor for NAFLD incidence.

Conflicts of Interest

The author has no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Bello-Chavolla OY, Almeda-Valdes P, Gomez-Velasco D, Viveros-Ruiz T, Cruz-Bautista I, Romo-Romo A, et al. METS-IR, a novel score to evaluate insulin sensitivity, is predictive of visceral adiposity and incident type 2 diabetes. Eur J Endocrinol 2018;178:533-544.
2. Liu XZ, Fan J, Pan SJ. METS-IR, a novel simple insulin resistance indexes, is associated with hypertension in normal-weight Chinese adults. J Clin Hypertens (Greenwich) 2019;21:1075-1081.
3. Lee JH, Park K, Lee HS, Park HK, Han JH, Ahn SB. The usefulness of metabolic score for insulin resistance for the prediction of incident non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in Korean adults. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:814-826.
4. Ng CH, Huang DQ, Nguyen MH. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease versus metabolic-associated fatty liver disease: prevalence, outcomes and implications of a change in name. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:790-801.
5. Lee JH, Kwon YJ, Park K, Lee HS, Park HK, Han JH, et al. Metabolic score for insulin resistance is inversely related to incident advanced liver fibrosis in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Nutrients 2022;14:3039.
6. Kim SS, Cheong JY. Screening and prediction of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease using a peripheral insulin resistance index: potential benefits and limitations. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:802-805.
7. Wang P, Wang Y, Liu H, Han X, Yi Y, Wang X, et al. Role of triglycerides as a predictor of autoimmune hepatitis with cirrhosis. Lipids Health Dis 2022;21:108.
8. Steinmetz J, Panek E, Siest G, Gueguen R. Factors affecting the concentration of triacylglycerols (triglycerides) in plasma: reference values for adults. Clin Chem 1979;25:924-932.

Abbreviations:

DM, diabetes mellitus; EHC, euglycemic-hyperinsulinemic clamp; HOMA-IR, homeostatic model assessment for insulin resistance; IR, insulin resistance; METS-IR, metabolic score for the insulin resistance; NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0384

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0381
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:171-172

Letter to the Editor

Reply to Letter regarding "Auranofin attenuates hepatic steatosis and fibrosis in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease via NRF2 and NF-κB signaling pathways"

Seung Min Lee[1] and Dae Won Jun[2]

[1]Department of Translational Medicine, Graduate School of Biomedical Science & Engineering, Hanyang University, Seoul; [2]Department of Internal Medicine, Hanyang University Hospital, Hanyang University College of Medicine, Seoul, Korea

Keywords: Auranofin; Ferroptosis; Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; Hepatocellular carcinoma

Dear Editor,

We appreciate your interest in our study. As pointed out by Liu and Chen,[1] non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) has a broad heterogeneous spectrum and a diverse pathophysiology.[2-8] The relationship between auranofin-induced ferroptosis and NAFLD is somewhat complex.[9] It depends on the cell type and disease condition. Ferroptosis is associated with the pathogenesis of NAFLD, and inhibiting ferroptosis can inhibit necrotic cell death, inflammatory cell infiltration, and inflammatory cytokine expression in early-stage NAFLD.[9] However, in late-stage NAFLD and hepatocellular carcinoma, inhibition of ferroptosis is associated with disease progression.[10,11] In previous studies, the expression of glutathione peroxidase (GPX) 4, which protects cells against membrane lipid peroxidation, has been shown to vary according to the severity of NAFLD. In addition, the association between ferroptosis and NAFLD has been observed to vary depending on the animal model of NAFLD. This indicates that ferroptosis may play various roles at different stages of NAFLD. System Xc^- and NAFLD also share a complex relationship. A large body of evidence suggests that auranofin induces ferroptosis via the cystine-glutamate antiporter system Xc^-. Auranofin has been shown to induce ferroptosis via the GSH/GPX axis. Additionally, our previous study indicated that auranofin inhibited system Xc^- in macrophages and the NOD-like receptor family pyrin domain containing 3 inflammasome in inflammatory cells.[12] However, ferroptosis can simultaneously induce iron-dependent lipid peroxidation. Yang et al.[13] demonstrated that auranofin at high doses (25 mg/kg) induces ferroptosis but causes lipid peroxidation by inhibiting thioredoxin reductase activity. In conclusion, it is evident that auranofin acts as an inhibitor of system Xc^-. However, ferroptosis induced by system Xc^- inhibitors appears to play a different role in disease progression depending on the liver cell type and severity of NAFLD. Therefore, for the clinical application of auranofin, it is important to select a target population that is anticipated to have a positive therapeutic effect.

Corresponding author : **Dae Won Jun**
Department of Internal Medicine, Hanyang University College of Medicine, 222 Wangsimni-ro, Seongdong-gu, Seoul 04763, Korea
Tel: +82-2-2290-8338, Fax: +82-2-972-0068, E-mail: noshin@hanyang.ac.kr
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-2875-6139

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 6, 2022 / **Accepted :** Nov. 7, 2022

Authors' contribution

All authors contributed in conception of the work and drafting of the article. All authors provided final approval of the version to be published.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Liu Y, Chen M. Repurposing auranofin in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease still requires further evidence. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:163-164.
2. Kim HY. Recent advances in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease metabolomics. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:553-559.
3. Nam HH, Jun DW, Jeon HJ, Lee JS, Saeed WK, Kim EK. Osthol attenuates hepatic steatosis via decreased triglyceride synthesis not by insulin resistance. World J Gastroenterology 2014;20:11753-11761.
4. Kang SH, Lee HW, Yoo JJ, Cho Y, Kim SU, Lee TH, et al. KASL clinical practice guidelines: management of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:363-401.
5. Ting YW, Kong AS, Zain SM, Chan WK, Tan HL, Mohamed Z, et al. Loss-of-function HSD17B13 variants, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and adverse liver outcomes: results from a multi-ethnic Asian cohort. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:486-498.
6. Ikejima K, Kon K, Yamashina S. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and alcohol-related liver disease: from clinical aspects to pathophysiological insights. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:728-735.
7. Soon G, Wee A. Updates in the quantitative assessment of liver fibrosis for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: histological perspective. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:44-57.
8. Kim KS, Lee BW. Beneficial effect of anti-diabetic drugs for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:430-443.
9. Wang S, Liu Z, Geng J, Li L, Feng X. An overview of ferroptosis in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Biomed Pharmacother 2022;153:113374.
10. Chen J, Li X, Ge C, Min J, Wang F. The multifaceted role of ferroptosis in liver disease. Cell Death Differ 2022;29:467-480.
11. Kumar R, Goh BG, Kam JW, Chang PE, Tan CK. Comparisons between non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and alcohol-related hepatocellular carcinoma. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:196-208.
12. Kim HY, Choi YJ, Kim SK, Kim H, Jun DW, Yoon K, et al. Auranofin prevents liver fibrosis by system Xc-mediated inhibition of NLRP3 inflammasome. Commun Biol 2021;4:824.
13. Yang L, Wang H, Yang X, Wu Q, An P, Jin X, et al. Auranofin mitigates systemic iron overload and induces ferroptosis via distinct mechanisms. Signal Transduct Target Ther 2020;5:138.

Abbreviations:

GPX, glutathione peroxidase; NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0381

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0372
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:173-175

Letter to the Editor

Reply to Letter regarding "Impacts of muscle mass dynamics on prognosis of outpatients with cirrhosis"

Tae Hyung Kim, Young Kul Jung, and Hyung Joon Yim

Department of Internal Medicine, Korea University Ansan Hospital, Ansan, Korea

Keywords: Sarcopenia; Prognosis; Liver cirrhosis; Risk factors; Life style

Dear Editor,

We sincerely appreciate the letter from Song et al.[1] for contemplating our recent paper on the prognostic impact of muscle mass change in outpatients with cirrhosis, published in *Clinical and Molecular Hepatology*.[2] We agree that sex and lifestyle influence muscle mass and that myosteatosis is an important prognostic marker in patients with cirrhosis.

Many diagnostic criteria for sarcopenia have been established based on sex-specific differences, and this study was conducted by adopting one of them. However, the change in muscle mass may differ from the muscle mass itself. In our study, change in muscle mass (ΔSMI)/yr%, which represented the change in muscle mass, was not an absolute value but a rate value divided by the muscle mass at inclusion. Thus, regardless of sex, the impact of ΔSMI/yr% could be consistent.

The analysis of subgroup according to sex, which was not presented in the original paper, revealed that ΔSMI/yr% continued to be an independent predictor for the development of cirrhosis complications in men even after adjusting for the model for end-stage liver disease score. In the case of women, the correlation marginally significant (Table 1), which might be attributed to the fact that women in our cohort were fewer and had a lower incidence of cirrhosis complications than men. In addition, every 1-point increase in ΔSMI/yr% was associated with a 5.4% and 4.0% reduction in the risk of cirrhosis complications in men and women, respectively.

Of course, there were other results suggesting sex-specific

Table 1. Multivariable cox-regression analyses for the development of LC complication after 1-year CT according to sex

	HR	95% CI	*P*-value
ΔSMI/yr%			
Men (n=381)	0.946	0.917–0.976	<0.001
Women (n=214)	0.960	0.921–1.001	0.055

Results were derived after adjusting for age and model for end-stage liver disease score.
LC, liver cirrhosis; CT, computed tomography; HR, hazard ratio; CI, confidence interval; ΔSMI, change in muscle mass.

Corresponding author : Young Kul Jung
Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Internal Medicine, Korea University Ansan Hospital, 123 Jeokgeum-ro, Danwon-gu, Ansan 15355, Korea
Tel: +82-31-412-7670, Fax: +82-31-412-5582, E-mail: 93cool@hanmail.net
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-6566-1382

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 5, 2022 / **Revised :** Nov. 9, 2022 / **Accepted :** Nov. 10, 2022

differences such as cut-offs for the development of cirrhosis complications within 6 months (-5.74 and -2.62 in men and women, respectively).

Continuous alcohol consumption is an obvious aggravating factor for muscle loss, decompensation, and mortality in patients with alcohol-related liver disease.[3-6] In addition, abstinence is a fundamental treatment with long-term benefits, including a 10–30% reduction in mortality.[4,7,8] Thus, drinking behavior after inclusion could be an important factor in the prognosis of patients with cirrhosis, as mentioned by Song et al.[1] However, drinking behavior is highly variable, and there is no standardized method for measuring it, making it difficult to incorporate into research.[9] Malnutrition and insufficient physical activity are well-known risk factors for sarcopenia and the prognosis of patients with cirrhosis. Conversely, a well-controlled diet and regular exercise could improve sarcopenia even in patients with cirrhosis.[3,10-12]

Several pioneering studies have shown that myosteatosis is significantly associated with decompensation, hepatocellular carcinoma development, and mortality in patients with chronic liver disease.[13-15] Even in these studies, it was unclear whether myosteatosis was a better prognostic predictor than sarcopenia. However, it appeared to be a prognostic predictor acting independently of sarcopenia.[15]

Myosteatosis and lifestyle, including drinking behavior, nutrition, and physical activity, are now considered essential in sarcopenia-related studies. However, as mentioned in the limitations of the original paper, the protocol in our cohort did not include measurements for these factors. Therefore, further studies are required to address these factors.

Authors' contribution

Concept of the work: Y.K.J. and H.J.Y.; drafting article: T.H.K.; critical revision of the article: Y.K.J.

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank Editage (www.editage.co.kr) for English language editing.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Song DS, Chang UI, Yang JM. Sarcopenia: multiple factors need to be considered in cirrhosis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:165-167.
2. Kim TH, Jung YK, Yim HJ, Baik JW, Yim SY, Lee YS, et al. Impacts of muscle mass dynamics on prognosis of outpatients with cirrhosis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:876-889.
3. Jindal A, Jagdish RK. Sarcopenia: ammonia metabolism and hepatic encephalopathy. Clin Mol Hepatol 2019;25:270-279.
4. Lackner C, Spindelboeck W, Haybaeck J, Douschan P, Rainer F, Terracciano L, et al. Histological parameters and alcohol abstinence determine long-term prognosis in patients with alcoholic liver disease. J Hepatol 2017;66:610-618.
5. Lesmana CRA, Raharjo M, Gani RA. Managing liver cirrhotic complications: overview of esophageal and gastric varices. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:444-460.
6. Korean Association for the Study of the Liver (KASL). KASL clinical practice guidelines for liver cirrhosis: varices, hepatic encephalopathy, and related complications. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:83-127.
7. Mann RE, Smart RG, Govoni R. The epidemiology of alcoholic liver disease. Alcohol Res Health 2003;27:209-219.
8. Pessione F, Ramond MJ, Peters L, Pham BN, Batel P, Rueff B, et al. Five-year survival predictive factors in patients with excessive alcohol intake and cirrhosis. Effect of alcoholic hepatitis, smoking and abstinence. Liver Int 2003;23:45-53.
9. Kim J, Kang W, Sinn DH, Gwak GY, Paik YH, Choi MS, et al. Substantial risk of recurrence even after 5 recurrence-free years in early-stage hepatocellular carcinoma patients. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:516-528.
10. Bunchorntavakul C, Reddy KR. Review article: malnutrition/sarcopenia and frailty in patients with cirrhosis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2020;51:64-77.
11. Wang S, Whitlock R, Xu C, Taneja S, Singh S, Abraldes JG, et al. Frailty is associated with increased risk of cirrhosis disease progression and death. Hepatology 2022;75:600-609.
12. Aamann L, Dam G, Borre M, Drljevic-Nielsen A, Overgaard K, Andersen H, et al. Resistance training increases muscle strength and muscle size in patients with liver cirrhosis. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2020;18:1179-1187.e6.
13. Nardelli S, Lattanzi B, Merli M, Farcomeni A, Gioia S, Ridola L,

Abbreviation:

ΔSMI, change in muscle mass

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0372

et al. Muscle alterations are associated with minimal and overt hepatic encephalopathy in patients with liver cirrhosis. Hepatology 2019;70:1704-1713.
14. Tachi Y, Kozuka A, Hirai T, Ishizu Y, Honda T, Kuzuya T, et al. Impact of myosteatosis on skeletal muscle volume loss in patients with chronic liver disease. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2018;33:1659-1666.
15. Lattanzi B, Nardelli S, Pigliacelli A, Di Cola S, Farcomeni A, D'Ambrosio D, et al. The additive value of sarcopenia, myosteatosis and hepatic encephalopathy in the predictivity of model for end-stage liver disease. Dig Liver Dis 2019;51:1508-1512.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0377
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:176-178

Letter to the Editor

Reply to Letter regarding "COVID-19 vaccine immunogenicity among chronic liver disease patients and liver transplant recipients: A meta-analysis"

Ka Shing Cheung[1,2], Chiu Hang Mok[3], Wai Kay Seto[1,2,4], and Man Fung Yuen[1,4]

[1]Department of Medicine, School of Clinical Medicine, The University of Hong Kong, Queen Mary Hospital, Hong Kong; [2]Department of Medicine, The University of Hong Kong-Shenzhen Hospital, Shenzhen, China; [3]School of Clinical Medicine, The University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong; [4]State Key Laboratory of Liver Research, The University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong

Keywords: COVID-19; Vaccination; Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; Fatty liver

Dear Editor,

We would like to thank Mungmunpuntipantip and Wiwanitkit[1] for their response to our recent meta-analysis[2] on the possible confounding factors of vaccine recipients, including underlying medical conditions and prior coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) infection. COVID-19 infection can cause not only gastrointestinal symptoms but also hepatic injury, including cholangitis and autoimmune hepatitis.[3,4] Therefore, vaccination is of paramount importance to prevent COVID-19 infection and its disease severity.

We agree that patients with more comorbidities may have different vaccine immunogenicity compared to healthy individuals. Table 1 shows the list of comorbidities among patients included in our analysis. No study provided individual data for the outcome of seroconversion regarding the presence of comorbidity. Importantly, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease, which may affect vaccine immunogenicity,[5] is also associated with a higher risk of comorbidities, such as diabetes mellitus. Unlike the etiology of liver disease and cirrhosis status, wherein we used a prevalence of 80% as the cut-off for classification, the data for comorbidity were heterogenous and no cut-off could be drawn. Hence, we could not perform subgroup analysis with respect to each comorbidity. In addition, certain medications (e.g., antibiotics, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, histamine 2 receptor antagonists) may affect either the COVID-19 vaccine response[6] or disease severity.[7,8] However, drug data were lacking in the included studies.

Although prior history of COVID-19 infection was part of

Corresponding author : **Man Fung Yuen**
Department of Medicine, Queen Mary Hospital, The University of Hong Kong, Pokfulam Road, Hong Kong
Tel: +852-22553984, Fax: +852-28162863, E-mail: mfyuen@hkucc.hku.hk
https://orcid.org/0000-0001-7985-7725

Wai Kay Seto
Department of Medicine, Queen Mary Hospital, The University of Hong Kong, Pokfulam Road, Hong Kong
Tel: +852-22556979, Fax: +852-28725828, E-mail: wkseto@hkucc.hku.hk
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-9012-313X

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 5, 2022 / **Accepted :** Nov. 7, 2022

Table 1. Comorbidities of patients in the included studies

Study	Hypertension	Diabetes mellitus	Hyperlipidemia	Cardiovascular disease	Respiratory disease	Chronic kidney disease
Chronic liver disease						
Ai et al.	38 (8.7)	23 (5.3)	/	7 (1.6)	1 (0.2)	/
Bakasis et al.	/	27 (31.0)	/	32 (36.8)	6 (6.9)	/
He et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/
Ruether et al.	18 (37.5)	12 (25.0)	/	/	/	7 (14.6)
Thuluvath et al.	109 (63.7)	/	98 (57.3)	21 (12.3)	14 (8.2)	25 (14.6)
Wang et al.	42 (11.0)	14 (3.7)	/	4 (1.5)	1 (0.3)	/
Xiang et al.	9 (6.0)	4 (2.7)	/	2 (1.3)	1 (0.7)	/
Liver transplant						
Alavijeh et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/
Boyarsky et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/
Cholankeril et al.	/	33 (47.8)	/	/	/	36 (52.2)
Davidov et al.	36 (47.4)	31 (40.8)	36 (47.4)	/	/	25 (32.9)
Erol et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/
Fernandez-Ruiz et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/
Guarino et al.	/	99 (22.3)	/	72 (16.2)	9 (2.0)	46 (10.4)
Hall et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/
Herrera et al.	33 (56.9)	21 (36.2)	22 (37.9)	/	/	15 (25.9)
Holden et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/
Huang et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/
Marion et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/
Mazzola et al.	/	24 (41.4)	/	26 (44.8)	2 (3.5)	/
Mulder et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/
Nazaruk et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/
Rabinowich et al.	45 (56.3)	26 (32.5)	/	/	/	/
Ruether et al.	85 (61.6)	29 (21.0)	/	/	/	46 (33.3)
Strauss et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/
Thuluvath et al.	50 (80.6)	/	35 (56.5)	12 (19.4)	8 (12.9)	40 (64.5)
Timmermann et al.	/	/	/	/	/	/

Values are presented as number (%).

Abbreviation:
COVID-19, coronavirus disease 2019

the exclusion criteria in our study, asymptomatic cases might have been enrolled, as the baseline levels of antibodies were measured. Timmermann et al.[9] found 2/120 asymptomatic patients with positive anti-nucleocapsid-immunoglobulin G antibodies, and these patients were excluded from subsequent analysis. A meta-analysis revealed that 0.25% of the tested general population were asymptomatic infections.[10] Nevertheless, this issue may not have a significant impact on our results due to a large sample size of 3,945 patients. It is noteworthy that vaccinated recipients, especially liver transplant patients, should still adhere to other infection prevention and control measures, such as social distancing.[11]

Authors' contribution

Ka Shing Cheung and Chiu Hang Mok were involved in data retrieval, statistical analysis and drafting of the manuscript. Wai Kay Seto and Man Fung Yuen were involved in supervision.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors declare no conflicts of interest.

REFERENCES

1. Mungmunpuntipantip R, Wiwanitkit V. Letter regarding "COVID-19 vaccine immunogenicity among chronic liver disease patients and liver transplant recipients: a meta-analysis". Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:168.
2. Cheung KS, Mok CH, Mao X, Zhang R, Hung IF, Seto WK, et al. COVID-19 vaccine immunogenicity among chronic liver disease patients and liver transplant recipients: a meta-analysis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:890-911.
3. Cho JY, Lee YS, Kim SS, Song DS, Lee JH, Kim JH. Forms of cholangitis to be considered after SARS-CoV-2 infection. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:929-930.
4. Lee SK, Kwon JH, Yoon N, Nam SW, Sung PS. Autoimmune liver disease represented as primary biliary cholangitis after SARS-CoV-2 infection: a need for population-based cohort study. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:926-928.
5. Cheung KS, Lam LK, Hui RWH, Mao X, Zhang RR, Chan KH, et al. Effect of moderate-to-severe hepatic steatosis on neutralising antibody response among BNT162b2 and CoronaVac recipients. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:553-564.
6. Cheung KS, Lam LK, Zhang R, Ooi PH, Tan JT, To WP, et al. Association between recent usage of antibiotics and immunogenicity within six months after COVID-19 vaccination. Vaccines (Basel) 2022;10:1122.
7. Cheung KS, Hung IFN, Leung WK. Association between angiotensin blockade and COVID-19 severity in Hong Kong. CMAJ 2020;192:E635.
8. Cheung KS, Hung IFN, Leung WK. Association between famotidine use and COVID-19 severity in Hong Kong: a territory-wide study. Gastroenterology 2021;160:1898-1899.
9. Timmermann L, Globke B, Lurje G, Schmelzle M, Schöning W, Öllinger R, et al. Humoral immune response following SARS-CoV-2 vaccination in liver transplant recipients. Vaccines (Basel) 2021;9:1422.
10. Ma Q, Liu J, Liu Q, Kang L, Liu R, Jing W, et al. Global percentage of asymptomatic SARS-CoV-2 infections among the tested population and individuals with confirmed COVID-19 diagnosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA Netw Open 2021;4:e2137257.
11. Cho JY, Lee YS, Kim SS, Song DS, Lee JH, Kim JH. Update on liver disease management during the pandemic of coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19): 2021 KASL guideline. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:515-523.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0409
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:179-181

Letter to the Editor

Reply to Letter regarding "The usefulness of metabolic score for insulin resistance for the prediction of incident non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in Korean adults"

Jun-Hyuk Lee[1,2], Kyongmin Park[2,3], Hye Sun Lee[4], Hoon-Ki Park[2,3], Jee Hye Han[1], and Sang Bong Ahn[5]

[1]Department of Family Medicine, Nowon Eulji Medical Center, Eulji University School of Medicine, Seoul; [2]Department of Medicine, Graduate School of Hanyang University, Seoul; [3]Department of Family Medicine, Hanyang University College of Medicine, Seoul; [4]Biostatistics Collaboration Unit, Department of Research Affairs, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Seoul; [5]Department of Internal Medicine, Nowon Eulji Medical Center, Eulji University School of Medicine, Seoul, Korea

Keywords: Insulin resistance; Metabolic score for insulin resistance; Homeostatic model assessment for insulin resistance; Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; Fatty liver

Dear Editor,

We appreciate Dr. Lee's interest in this study. As Dr. Lee[1] commented in the letter, the metabolic score for insulin resistance (METS-IR) has been used as a simple, reliable, and reproducible surrogate insulin resistance (IR) marker in the South American population.[2,3] However, several Korean epidemiological studies using METS-IR[4-6] lack validation and cut-off points that would help to identify IR in Koreans. A follow-up study is needed to compare METS-IR with the hyperinsulinemic-euglycemic index in order to determine whether reflects it insulin sensitivity well and if it is more reliable than the homeostatic model assessment for IR (HOMA-IR) used in the general Korean population.

The formula that constitutes METS-IR uses triglyceride levels, which are affected by multiple factors, including arterial blood pressure, alcohol use, carbohydrate intake, and use of medications such as diuretics and oral contraceptives.[7] We adjusted for hypertension, alcohol use, and energy intake because such factors also contribute to nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD).[8-10] However, the lack of information in the Korean Genome and Epidemiological Study dataset about specific medication use could serve as a potential confounder in our study.[11] Despite this limitation, there is also the pos-

Corresponding author : **Jee Hye Han**
Department of Family Medicine, Nowon Eulji Medical Center, Eulji University School of Medicine, 68 Hangeulbiseok-ro, Nowon-gu, Seoul 01830, Korea
Tel: +82-2-970-8518, Fax: +82-2-970-8862, E-mail: hanjh1611@eulji.ac.kr
https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4002-3453

Sang Bong Ahn
Department of Internal Medicine, Nowon Eulji Medical Center, Eulji University School of Medicine, 68 Hangeulbiseok-ro, Nowon-gu, Seoul 01830, Korea
Tel: +82-2-970-8515, Fax: +82-2-970-8862, E-mail: dr486@eulji.ac.kr
https://orcid.org/0000-0001-7419-5259

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 16, 2022 / **Accepted :** Nov. 17, 2022

sibility that the potential effect of the confounder was attenuated because we used community-based cohort data to analyze a large population. Further clinical trials should be performed with controlling for potential confounding variables to verify the association between METS-IR and NAFLD.

Current guidelines for management of NAFLD state that radiologic methods, such as abdominal ultrasonography, controlled-attenuated parameter, or unenhanced abdominal computed tomography, are acceptable to diagnose hepatic steatosis.[8] Serologic surrogate markers, such as NAFLD-liver fat score, hepatic steatosis index, or fatty liver index, can be used to assess hepatic steatosis if radiological examinations are infeasible.[8] We believe that METS-IR will be less accurate for diagnosis of hepatic steatosis than radiologic tests or serologic surrogate markers for hepatic steatosis. This is because METS-IR was developed as a surrogate marker for IR. We do not claim to use METS-IR as a single predictive model for NAFLD; if fatty liver disease has not yet developed, abdominal ultrasonography or abdominal computed tomography will not provide additional information about the risk of developing NAFLD. As IR is closely related to NAFLD, we believe that the assessment and management of IR are important strategies for the early prevention and management of NAFLD. In clinical practice, HOMA-IR is the most commonly used surrogate marker for IR. However, serum insulin level is not routinely measured in the general clinical field, so MET-IR can be applied more easily than HOMA-IR even though METS-IR uses a more complex formula. In our study, METS-IR was not inferior to HOMA-IR in predicting the prevalence of NAFLD, and it was superior to HOMA-IR in predicting the incidence of NAFLD. Therefore, our findings suggest that METS-IR can be used as an IR marker in patients with or who are at risk of developing NAFLD. Further experimental studies and clinical trials should be performed to elucidate the mechanism by which METS-IR is positively related to NAFLD and negatively related to advanced liver fibrosis, considering the changes in METS-IR values over time. Further studies on the genetic variations affecting METS-IR values, hepatic steatosis, and liver fibrosis are also necessary.

Authors' contribution

Study concept and design: Jun-Hyuk Lee, Jee Hye Han, and Sang Bong Ahn; Data collection: Jun-Hyuk Lee, Kyongmin Park, Hye Sun Lee, and Hoon-Ki Park; Data analysis and interpretation: Jun-Hyuk Lee, Jee Hye Han, and Sang Bong Ahn; Manuscript writing: Jun-Hyuk Lee, Jee Hye Han, and Sang Bong Ahn. Final approval of the manuscript: All authors

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Lee HW. Letter regarding "The usefulness of metabolic score for insulin resistance for the prediction of incident non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in Korean adults". Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:169-170.
2. Bello-Chavolla OY, Almeda-Valdes P, Gomez-Velasco D, Viveros-Ruiz T, Cruz-Bautista I, Romo-Romo A, et al. METS-IR, a novel score to evaluate insulin sensitivity, is predictive of visceral adiposity and incident type 2 diabetes. Eur J Endocrinol 2018;178:533-544.
3. Liu XZ, Fan J, Pan SJ. METS-IR, a novel simple insulin resistance indexes, is associated with hypertension in normal-weight Chinese adults. J Clin Hypertens (Greenwich) 2019;21:1075-1081.
4. Yoon J, Jung D, Lee Y, Park B. The metabolic score for insulin resistance (METS-IR) as a predictor of incident ischemic heart disease: a longitudinal study among Korean without diabetes. J Pers Med 2021;11:742.
5. Lee YC, Lee JW, Kwon YJ. Comparison of the triglyceride glucose (TyG) index, triglyceride to high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (TG/HDL-C) ratio, and metabolic score for insulin resistance (METS-IR) associated with periodontitis in Korean adults. Ther Adv Chronic Dis 2022;13:20406223221122671.
6. Lee JH, Kwon YJ, Park K, Lee HS, Park HK, Han JH, et al. Metabolic score for insulin resistance is inversely related to incident advanced liver fibrosis in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Nutrients 2022;14:3039.
7. Steinmetz J, Panek E, Siest G, Gueguen R. Factors affecting the concentration of triacylglycerols (triglycerides) in plasma: refer-

Abbreviations:

HOMA-IR, homeostatic model assessment for insulin resistance; IR, insulin resistance; METS-IR, metabolic score for insulin resistance; NAFLD, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease

ence values for adults. Clin Chem 1979;25:924-932.
8. Choi JH, Sohn W, Cho YK. The effect of moderate alcohol drinking in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:662-669.
9. Kang SH, Lee HW, Yoo JJ, Cho Y, Kim SU, Lee TH, et al. KASL clinical practice guidelines: management of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:363-401.
10. Hydes TJ, Ravi S, Loomba R, Gray EM. Evidence-based clinical advice for nutrition and dietary weight loss strategies for the management of NAFLD and NASH. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:383-400.
11. Kim Y, Han BG; KoGES Group. Cohort profile: the Korean Genome and Epidemiology Study (KoGES) consortium. Int J Epidemiol 2017;46:e20.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0411
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:182-184

Correspondence

Correspondence on Editorial regarding "Impact of nationwide hepatocellular carcinoma surveillance on the prognosis in patients with chronic liver disease"

Won Sohn[1] and Yong-Han Paik[2,3]

[1]Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine, Kangbuk Samsung Hospital, Sungkyunkwan University School of Medicine, Seoul; [2]Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Medicine, Samsung Medical Center, Sungkyunkwan University School of Medicine, Seoul; [3]Department of Health Science and Technology, Samsung Advanced Institute for Health Science and Technology, Sunkyunkwan University, Seoul, Korea

Keywords: Hepatocellular carcinoma; Chronic hepatitis; Liver cirrhosis; Early detection of cancer

Dear Editor,

We appreciate the interest and comments from Kim et al.[1] on our recently published paper on the impact of nationwide hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) surveillance on the prognosis of patients with chronic liver disease.[2] In the article, the authors speculated on the current status of HCC surveillance and suggested a course of action.[1] We agree with the suggestions and would like to discuss several related issues in detail.

With the current era of antiviral treatment in chronic hepatitis B (CHB) or chronic hepatitis C (CHC), high-risk groups for HCC surveillance need to be redefined in a more detailed manner, especially considering the use of antiviral agents in chronic viral hepatitis. Based on the annual incidence of HCC and its cost-effectiveness, HCC surveillance is traditionally recommended for patients with CHB aged >40 years or with any type of cirrhosis.[3,4] However, the risk of HCC development in CHB has changed since the introduction of antiviral treatment. The risk of HCC development is decreased in CHB patients receiving nucleotide analogs as the use of potent antiviral treatment effectively suppresses hepatitis B virus replication.[5,6] However, the risk of HCC development remains higher in these patients than in those with inactive CHB.[7] As a result, HCC surveillance in CHB should be subdivided based on the phases of CHB (such as, immune-tolerant, immune-active phase with the use of antiviral treatment, and inactive phase).

Additionally, the reduced risk of advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis during or after antiviral therapy should be considered. Recent studies have reported that long-term use of antiviral agents could induce the regression of advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis in CHB.[8,9] It is well established that cirrhosis is a crucial factor in the development of HCC. In a certain percentage of patients, regression of advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis fol-

Corresponding author : Yong-Han Paik
Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Medicine, Sungkyunkwan University School of Medicine and Department of Health Science and Technology, Samsung Advanced Institute for Health Science and Technology, Sunkyunkwan University, 81 Irwon-ro Gangnam-gu, Seoul 06351, Korea
Tel: +82-2-3410-3878, Fax: +82-2-3410-6983, E-mail: yh.paik@skku.edu
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-3076-2327

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 18, 2022 / **Accepted :** Nov. 18, 2022

lowing antiviral treatment has been reported.[8,9] Therefore, it is necessary to consider the regression of advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis as a risk factor for HCC development in CHB patients receiving antiviral treatment. Similarly, information regarding HCC surveillance in patients with CHC, who have achieved sustained virologic response (SVR) after direct-acting antivirals is unclear.[10] Therefore, it is necessary to define risk stratification for HCC surveillance in this group of patients. As mentioned earlier, the high-risk group for HCC surveillance is defined based on the annual incidence of HCC and cost-effectiveness.[3,4] Unfortunately, our study[2] lacked data on cost-effectiveness, such as incremental cost-effectiveness ratio or quality-adjusted life year. A recent meta-analysis has reported that biannual surveillance for HCC in CHC patients who achieved SVR is cost-effective for patients up to 70 years old with cirrhosis and up to 60 years old with advanced fibrosis.[11]

It is also unclear whether HCC surveillance is helpful for survival gain in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), particularly those without advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis.[12] NAFLD-associated HCC can frequently occur without advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis, even in patients with simple steatosis and without steatohepatitis.[12] Therefore, it is necessary to define a high-risk group for NAFLD-associated HCC by another method apart from advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis. A recent study showed that a genetic polymorphism might be a significant risk factor for NAFLD-associated HCC.[13] A polygenic risk score based on genetic polymorphisms associated with hepatic fat may also prove to be a useful tool to stratify high-risk groups for NAFLD-associated HCC, particularly in patients without advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis.

Screening is the next issue that needs to be addressed regarding HCC surveillance. Although ultrasonography is recommended as a screening tool, the diagnostic accuracy of this method for early-stage HCC is suboptimal in some patients. Furthermore, the diagnostic accuracy in obese patients is lower than that in non-obese patients.[14] Additionally, it is difficult to differentiate HCC from regenerative nodules or dysplastic nodules in patients with cirrhosis using this method.[15] Therefore, an alternative screening tool beyond ultrasonography is needed to increase the efficacy of HCC surveillance. Computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) has shown better performance in the detection of HCC in cirrhotic patients compared to ultrasonography.[3] However, it is necessary to clarify the role of CT or MRI as HCC surveillance tools based on their adverse effects and costs.

Taken together, it can be concluded that HCC surveillance in patients with chronic liver disease is crucial for detecting early-stage tumors and improving overall survival. However, changes are needed regarding the strategies being employed for HCC surveillance. The use of antiviral agents in viral hepatitis, dynamic changes in advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis, genetic factors for HCC development in non-cirrhotic patients, particularly in NAFLD, and screening tools other than ultrasonography should be considered to achieve better precision in HCC surveillance among patients with chronic liver disease.

Authors' contribution

All authors contributed to the conception of the study and drafting of the manuscript. All authors contributed to the critical revision of this article. All the authors provided final approval for the version to be published.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Kim BH, Cho Y, Park JW. Surveillance for hepatocellular carcinoma: it is time to move forward. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:810-813.
2. Sohn W, Kang D, Kang M, Guallar E, Cho J, Paik YH. Impact of nationwide hepatocellular carcinoma surveillance on the prognosis in patients with chronic liver disease. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:851-863.
3. European Association for the Study of the Liver; European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL clinical practice guidelines: management of hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol 2018;69:182-236.

Abbreviations:

CHB, chronic hepatitis B; CHC, chronic hepatitis C; CT, computed tomography; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging; NAFLD, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; SVR, sustained virologic response

4. Marrero JA, Kulik LM, Sirlin CB, Zhu AX, Finn RS, Abecassis MM, et al. Diagnosis, staging, and management of hepatocellular carcinoma: 2018 practice guidance by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Hepatology 2018;68:723-750.
5. Liaw YF, Sung JJ, Chow WC, Farrell G, Lee CZ, Yuen H, et al. Lamivudine for patients with chronic hepatitis B and advanced liver disease. N Engl J Med 2004;351:1521-1531.
6. Yim HJ, Kim JH, Park JY, Yoon EL, Park H, Kwon JH, et al. Comparison of clinical practice guidelines for the management of chronic hepatitis B: when to start, when to change, and when to stop. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:411-429.
7. Cho JY, Paik YH, Sohn W, Cho HC, Gwak GY, Choi MS, et al. Patients with chronic hepatitis B treated with oral antiviral therapy retain a higher risk for HCC compared with patients with inactive stage disease. Gut 2014;63:1943-1950.
8. Chang TT, Liaw YF, Wu SS, Schiff E, Han KH, Lai CL, et al. Long-term entecavir therapy results in the reversal of fibrosis/cirrhosis and continued histological improvement in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2010;52:886-893.
9. Marcellin P, Gane E, Buti M, Afdhal N, Sievert W, Jacobson IM, et al. Regression of cirrhosis during treatment with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for chronic hepatitis B: a 5-year open-label follow-up study. Lancet 2013;381:468-475.
10. Alshuwaykh O, Kwo PY. Current and future strategies for the treatment of chronic hepatitis C. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:246-256.
11. Mueller PP, Chen Q, Ayer T, Nemutlu GS, Hajjar A, Bethea ED, et al. Duration and cost-effectiveness of hepatocellular carcinoma surveillance in hepatitis C patients after viral eradication. J Hepatol 2022;77:55-62.
12. Kang SH, Lee HW, Yoo JJ, Cho Y, Kim SU, Lee TH, et al. KASL clinical practice guidelines: management of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:363-401.
13. Bianco C, Jamialahmadi O, Pelusi S, Baselli G, Dongiovanni P, Zanoni I, et al. Non-invasive stratification of hepatocellular carcinoma risk in non-alcoholic fatty liver using polygenic risk scores. J Hepatol 2021;74:775-782.
14. Esfeh JM, Hajifathalian K, Ansari-Gilani K. Sensitivity of ultrasound in detecting hepatocellular carcinoma in obese patients compared to explant pathology as the gold standard. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:54-59.
15. Singal A, Volk ML, Waljee A, Salgia R, Higgins P, Rogers MA, et al. Meta-analysis: surveillance with ultrasound for early-stage hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2009;30:37-47.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0411

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0375
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:185-187

Correspondence

Correspondence on Editorial regarding "Screening and prediction of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease using a peripheral insulin resistance index: Potential benefits and limitations"

Jun-Hyuk Lee[1,2], Kyongmin Park[2,3], Hye Sun Lee[4], Hoon-Ki Park[2,3], Jee Hye Han[1], and Sang Bong Ahn[5]

[1]Department of Family Medicine, Nowon Eulji Medical Center, Eulji University School of Medicine, Seoul; [2]Department of Medicine, Graduate School of Hanyang University, Seoul; [3]Department of Family Medicine, Hanyang University College of Medicine, Seoul; [4]Biostatistics Collaboration Unit, Department of Research Affairs, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Seoul; [5]Department of Internal Medicine, Nowon Eulji Medical Center, Eulji University School of Medicine, Seoul, Korea

Keywords: Insulin resistance; Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; METS-IR; HOMA-IR

Dear Editor,

We appreciate Drs. Soon Sun Kim and Jae Youn Cheong's valuable comments on our research determining predictive values of two insulin resistance (IR) indices, metabolic score for IR (METS-IR) and homeostatic assessment model for IR (HOMA-IR), for the prevalence and incidence of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), published in *Clinical and Molecular Hepatology*.[1] We are happy to respond to the points they raised in their editorial letter.

The prevalence of NAFLD has steadily increased and is estimated to be approximately >50% by 2040.[2] As NAFLD is a risk factor for morbidities such as atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease or dementia,[3,4] many efforts to identify markers for early detection and prediction of NAFLD have been made. The association between NAFLD and metabolic dysfunction has been extensively investigated. The established risk factors for NAFLD include obesity, hypertriglyceridemia, metabolic syndrome, and diabetes mellitus.[5,6] Although these factors are closely related to peripheral IR,[7,8] a previous study has demonstrated that peripheral IR, not hepatic IR, correlates with hepatic fat.[9] Thus, we hypothesized that an index that reflects peripheral IR would also be appropriate for predicting the prevalence and incidence of NAFLD. The METS-IR demonstrated similar predictive power for the prevalence of NAFLD as HOMA-IR and superior predictive power for the incidence of NAFLD compared to HOMA-IR. These results may be due to the high METS-IR reflecting the presence of meta-

Corresponding author : Jee Hye Han
Department of Family Medicine, Nowon Eulji Medical Center, Eulji University School of Medicine, 68 Hangeulbiseok-ro, Nowon-gu, Seoul 01830, Korea
Tel: +82-2-970-8518, Fax: +82-2-970-8862, E-mail: hanjh1611@eulji.ac.kr
https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4002-3453

Sang Bong Ahn
Department of Internal Medicine, Nowon Eulji Medical Center, Eulji University School of Medicine, 68 Hangeulbiseok-ro, Nowon-gu, Seoul 01830, Korea
Tel: +82-2-970-8515, Fax: +82-2-970-8862, E-mail: dr486@eulji.ac.kr
https://orcid.org/0000-0001-7419-5259

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 5, 2022 / **Accepted :** Nov. 7, 2022

bolic syndrome and/or diabetes mellitus. Although we used only the baseline METS-IR value in this study, the value of METS-IR changes with time. The longitudinal data of patients we encountered in clinical practice will provide useful information if the pattern of the METS-IR change with time is related to NAFLD. Therefore, we plan to verify the associations between METS-IR trajectories and incident NAFLD in a future study.

In a very recent study,[10] the predictive power for incident NAFLD of the METS-IR at 4 years in Chinese individuals without obesity was higher than that in our study (time-dependent area under the receiver-operating-curve [AUROC] in the Chinese study vs. our study, 0.752 vs. 0.683). Different ethnicities, short follow-up periods, and the use of abdominal ultrasonography to define NAFLD could have contributed to the discordance in the results between the two studies. Because abdominal ultrasonography was not performed in the Korean Genome and Epidemiology Study (KoGES), we used NAFLD-liver fat scores >−0.640 to define NAFLD in our study. In accordance with the editors' comments, we additionally performed the same analysis using a hepatic steatosis index (HSI) ≥36 to define NAFLD for validation. Among 8,360 participants with or without NAFLD at the baseline survey, 2,111 participants (25.3%) had NAFLD. The predictive powers of the METS-IR and HOMA-IR for the prevalence of NAFLD using HSI decreased compared to those of NAFLD using the NAFLD-liver fat score. In particular, the predictive power of the HOMA-IR decreased from 0.831 (0.821–0.842) to 0.544 (0.529–0.559), whereas that of METS-IR decreased from 0.831 (0.821–0.842) to 0.717 (0.705–0.730). Additionally, among 5,670 participants without NAFLD at the baseline survey, a total of 1,985 participants (35.0%) developed NAFLD during the 13.5-year follow-up period. The time-dependent AUROC for the incidence of NAFLD in HOMA-IR decreased from 0.551 (0.539–0.563) to 0.522 (0.514–0.530), whereas that of METS-IR decreased from 0.683 (0.671–0.695) to 0.575 (0.565–0.585).

Although both NAFLD-liver fat score and HSI are highly reliable markers for predicting NAFLD and NAFLD is closely related to IR,[11] the correlations of these two markers with the IR indices were heterogeneous in this study. Similarly, the correlation coefficient between the NAFLD-liver fat score and METS-IR (r1) was 0.499, and that between the HSI and HOMA-IR (r2) was 0.439, with significant differences between r1 and r2. While the correlation coefficient between the NAFLD-liver fat score and HOMA-IR (r3) was 0.650, the correlation coefficient between the HSI and HOMA-IR (r4) was only 0.078, with significant differences between r3 and r4. These results suggest a possible information bias. To determine a more precise result, defining NAFLD using imaging studies such as abdominal ultrasonography or abdominal computed tomography need to be considered in future studies.

In another study, we compared the predictive power of the METS-IR/triglyceride-glucose (TyG) index/HOMA-IR for advanced liver fibrosis in patients with NAFLD using the KoGES dataset.[12] The METS-IR had the highest predictive power for the prevalence of advanced liver fibrosis, followed by the TyG index and HOMA-IR. Although both the METS-IR and TyG index were significantly associated with incident advanced liver fibrosis in the crude model, the significant association with advanced liver fibrosis was maintained only in the METS-IR, not the TyG index, in the adjusted model. While the TyG index only reflects lipid profile, the METS-IR reflects both the lipid profile and obesity. The difference between these two IR indices made METS-IR better reflect malnutrition in patients with advanced liver disease, which may have caused METS-IR to have a significant association with advanced liver fibrosis in the adjusted model. Considering the inverse relationship between the METS-IR at baseline and incident advanced liver fibrosis in patients with NAFLD, improvement in the METS-IR does not always indicate an improvement in NAFLD. However, we cannot guarantee that changes in the METS-IR are also related to advanced liver fibrosis because both the lipid profile and body mass index fluctuate with time. Hence, determining whether the trajectories of different IR indices are associated with advanced liver fibrosis is necessary.

In conclusion, a high METS-IR can predict the prevalence and incidence of NAFLD. However, this does not always indicate that a low METS-IR score predicts improvement in NAFLD. Therefore, the current evidence for using METS-IR to monitor patients with NAFLD is insufficient. Follow-up studies should be performed to determine whether changes in

Abbreviations:

AUROC, area under the receiver-operating-curve; HIS, hepatic steatosis index; HOMA-IR, homeostatic assessment model for insulin resistance; IR, insulin resistance; KoGES, Korean Genome and Epidemiology Study; METS-IR, metabolic score for insulin resistance; NAFLD, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; TyG, triglyceride-glucose

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0375

various IR indices over time are related to NAFLD and/or liver fibrosis.

Authors' contribution

Study concept and design: Jun-Hyuk Lee, Jee Hye Han, and Sang Bong Ahn; Data collection: Jun-Hyuk Lee, Kyongmin Park, Hye Sun Lee, and Hoon-Ki Park; Data analysis and interpretation: Jun-Hyuk Lee, Jee Hye Han, and Sang Bong Ahn; Manuscript writing: Jun-Hyuk Lee, Jee Hye Han, and Sang Bong Ahn. Final approval of the manuscript: All authors

Conflicts of Interest

The authors declare no conflicts of interest.

REFERENCES

1. Kim SS, Cheong JY. Screening and prediction of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease using a peripheral insulin resistance index: potential benefits and limitations. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:802-805.
2. Le MH, Yeo YH, Zou B, Barnet S, Henry L, Cheung R, et al. Forecasted 2040 global prevalence of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease using hierarchical bayesian approach. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:841-850.
3. Jin Q, Yang RX, Fan JG. Does nonalcoholic fatty liver disease predispose patients to carotid arteriosclerosis and ischemic stroke? Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:473-477.
4. Jeong S, Oh YH, Choi S, Chang J, Kim SM, Son JS, et al. Association of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease with incident dementia later in life among elder adults. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:510-521.
5. Perumpail BJ, Khan MA, Yoo ER, Cholankeril G, Kim D, Ahmed A. Clinical epidemiology and disease burden of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. World J Gastroenterol 2017;23:8263-8276.
6. Ng CH, Chan KE, Chin YH, Zeng RW, Tsai PC, Lim WH, et al. The effect of diabetes and prediabetes on the prevalence, complications and mortality in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:565-574.
7. Han T, Cheng Y, Tian S, Wang L, Liang X, Duan W, et al. Changes in triglycerides and high-density lipoprotein cholesterol may precede peripheral insulin resistance, with 2-h insulin partially mediating this unidirectional relationship: a prospective cohort study. Cardiovasc Diabetol 2016;15:154.
8. ter Horst KW, Gilijamse PW, Koopman KE, de Weijer BA, Brands M, Kootte RS, et al. Insulin resistance in obesity can be reliably identified from fasting plasma insulin. Int J Obes 2015;39:1703-1709.
9. Cree-Green M, Wiromrat P, Stuppy JJ, Thurston J, Bergman BC, Baumgartner AD, et al. Youth with type 2 diabetes have hepatic, peripheral, and adipose insulin resistance. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 2019;316:E186-E195.
10. Cai X, Gao J, Hu J, Wen W, Zhu Q, Wang M, et al. Dose-response associations of metabolic score for insulin resistance index with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease among a nonobese chinese population: retrospective evidence from a population-based cohort study. Dis Markers 2022;2022:4930355.
11. Kang SH, Lee HW, Yoo JJ, Cho Y, Kim SU, Lee TH, et al. KASL clinical practice guidelines: management of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:363-401.
12. Lee JH, Kwon YJ, Park K, Lee HS, Park HK, Han JH, et al. Metabolic score for insulin resistance is inversely related to incident advanced liver fibrosis in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Nutrients 2022;14:3039.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0408
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:188-190

Correspondence

Correspondence on Editorial regarding "Baveno-VII criteria to predict decompensation and initiate non-selective beta-blocker in compensated advanced chronic liver disease patients"

Yu Jun Wong[1,2], Sanchit Sharma[3], Giulia Tosetti[4], Xiaolong Qi[5], and Massimo Primignani[4]

[1]Department of Gastroenterology & Hepatology, Changi General Hospital, Singapore; [2]Duke-NUS Academic Clinical Program, SingHealth, Singapore; [3]Department of Gastroenterology and Human Nutrition Unit, All India Institute of Medical Science, New Dehli, India; [4]Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Foundation IRCCS Ca' Granda Ospedale Maggiore Policlinico, Milan, Italy; [5]CHESS Center, Institute of Portal Hypertension, the First Hospital of Lanzhou University, Lanzhou, China

Keywords: Liver cirrhosis; Hypertension; Portal; Ascites; Hepatic encephalopathy

Dear Editor,

We would like to thank Dr. Semmler and colleagues[1] for their interest in our study.[2] In the present study, we sought to demonstrate the applicability of non-invasive tests (NIT)-based criteria in risk-stratifying compensated cirrhosis patients in the real-world clinical practice.

We included patients with cirrhosis driven by non-alcoholic steatohepatitis or non-alcoholic fatty liver disease, whom etiological cure is not currently available - these patients represent compensated advanced chronic liver disease (cACLD) without removal of primary etiology. We also included viral-related cirrhosis with adequate virological suppression, which is the current standard of care.[3,4] The inclusion of treated viral-related cirrhosis should not invalidate our conclusion, because even after virological suppression, cirrhosis patients with clinically significant portal hypertension (CSPH) may still have CSPH, meaning these patients remain at risk of future decompensation and hepatocellular carcinoma.[2,5]

The number needed-to-treat was probably higher by including patients with treated viral-related cirrhosis in this study. However, given the robust scientific evidence of removing primary etiology can improve outcomes in viral-related cirrhosis, there should be little debate on whether these patients should be treated.[6] What remains uncertain, is whether non-selective beta-blockers (NSBB) are needed to prevent decompensation in all cACLD patients with virological suppression and persistence CSPH, when CSPH was assessed using NIT-based criteria.[7] Indeed, there was a risk of first hepatic decompensation in almost half of our patients (predominantly cured hepatitis C virus [HCV] infection and CSPH-ruled in by NIT) vs. the placebo group of the PREDESCI (β blockers to prevent decompensation of cirrhosis in patients with clinically significant portal hypertension) trial,

Corresponding author : Yu Jun Wong
Department of Gastroenterology & Hepatology, Changi General Hospital, 2, Simei Street 3, 529889, Singapore
Tel: +65-69365729, E-mail: eugene.wong.y.j@singhealth.com.sg
https://orcid.org/0000-0002-0727-1183

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 16, 2022 / **Received :** Nov. 17, 2022 / **Accepted :** Nov. 18, 2022

which mostly included untreated HCV patients with CSPH (13.3% vs. 24.0%). This difference likely reflects the impact of virological suppression in HCV patients in our cohort. In a way, it is reassuring to see that NIT-based assessment of CSPH remained predictive of liver decompensation in viral-related cirrhosis patients achieving viral suppression. Since cirrhosis patients may continue to have CSPH (thus, the risk of liver decompensation), NSBB should be considered to prevent decompensation in these patients.

As described in our study, patients with NSBB at baseline (presumably at higher baseline risk of CSPH, high-risk varices and liver decompensation) were excluded since NSBB may reduce the risk of liver decompensation,[8] as shown in PREDESCI trial.[9] Nevertheless, this subgroup was small, and subgroup analysis showed that CSPH (liver stiffness measurement ≥25 kPa) remained predictive of decompensation after excluding patients with high-risk varices.

There were a significant proportion of patients falling within the grey zone, which was also demonstrated in a recent study by Semmler et al.[10] This is consistent with the performance of transient elastography to exclude or include patients with advanced fibrosis. Unfortunately, we did not have the data on spleen stiffness and the ratio of von Willebrand factor and platelet count (VITRO) in the current cohort. Finally, as stated in our manuscript, we performed competing risk regression by cluster to account for heterogeneity and regional differences across the four cohorts of patients.

In summary, our findings demonstrated that Baveno-VII criteria of CSPH can predict liver decompensation and liver-related events in compensated cirrhosis/cACLD patients. We agree that a pragmatic "non-invasive" PREDESCI trial would be desirable to re-ensure our current clinical practice using contemporary patients, particularly cACLD patients after HCV cure, as it would also help confirm our findings. Until then, our findings suggest that NSBB should be considered in cirrhosis patients with CSPH diagnosed using non-invasive criteria.

Authors' contribution

Drafting of manuscript: YJW; Critical review of manuscript: All authors

Acknowledgements

YJW was supported by research grant from Medicine Academic Medical Center, Duke-NUS Medical School, Singapore.

Conflicts of Interest

YJW is an invited speaker for Gilead Science and AbbVie. The other authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Semmler G, Jachs M, Mandorfer M. Non-invasive tests-based risk stratification: Baveno VII and beyond. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:105-109.
2. Wong YJ, Zhaojin C, Tosetti G, Degasperi E, Sharma S, Agarwal S, et al. Baveno-VII criteria to predict decompensation and initiate non-selective beta-blocker in compensated advanced chronic liver disease patients. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:135-145.
3. Terrault NA, Lok ASF, McMahon BJ, Chang KM, Hwang JP, Jonas MM, et al. Update on prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of chronic hepatitis B: AASLD 2018 hepatitis B guidance. Clin Liver Dis (Hoboken) 2018;12:33-34.
4. Lens S, Baiges A, Alvarado-Tapias E, LLop E, Martinez J, Fortea JI, et al. Clinical outcome and hemodynamic changes following HCV eradication with oral antiviral therapy in patients with clinically significant portal hypertension. J Hepatol 2020;73:1415-1424.
5. European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL recommendations on treatment of hepatitis C: final update of the series. J Hepatol 2020;73:1170-1218.
6. Tosetti G, Degasperi E, Farina E, D'Ambrosio R, Soffredini R, Borghi M, et al. Decompensation in direct-acting antiviral cured hepatitis C virus compensated patients with clinically significant portal hypertension: too rare to warrant universal B-blocker therapy. Am J Gastroenterol 2021;116:1342-1344.
7. Lesmana CRA, Raharjo M, Gani RA. Managing liver cirrhotic complications: overview of esophageal and gastric varices. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:444-460.
8. Yoon KT, Liu H, Lee SS. β-blockers in advanced cirrhosis: more friend than enemy. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:425-436.
9. Villanueva C, Albillos A, Genescà J, Garcia-Pagan JC, Calleja JL, Aracil C, et al. β blockers to prevent decompensation of cir-

Abbreviations:

cACLD, compensated advanced chronic liver disease; CSPH, clinically significant portal hypertension; HCV, hepatitis C virus; NASH, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; NIT, non-invasive tests; NSBB, non-selective beta blocker; VITRO, the ratio of von Willebrand factor and platelet count

rhosis in patients with clinically significant portal hypertension (PREDESCI): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre trial. Lancet 2019;393:1597-1608.

10. Semmler G, Lens S, Meyer EL, Baiges A, Alvardo-Tapias E, Llop E, et al. Non-invasive tests for clinically significant portal hypertension after HCV cure. J Hepatol 2022;77:1573-1585.

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0408

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0410
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:191-193

Correspondence

Correspondence on Editorial regarding "HBV pgRNA and HBcrAg reductions at week 4 predict favourable HBsAg response upon long-term nucleos(t)ide analogue in CHB"

Lung-Yi Mak[1,2], Wai-Kay Seto[1,2], and Man-Fung Yuen[1,2]

[1]Department of Medicine and [2]State Key Laboratory of Liver Research, The University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong

Keywords: Biomarkers; Treatment outcome

Dear Editor,

We sincerely appreciate the editorial piece from Liang et al.[1] reviewing our recent paper on the role of early on-treatment decline in viral biomarkers in predicting favourable hepatitis surface antigen (HBsAg) response in chronic hepatitis B (CHB) infection, published in *Clinical and Molecular Hepatology*.[2] We agree with Liang and co-authors on the potential use of hepatitis B core-related antigen (HBcrAg) and hepatitis B virus (HBV) pre-genomic RNA (pgRNA) in multiple facets of management in the clinical context of CHB infection. Our study provided serum-liver correlations in the magnitude of decline in viral biomarkers upon nucleos(t)die analogue (NA) treatment–those with ≥1 log decline in covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA) at week 48 had more significant reductions in serum pgRNA and HBcrAg at multiple timepoints of assessment. This further strengthens the proposition for these serum viral biomarkers to be used as surrogates for cccDNA activity.

The findings of our study suggest that subjects without early biomarker response (defined as week 4 pgRNA decline ≥5.32 log copies/mL for hepatitis B envelope antigen (HBeAg)-positive subjects, or week 4 HBcrAg decline ≥2.05 log U/mL for HBeAg-negative subjects) had a low likelihood of achieving favourably low levels of quantitative HBsAg (qHBsAg) (<100 IU/mL) or HBsAg seroclearance, and they should be prioritized for clinical trials while maintaining the NA therapy. As most current trials only consider qHBsAg and/or HBV DNA when screening patients for enrolment eligibility, HBcrAg and pgRNA would provide additional layer of information to identify patients who are most in need for new treatment approaches.[3] HBsAg seroclearance plus HBV DNA undetectability >6 months after treatment cessation is the primary endpoint for phase III trials in the functional cure program of CHB. Notably, the benchmark of ≥30% patients achieving this endpoint[4] has not been met by any of the currently developing novel compounds, despite initial promising results in qHBsAg knockdown by RNA interference-based therapy.[5,6] This has engendered discussions about the practicability of such stringent treatment endpoint.[7] Taking a step

Corresponding author : **Man-Fung Yuen**
Department of Medicine, The University of Hong Kong, Pokfulam Road, Hong Kong
Tel: +852-22553984, Fax: +852-28162863, E-mail: mfyuen@hku.hk
https://orcid.org/0000-0001-7985-7725

Editor: Seung Up Kim, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 17, 2022 / **Accepted :** Nov. 18, 2022

back, a 'looser' endpoint of achieving serum qHBsAg <10 IU/mL or <100 IU/mL (HBsAg cut-off levels still subjected to debate) by novel compounds might be more feasible, as such endpoint implies that a patient with CHB had a lower risk of off-therapy virological relapse and can potentially employ the 'stop-to-cure' approach to induce functional cure.[8]

The potential of serum HBcrAg and HBV RNA should not be limited to the context of novel compound development, but may also be applicable to consideration of NA withdrawal in those fulfilling criteria.[9] The timing of biomarker assessment relative to NA therapy is an interesting point to consider. Our study looked at the early (as early as 4 weeks) on-treatment viral biomarker profiles instead of end-of-treatment (EOT) levels. The role of EOT pgRNA and/or HBcrAg in off therapy virological control have been investigated in multiple trials.[10,11] Instead of having to wait for reaching EOT (≥3 years, which is the minimum consolidation period for NA in HBeAg-negative patients),[12] early on-treatment profile of these biomarkers would provide valuable insights to identify patients potentially suitable for this treatment approach.

In summary, our study demonstrated that the degree of cccDNA silencing is the main determining factor for favourable HBsAg response, and can be reflected by early on-treatment changes in HBcrAg and HBV RNA. Patients without early biomarker response while on NA, as an additional consideration on top of qHBsAg levels, should be prioritized to participate in clinical trials in order to achieve functional cure.

Authors' contribution

LYM: literature review and original drafting; WKS and MFY: critical revision of article.

Conflicts of Interest

LYM serves as advisor for Gilead Sciences. WKS received speaker's fees from AstraZeneca and Mylan, is an advisory board member of CSL Behring, is an advisory board member and received speaker's fees from AbbVie, and is an advisory board member, received speaker's fees and researching funding from Gilead Sciences. MFY serves as advisor/consultant for AbbVie, Assembly Biosciences, Aligos Therapeutics, Arbutus Biopharma, Bristol Myer Squibb, Clear B Therapeutics, Dicerna Pharmaceuticals, Finch Therapeutics, GlaxoSmithKline, Gilead Sciences, Immunocore, Janssen, Merck Sharp and Dohme, Hoffmann-La Roche and Springbank Pharmaceuticals, Vir Biotechnology and receives grant/research support from Assembly Biosciences, Aligos Therapeutics, Arrowhead Pharmaceuticals, Bristol Myer Squibb, Fujirebio Incorporation, Gilead Sciences, Immunocore, Merck Sharp and Dohme, Hoffmann-La Roche, Springbank Pharmaceuticals and Sysmex Corporation.

REFERENCES

1. Liang LY, Wong VWS, Wong GLH, Yip TCF. Moving toward hepatitis B virus functional cure - the impact of on-treatment kinetics of serum viral markers. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:113-117.
2. Mak LY, Wong D, Kuchta A, Hilfiker M, Hamilton A, Chow N, et al. Hepatitis B virus pre-genomic RNA and hepatitis B core-related antigen reductions at week 4 predict favourable hepatitis B surface antigen response upon long-term nucleos(t)ide analogue in chronic hepatitis B. Clin Mol Hepatol 2023;29:146-162.
3. Kim SW, Yoon JS, Lee M, Cho Y. Toward a complete cure for chronic hepatitis B: novel therapeutic targets for hepatitis B virus. Clin Mol Hepatol 2022;28:17-30.
4. Cornberg M, Lok AS, Terrault NA, Zoulim F; 2019 EASL-AASLD HBV Treatment Endpoints Conference Faculty. Guidance for design and endpoints of clinical trials in chronic hepatitis B - report from the 2019 EASL-AASLD HBV treatment endpoints conference. Hepatology 2020;71:1070-1092.
5. Yuen MF, Locarnini S, Lim TH, Strasser SI, Sievert W, Cheng W, et al. Combination treatments including the small-interfering RNA JNJ-3989 induce rapid and sometimes prolonged viral responses in patients with CHB. J Hepatol 2022;77:1287-1298.
6. Yuen MF, Lim SG, Plesniak R, Tsuji K, Janssen HLA, Pojoga C, et al. Efficacy and safety of bepirovirsen in chronic hepatitis B infection. N Engl J Med 2022;387:1957-1968.
7. Cornberg M, Lok A, Terrault N, Zoulim F, editors. AASLD-EASL HBV Endpoints 2022; 2022 Jun 3-4; Washington, D.C.
8. Berg T, Lampertico P. The times they are a-changing - a refined

Abbreviations:

cccDNA, covalently closed circular DNA; CHB, chronic hepatitis B; EOT, end-of-treatment; HBcrAg, hepatitis B core-related antigen; HBeAg, hepatitis B envelope antigen; HBsAg, hepatitis surface antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; NA, nucleos(t)die analogue; pgRNA, pre-genomic RNA; qHBsAg, quantitative HBsAg

https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0410

proposal for finite HBV nucleos(t)ide analogue therapy. J Hepatol 2021;75:474-480.
9. Inoue T, Tanaka Y. Novel biomarkers for the management of chronic hepatitis B. Clin Mol Hepatol 2020;26:261-279.
10. Fan R, Peng J, Xie Q, Tan D, Xu M, Niu J, et al. Combining hepatitis B virus RNA and hepatitis B core-related antigen: guidance for safely stopping nucleos(t)ide analogues in hepatitis B e antigen-positive patients with chronic hepatitis B. J Infect Dis 2020;222:611-618.
11. Papatheodoridi M, Papachristou E, Moschidis Z, Hadziyannis E, Rigopoulou E, Zachou K, et al. Significance of serum HBV RNA in non-cirrhotic HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B patients who discontinue effective antiviral therapy. J Viral Hepat 2022;29:948-957.
12. European Association for the Study of the Liver; European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL 2017 clinical practice guidelines on the management of hepatitis B virus infection. J Hepatol 2017;67:370-398.

pISSN 2287-2728
eISSN 2287-285X

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

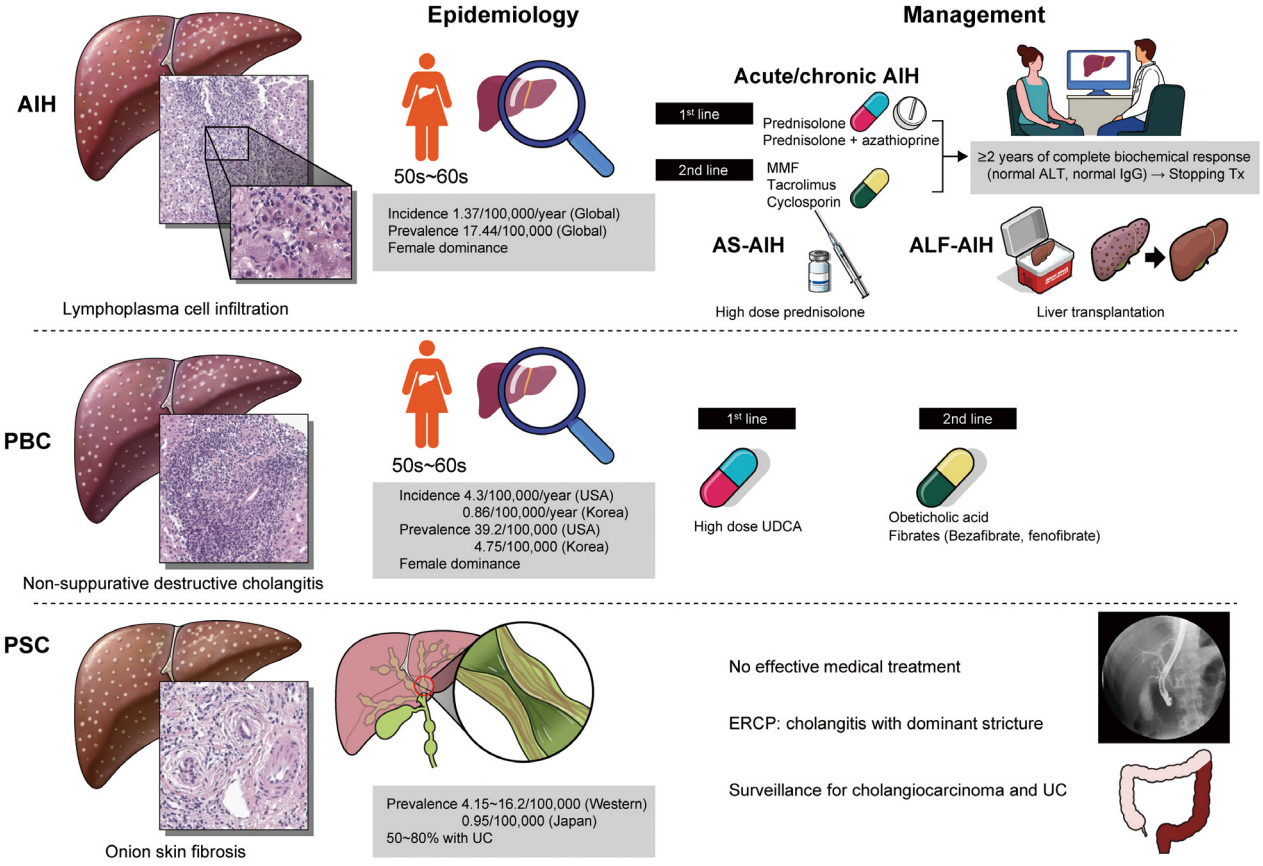
https://doi.org/10.3350/cmh.2022.0387
Clinical and Molecular Hepatology 2023;29:194-196

Snapshot

Epidemiology and updated management for autoimmune liver disease

Nae-Yun Heo[1] and Haeryoung Kim[2]

[1]Department of Internal Medicine, Inje University Haeundae Paik Hospital, Inje University College of Medicine, Busan; [2]Department of Pathology, Seoul National University Hospital, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seoul, Korea



Corresponding author : **Nae-Yun Heo**
Department of Internal Medicine, Inje University Haeundae Paik Hospital, Inje University College of Medicine, 875 Haeun-daero, Haeundae-gu, Busan 48108, Korea
Tel: +82-51-797-2436, Fax: +82-51-797-1291, E-mail: nyheo@hanmail.net
https://orcid.org/0000-0001-6571-8935

Editor: Minjong Lee, Ewha Womans University College of Medicine, Korea

Received : Nov. 8, 2022 / **Revised :** Dec. 11, 2022 / **Accepted :** Dec. 12, 2022

Keywords: Hepatitis, autoimmune; Liver cirrhosis, Biliary; Cholangitis, sclerosing

Aberrant activation of autoimmunity may influence the bad impact on the liver. The representative entities of autoimmune liver disease include autoimmune hepatitis (AIH), primary biliary cholangitis (PBC), and primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC).

AIH is the hepatocellular damage with the infiltration of lymphocyte and plasma cells, which might be induced by uncontrolled autoreactive CD4 and CD8 T cells. Although AIH might be characterized by elevated serum aminotransferase and immunoglobulin G (IgG), and the detection of autoantibodies, the concept of autoimmunity should be confirmed by the exclusion of other liver diseases.[1]

The global annual incidence rate of AIH was 1.37 per 100,000 persons, and similar among the Asian, European, and American populations. The ratio of male to female gender was shown as 1:5. The global prevalence rate of AIH was 17.44 per 100,000 persons with a high level of regional variation.[2] The average age of the onset of AIH is the mid-50s.[3]

The strategy of management of AIH is recommended according to disease subtypes such as chronic or acute AIH, acute severe AIH, and acute liver failure (ALF)-AIH.[1] In chronic or acute AIH, glucocorticoid monotherapy or glucocorticoid plus azathioprine could be applied. If remission induction accomplishes, glucocorticoid is tapered to the effective lowest dose or withdrawal, then maintenance therapy with azathioprine ± low dose glucocorticoid should continue. A recent study suggested that a prolonged complete biochemical response which is defined as normalization of aminotransferase and IgG for at least 2 years might be used to stop treatment without liver biopsy.[4] In case of incomplete biochemical response, treatment failure, or drug intolerance, 2nd line treatment including mycophenolate mofetil, tacrolimus, cyclosporin A, or infliximab could be used. In acute severe AIH, high-dose glucocorticoid monotherapy could be applied without azathioprine due to potential hepatotoxicity. At last, in ALF-AIH with encephalopathy, initial evaluation of liver transplantation (LT) should be considered without anticipation of the response to glucocorticoid.[5,6] While thiopurine methyltransferase activity test is encouraged to avoid azathioprine-related toxicity in European and African descendants, nudix hydrolase 15 variant is associated with the adverse effect of azathioprine in the East Asian population.[7]

PBC is a chronic cholestatic autoimmune liver disease characterized by the slowly progressive destruction of small intrahepatic bile ducts. The incidence and prevalence vary according to the region. PBC presented less frequently in Eastern than in Western countries. The annual incidence in USA and Korea was 4.3, and 0.86 per 100,000 persons, respectively. The prevalence in USA and Korea was 39.2, and 4.75 per 100,000 persons, respectively.[8-10] PBC occurs most frequently in women in their 50s and 60s. Diagnosis of PBC is based on the three characteristic findings such as serum alkaline phosphatase elevation, positive anti-mitochondrial antibody, and non-suppurative destructive cholangitis in liver biopsy.

The management of PBC is composed of resolving cholestasis and control of its complications. High-dose ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA) has been approved as a 1st-line therapy, which has dramatically modified the natural course of PBC. However, about 20–30% of patients with PBC showed incomplete response to it. Recently, obeticoholic acid presented approximately 50% of treatment response among the incomplete responders to UDCA, where it received accelerated US Food and Drug Administration approval. However, follow-up phase 3 trial (The Clinical Outcomes with OBeticholic Acid in Liver Treatment [COBALT] study) was terminated early due to feasibility challenge in 2021. Therefore, the availability of obeticholic acid is currently limited. Also, add-on of bezafibrate to UDCA in incomplete responders to UDCA significantly improved liver biochemistry and liver stiffness, and LT-free survival.[11,12] Complications of PBC include fatigue, pruritus, osteoporosis, hyperlipidemia, and Sicca syndrome.

Abbreviations:

AIH, autoimmune hepatitis; ALF, acute liver failure; COBALT, The Clinical Outcomes with OBeticholic Acid in Liver Treatment; IgG, immunoglobulin G; LT, liver transplantation; PBC, primary biliary cholangitis; PSC, primary sclerosing cholangitis; UDCA, ursodeoxycholic acid

It is important to manage them properly to improve the quality of life of the patients.[8]

PSC is a chronic cholestatic disease of unknown etiology, which is characterized by multifocal stenosis and destruction of the bile ducts owing to inflammation and fibrosis. The prevalence was 4.15 to 16.2 per 100,000 in Northern Europe and North America, while it was 0.95 per 100,000 in Japan. PSC is male-dominant and 50% to 80% of PSC patients in Western countries have ulcerative colitis.[13]

PSC is diagnosed by typical cholangiographic findings and the exclusion of secondary causes. Magnetic resonance cholangiography showed diffuse, multifocal short segment strictures and mild dilatation in the intra- and extrahepatic bile ducts looking like beaded appearance.[14] In contrast to PBC, UDCA did not improve survival, and high-dose UDCA increased the risk of adverse outcomes in patients with PSC.[15] Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography is indicated to treat the cholangitis with dominant stricture or to take a biopsy when cholangiocarcinoma is suspected. Ultimately, LT should be considered in case of liver failure or decompensated cirrhosis.

In epidemiology, the prevalence and incidence of these rare autoimmune liver diseases presented an increasing trend. However, it is not definite whether this trend reflects a real increase of the disease or improved identification due to better awareness of the physician. In the future, with the effort to find the patients early, it is required to develop more sophisticated treatment approaches individually.

Authors' contribution

Nae-Yun Heo wrote the manuscript and revised. Haeryoung Kim provided pathologic findings and revised the manuscript.

Conflicts of Interest

The authors have no conflicts to disclose.

REFERENCES

1. Komori A. Recent updates on the management of autoimmune hepatitis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:58-69.
2. Lv T, Li M, Zeng N, Zhang J, Li S, Chen S, et al. Systematic review and meta-analysis on the incidence and prevalence of autoimmune hepatitis in Asian, European, and American population. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2019;34:1676-1684.
3. Kim BH, Choi HY, Ki M, Kim KA, Jang ES, Jeong SH. Population-based prevalence, incidence, and disease burden of autoimmune hepatitis in South Korea. PLoS One 2017;12:e0182391.
4. Hartl J, Ehlken H, Weiler-Normann C, Sebode M, Kreuels B, Pannicke N, et al. Patient selection based on treatment duration and liver biochemistry increases success rates after treatment withdrawal in autoimmune hepatitis. J Hepatol 2015;62:642-646.
5. Ichai P, Duclos-Vallée JC, Guettier C, Hamida SB, Antonini T, Delvart V, et al. Usefulness of corticosteroids for the treatment of severe and fulminant forms of autoimmune hepatitis. Liver Transpl 2007;13:996-1003.
6. Mack CL, Adams D, Assis DN, Kerkar N, Manns MP, Mayo MJ, et al. Diagnosis and management of autoimmune hepatitis in adults and children: 2019 practice guidance and guidelines from the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Hepatology 2020;72:671-722.
7. Moriyama T, Nishii R, Perez-Andreu V, Yang W, Klussmann FA, Zhao X, et al. NUDT15 polymorphisms alter thiopurine metabolism and hematopoietic toxicity. Nat Genet 2016;48:367-373.
8. Tanaka A. Current understanding of primary biliary cholangitis. Clin Mol Hepatol 2021;27:1-21.
9. Lu M, Zhou Y, Haller IV, Romanelli RJ, VanWormer JJ, Rodriguez CV, et al. Increasing prevalence of primary biliary cholangitis and reduced mortality with treatment. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2018;16:1342-1350.e1.
10. Kim KA, Ki M, Choi HY, Kim BH, Jang ES, Jeong SH. Population-based epidemiology of primary biliary cirrhosis in South Korea. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2016;43:154-162.
11. Honda A, Tanaka A, Kaneko T, Komori A, Abe M, Inao M, et al. Bezafibrate improves GLOBE and UK-PBC scores and long-term outcomes in patients with primary biliary cholangitis. Hepatology 2019;70:2035-2046.
12. Corpechot C, Chazouillères O, Rousseau A, Le Gruyer A, Habersetzer F, Mathurin P, et al. A placebo-controlled trial of bezafibrate in primary biliary cholangitis. N Engl J Med 2018;378:2171-2181.
13. Tanaka A. IgG4-related sclerosing cholangitis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. Gut Liver 2019;13:300-307.
14. Seo N, Kim SY, Lee SS, Byun JH, Kim JH, Kim HJ, et al. Sclerosing cholangitis: clinicopathologic features, imaging spectrum, and systemic approach to differential diagnosis. Korean J Radiol 2016;17:25-38.
15. Imam MH, Sinakos E, Gossard AA, Kowdley KV, Luketic VA, Edwyn Harrison M, et al. High-dose ursodeoxycholic acid increases risk of adverse outcomes in patients with early stage primary sclerosing cholangitis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2011;34:1185-1192.

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

Volume 29 • Number 1 • January 2023

Instructions for Authors

General Information

The Clinical and Molecular Hepatology publishes original basic and clinical research on liver diseases. Manuscripts should be submitted electronically (https://mc04.manuscriptcentral.com/cmh). The journal is published in English on 1st in January, April, July, and October. Authors lacking ability with English syntax should seek the appropriate editorial assistance prior to submitting their manuscripts. These guidelines are in accordance with the "Uniform Requirements for Manuscripts Submitted to Biomedical Journals," published by the International Committee of Medical Journal Editors at http://www.icmje.org.

The Editorial Office, the Clinical and Molecular Hepatology, Room A1210, Mapo Trapalace, 53 Mapo-daero, Mapo-gu, 04158, Seoul, Korea
Tel.: 82-2-703-0051, Fax: 82-2-703-0071, E-mail: kasl@kams.or.kr

Types of Manuscripts

Contributions may be submitted as original articles, review articles, editorials and special topics. Special topics cover guidelines, meeting reports and hepatology issues elsewhere. Review articles, editorials and special topics are invited by the editorial board. However, authors who are interested in contributing reviews can submit reviews and are subjected to peer review. Letters to the editor may be subjected to peer review and undergo editing for clarity and brevity.

Ethical Conduct of the Study and the Report

All investigations involving human participants must be conducted according to the ethical guidelines of the Declaration of Helsinki, and be approved by the institutional review board. For studies involving animal experimentation, author(s) must provide assurance that all the animals received humane care according to the criteria outlined in the NIH "Guide for the Care and Use of Laboratory Animals". The author must state that the use of animals (means all mammals and birds) in the manuscript was approved by the institutional Animal Ethical Committee (AEC) in accordance to the article 14th of Korean Animal Protection Law, or equivalent, in the paper. It must be clearly stated that animal use has complied to the article 13th of Korean Animal Protection Law (The principles of animal use) and the relevant institutional polices in the manuscript. Copies of the protocol approved by institutional AEC or equivalents, must be available for review by the editor if necessary.

The corresponding author must give written assurance that neither the submitted material nor portions thereof have been published previously or are under consideration for publication elsewhere. Any material that could constitute prior or concurrent publication of similar data by any one of the authors should be submitted with the manuscript. It is assumed that the corresponding author speaks for his or her co-authors and certifies that all the listed authors meaningfully participated in the study and that they have seen and approved the final manuscript.

Authors should acknowledge any commercial affiliation or consultancy that could be constructed as potential conflicts of interest under a heading "Conflict of Interest statement" prior to the references.

For the policies on the research and publication ethics not stated in this instructions, 'Good Publication Practice Guidelines for Medical Journals (https://www.kamje.or.kr/board/view?b_name=bo_publication&bo_id=7&per_page=)' or 'Guidelines on good publication (http://www.publicationethics. org.uk/guidelines)' can be applied.

Ensure correct use of the terms sex (when reporting biological factors) and gender (Identity, psychosocial or cultureral factors), and, unless inappropriate, report the sex and/or gender of study participants, the sex of animals or cells, and describe the methods used to determine sex and gender.

If the study was done involving an exclusive population, for example in only one sex, authors should justify why, except in obvious cases, (e.g., prostate cancer).

Authors should define how they determined race or ethnicity and justify their relevance.

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR
HEPATOLOGY
Volume_29 Number_1 January 2023

Organization of the Manuscript

The manuscript should be written in A4 (21×30 cm) paper in double space texts by leaving 3 cm space in the right, left, top and bottom sides at 10 point fonts.

Original articles

Original articles describing clinical and basic studies in the field of hepatology. Manuscripts are expected to be well-organized and clearly written. They should not exceed 6,000 words, including the abstract, references, tables, and figure legends. No more than 8 figures and tables, with a maximum of 6 panels per figure. It is permitted for you to submit additional methodological details, non-essential figures or portions of your manuscript as supplementary material for online publication only. References cited in the main text may not be listed in the supplementary materials. The only references be listed in the supplement are those cited exclusively in the supplement. References should not exceed a maximum of 50.
Original article must arranged as follows: (1) title page (2) abstract (250 words or less with a list of 5 or less key words), (3) introduction, (4) materials and methods (or patients and methods), (5) results, (6) discussion, (7) acknowledgements, (8) conflict of interest statement (9) references, (10) tables, and (11) figure legends.
In case of submission of original articles (not applicable for reviews, editorials, and letters), authors should summarize the contents of the article in a concise, pictorial form designed to easily understand main findings of the work described in the article. Graphical abstracts should be submitted as a separate JPG or TIFF files at the online submission step of file upload. The submission of the graphical abstract is mandatory when submitting an original article. Graphical abstracts should be provided as an image with a minimum size of 531 × 531 pixels (height × width) using a minimum resolution of 600 dpi. When submitting a larger image, please make sure to use the same ratio. Also, please note that your image will be scaled proportionally to fit in the available window, which is a rectangle with a size of 200 × 500 pixels.

Review articles

Review articles on selected topics of interest for the readers of ***the Clinical and Molecular Hepatology*** and will be solicited by the Editors. Review articles are expected to be clear, concise and updated. The maximum length is 5,000 words. The inclusion of a maximum of 8 high quality tables and/or colored figures to summarize critical points is highly desirable.

Editorials

This section consists of invited brief editorial comments on articles published in ***the Clinical and Molecular Hepatology***. The length of an editorial should not exceed 1,500 words and 1 table or 1 figure is allowed. References should not exceed a maximum of 20.

Letters to the editor

Letters to the editor should be related to a recent article published in ***the Clinical and Molecular Hepatology*** within previous two years. Letters to the editor must arranged as follows: (1) title page, (2) body (3) references (maximum of 15), and (4) a maximum number of 1 tables or figures is allowed. The length of an letter to the editor should not exceed 800 words, and the maximum number of authors is 6. Abstract is not required.

Correspondence

The correspondence consists of replies on editorials from the authors of the original publication in ***the Clinical and Molecular Hepatology***. The length of an correspondence should not exceed 1,500 words and 1 table or 1 figure is allowed. References should not exceed a maximum of 15. Correspondence letters are not usually peer reviewed, but we might invite replies from the authors of the original publication.

Special topics

Special topics should be no longer than 800 words with 10 or less references.

Snapshot

Snapshot consists of a large single page figure with schematic diagrams and tables that graphically summarize current knowledge about a particular subject within the field of hepatology. A detailed figure legend which includes all relevant information can be included and may be incorporated into the main figure. The figure is accompanied by a short summary article that should not exceed a maximum of 600 words. References should not exceed a maximum of 10. The snapshot should contain a descriptive title.

1. Title page

Provide a concise title. List the full names of all authors and their institutional affiliation. In a multi-authored work involving more than a single institution, indicate individual affiliation by means of superscript Arabic numbers. Indicate a change of address in a similar fashion. List the footnotes to the title page. Provide the contact information for the corresponding author (name, address, telephone number, fax number, e-mail address and Orcid ID), and running title (Less than 50 characters). All abbreviations should be explained in this page (e.g. AFP, alpha fetoprotein; ALT, alanine aminotransferase). ***The Clinical and Molecular Hepatology*** employs a system to screen plagiarism (CrossRef). When submitting your manuscript to this journal, you accept that your manuscript may be screened for plagiarism against previously published material.

2. Abstract

Abstract of original articles must contain 250 words or less and must be organized as follows: Background/Aims, Methods, Results, and Conclusions. Three to Five keywords should be provided at the end of the abstract.

3. Highlight

Authors of original articles are requested to include "Highlights" which consist of three to four sentences summarizing the originality and main findings of the article. "Highlights" should not exceed 100 words in total. Highlights must be organized in a box and placed after the end of the abstract. The authors are encouraged to include the "Highlights" with initial article submission. When submitting a revised manuscript, the submission of the "Highlights" is mandatory.

4. Introduction

Provide the minimum background information that will orient the general reader. Do not engage in a literature review.

5. Methods

Provide a level of detail such that another investigator could repeat the work. For methods that are used without significant modification, citation of the original work will suffice. Identify and provide references for all the statistical methods used.

6. Results and discussion

Present the major findings of the study in graphical form if practicable. Do not illustrate minor details if their message is adequately conveyed by simple descriptive text. Mention all the tables and figures. In the discussion, concisely present the implications of the new findings for the field as a whole, minimizing any reiteration of the results and avoid repetition of material in the introduction; keeping a close focus on the specific topic of the paper.

7. Acknowledgements

An acknowledgement of persons who made a genuine assistance and provided special reagents may be included. Grant and financial support related with the work should be specifically stated.

8. Authors' contribution

Based on the ICMJE guidelines for authorship criteria, how each author has contributed to the paper should be clarified (e.g, Conception or design of the work, Data collection, Data analysis and interpretation, Drafting the article, Critical revision of the article, and Final ap-

proval of the version to be published).

9. References

References should be numbered in the order they are cited, and the number of reference should be marked in the text by means of a superscript Arabic numerical. Only literature that is published or in press (with the name of the publication) may be numbered and listed; abstracts and letters to the editor may be cited. Cite the names of all authors when there are six or less; when seven or more list the first six followed by et al.

Articles in journals

1. Kim YS, Jung ES, Hur W, Bae SH, Choi JY, Song MJ, et al. Noninvasive predictors of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis in Korean patients with histologically proven nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Mol Hepatol 2013;19:120-130.
2. Chung C, Iwakiri Y. The lymphatic vascular system in liver diseases: its role in ascites formation. Clin Mol Hepatol 2013;19:99-104.

Literature in press

An online article that has not yet been published in an issue can be cited by its Digital Object Identifier (DOI). The DOI will remain valid and allow an article to be tracked even after its allocation to an issue.
Wong GL. Management of chronic hepatitis B patients in immunetolerant phase: what latestguidelines recommend. Clin Mol Hepatol. 2018 Jan 22. doi: 10.3350/cmh.2017.0068.

Book chapters

1. Gumucio JJ, Berkowitz CM. Structural organization of the liver and function of the hepatic acinus. In: Kaplowitz N, ed. Liver and Biliary Diseases. Vol I. 2nd ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins, 1992:2-17.

Abstract or Article in a supplement

1. Cho YJ, Lee SH, Kim BH, Yang SK, Jo YH, Lee DH. Characteristics of hepatocellular carcinoma with reference to ages in Korean patients [Abstract]. Hepatology 1998;28:246A.
2. Bellentani S, Marino M. Epidemiology and natural history of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). Ann Hepatol 2009;8 (Suppl 1):S4-S8.

Websites

1. Ontario Chronic Disease Prevention Alliance (OCDPA). Economic cost of chronic disease in Canada 1995-2003. OCDPA web site, <http://www.ocdpa.on.ca/OCDPA/docs/OCDPA_EconomicCosts.pdf>. Accessed 7 Sep 2011.

10. Permissions

Direct quotations, tables or illustrations taken from copy-righted material must be accompanied by written permission for their use from the publisher. The permission is presented as a footnote or addition to the legend and it must provide complete information as to the source. Photographs of identifiable persons must be accompanied by a signed release that indicates their informed consent.

11. Abbreviations

Please include an alphabetical list of all non-standard abbreviations used within the manuscript. Please do not abbreviate unless a term is used more than five times in a paper. In this case, the abbreviation should be spelled out, in its first use in the text with the abbreviated form in parentheses, and it should also be listed on the footnote page. Abbreviations used in figures or tables should be defined in the legend.

12. Drug names

Use generic names. The proprietary name may be mentioned in parenthesis. The names and locations (city and state or country) of manufacturers should be included in parentheses when mentioning proprietary drugs, tools, instruments, software, etc.

13. Tables

Prepare tables on individual sheets of paper, double spaced and numbered consecutively with Arabic numerals in the order of their appearance in the text. The title of tables should be written concisely in clauses and phrases. The first letter of the table title starts with a capital letter. Explain all abbreviations and symbols such as *, †, ‡, §, ‖, **, ††, ‡‡, §§. Do not duplicate the material presented in a figure.

14. Figure legends

Number the figures with Arabic numerals in the order they are mentioned in the text. Provide a title (this should not appear on the figure itself) and sufficient explanation to render the figure intelligible without reference to the text. For any copyrighted material, indicate that permission has been obtained (see Permissions, above). Figure legends should be typed consecutively on a separate sheet of paper.

15. Figures

Illustrations should be sharp and clear. Figure files can be uploaded in the JPG or TIFF formats which authors prefer at a final resolution of not less than 300 dpi. Microscopic pictures should be explained according to the staining method and scaled by the power of magnification. Authors are charged for color figures.

Peer Review and Publishing

The journal utilizes blind peer-review in evaluating manuscripts for publication. Submitted papers will be reviewed by at least two referees, and decisions will be available in approximately one months. With respect to the revision and resubmission of manuscripts, it is the journal's policy to allow a couple of resubmission only, which should be received within 2 months from the time of receipt of the initial review letter. In general, a manuscript requiring more than a couple of revision or returned beyond 2 months will be handled as a new submission. The journal does not have article submission charges.

Article processing charge (APC)

As of January 1, 2022, ***the Clinical and Molecular Hepatology*** charges a publication fee of US$1,000 per accepted article. The authors will receive an invoice for APC shortly after the corrected proof of their accepted manuscript has been finalized. Please note that only "original articles" are subject to article processing charges.

Fast-track review (optional)

A fast-track review process is available for authors who desire quick publication of their papers. Fast-track manuscripts will be handled by the Editor in Chief, and the first decision following a full peer-review of the manuscript will be made within 7 days of submission. The accepted papers will be published within 2 weeks from the date of acceptance, in the next issue of ***the Clinical and Molecular Hepatology***. An additional non-refundable processing fee (US$1,000) will be charged for the initiation of the fast-track process. **A fast-track review does not guarantee acceptance.** The journal is editorially independent and will assess your manuscript according to its own criteria. If your article is finally accepted, an article processing charge of US$1,000 will be additionally charged. If you wish to submit your article using the fast-track review process, please contact the Editorial Office in advance to arrange a peer-review process.

Cover page (optional)

For the authors who wish to publish their paper as a cover page article, we offer full support in producing the illustration to go on the cover. ***The Clinical and Molecular Hepatology*** charges US$1,000 for the cover page illustration work. If you are interested, please contact the Editorial Office.

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR
HEPATOLOGY
Volume_29 Number_1 January 2023

Copyright Transfer

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

Volume 29 • Number 1 • January 2023

Copyright Transfer and Conflict of Interest Disclosure Form

Manuscript No. _____ Date. _____

Manuscript Title. _____

_____

Copyright Transfer Form

In consideration of editors and publisher's effort in reviewing and editing our/my article, the undersigned authors hereby transfer, convey, and assign all copyrights in the article to Korean Association for the Study of the Liver (KASL). The copyright transfer covers the right to print, publish, distribute and sell throughout the world the said contribution and parts thereof, including all revisions or versions and future editions, in all forms and media.

The authors certify that I have participated in the intellectual content, the analysis of data, and the writing of the article, to take public responsibility for it. The authors reviewed the final version of the article, believe it represents valid work and approve it for publication. The authors certify that none of the material in the manuscript has been published previously, is included in another manuscript. The authors also certify that the article has not been accepted for publication elsewhere, nor have they assigned any right or interest in the article to any third party. The authors will obtain and include with the manuscript written permission from any respective copyright owners for the use of any text, figures, and tables that have been previously published. The authors agree that it is their responsibility to pay fees charged for permissions.

Conflict of Interest Disclosure Form

The authors certify that I have reviewed conflict of interest form, defined by the International Committee of Medical Journal Editors (ICJME) found at the following URL: http://www.icmje.org/, and attached separate ICMJE Form for Disclosure of Potential Conflicts of Interest that might pose a conflict of interest in connection with the submitted article.

Author (Print)	Affiliation	Position	Signature

Position indicate current status at your affiliation; professor, fellow, resident, student, post doc.

The copyright transfer agreement and conflict of interest disclosure form should be signed and faxed or submitted by e-mail to the Editorial Office of *the Clinical and Molecular Hepatology* at Fax: 82-2-703-0071, E-mail: kasl@kams.or.kr. Manuscript can not be published until the completed form of copyright transfer form has received by the Editorial Office.

CLINICAL and MOLECULAR HEPATOLOGY

Volume 29 • Number 1 • January 2023

The Clinical and Molecular Hepatology Submission Checklist

Please read this checklist carefully to ensure that your manuscript is complete and in compliance with the CMH Guide for Authors.

1) General Format	Yes	No
[1] Did you have the title page, abstract, the text (introduction, materials and methods, results, and discussion), acknowledgements, conflict of interest statement, references, tables, and legends for figures?	☐	☐
[2] Is the manuscript double-spaced in an A4-size paper?	☐	☐
[3] The manuscript of special topics should not be longer than 800 words.	☐	☐
[4] The number of authors for letters to the editor must not exceed 6.	☐	☐

2) Abstract	Yes	No
[1] Abstract must contain 250 words or less and must be organized as follows: Backgrounds/Aims, Methods, Results, and Conclusions.	☐	☐
[2] Five or less key words should be provided at the end of the abstract.	☐	☐

3) Introduction, Methods, Results, Discussion, Acknowledgements, Conflict of Interest Statement, References	Yes	No
[1] Identify the committee(s) approving the study protocol and include a statement of compliance with ethical regulations.	☐	☐
[2] An acknowledgement of persons who made a assistance and provided special reagents may be included. Grant and financial support related with the work should be specifically stated.	☐	☐
[3] Please state any conflicts of interest.	☐	☐
[4] All citations in the paper have a complete and accurate reference in the reference list. The number of references in special topics should be 10 or less.	☐	☐

4) Tables and Figures	Yes	No
[1] Prepare tables on individual sheets of paper, double spaced and numbered consecutively with Arabic numerals in the order of their appearance in the text.	☐	☐
[2] Explain all abbreviations and symbols.	☐	☐
[3] Figure legends should be typed consecutively on a separate sheet of paper.	☐	☐
[4] Figures should be supplied in the JPG or TIFF format at a final resolution of 600 dpi or higher.	☐	☐